HAWKINS ELECTRICAL GUIDE ...: A. C. MOTORS, TRANSFORMERS, CONVERTERS, ...

Nehemiah Hawkins

Digitized by Google

General Library System
University of Wisconsin - Madison
728 State Street
Madison, WI 53706-1494
U.S.A.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE THOUGHT IS IN THE QUESTION THE INFORMATION IS IN THE ANSWER

HAWKINS

ELECTRICAL GUIDE

NUMBER FIVE

QUESTIONS ANSWERS & ILLUSTRATIONS

A PROGRESSIVE COURSE OF STUDY FOR ENGINEERS, ELECTRICIANS, STUDENTS AND THOSE DESIRING TO ACQUIRE A WORKING KNOWLEDGE OF

ELECTRICITY AND ITS APPLICATIONS

A PRACTICAL TREATISE

BY

HAWKINS AND STAFF

THEO. AUDEL & CO. 72 FIFTH AVE. NEW YORK.

Digitized by Google

General Library System
University of Wisconsin - Madison
728 State Street
Madison, WI 53706-1494
U.S.A.

COPYRIGHTED, 1917
BY
THEO. AUDEL & CO.,
NEW YORK.

Printed in the United States.

Digitized by Google

Wendt
TK
1403
H3
1911
v.5

TABLE OF CONTENTS GUIDE NO. 5.

ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS 1,267 to 1,376

Classification—**synchronous motors**—essential parts—*synchronous motor principles:* condition for starting; effective pressure; dead centers; speed; limit of lag; effect of load changes—effect of altering the field strength—disadvantages of synchronous motors; advantages—**the "V" curve**—adaptation—efficiency—**hunting of synchronous motors;** mechanical analogy—use as condenser—surging—characteristics of synchronous motors: starting; running; stopping; effect upon circuit; power factor; auxiliary apparatus; adaptation—**induction (asynchronous) motors**—essential parts—types—*oscillating magnetic field—rotating magnetic field*—operation of single phase motor; why not self starting; provision for starting—operation of polyphase induction motor; why called asynchronous—speed; classification according to speed—the terms *primary* and *secondary*—why polyphase induction motors are explained before single phase—**polyphase induction motors**—features—essential parts—*principles*—production of rotating field—Tesla's rotating field—method of obtaining resultant flux of Tesla's field—*Arago's rotations;* explanation—Faraday's experiment—production of two phase rotating field; resultant poles—six and eight pole two phase rotating fields—*physical conception of two phase rotating field*—production of three phase rotating field; with ring winding—*physical conception of three phase rotating field*—three phase six pole winding—**slip**—*copper cylinder illustrating principle of operation of induction motor*—calculation of slip—table of synchronous speeds—variation of slip; why so small; variation with load; table of variation—sector method of measuring slip—*evolution of*

Digitized by Google

ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS—*Continued.*

the squirrel cage armature; construction—**the field magnets;** parts; construction—**field windings for induction motors**—calculation for revolutions of rotating field; objection to high speed of field—difficulty with low frequency currents—general character of field winding—formation of poles—grouping of coils—*starting of induction motors:* external resistance, auto-transformer, internal resistance methods—**internal resistance induction motors;** adaptation—how resistance is cut out—why not desirable for large sizes—**external resistance or slip ring motors**—operation—armature connections—**single phase induction motors**—service suitable for—disadvantage—parts—why not self-starting—how started—**phase splitting; production of rotating field from oscillating field**—methods—starting coils—**shading coils**—character of the starting torque—modification of armature for starting with heavy load—clutch type of single phase induction motor; its action in starting—**commutator motors**—classification—*action of closed coil rotating in alternating field*—the transformer pressure—generated pressure—self-induction pressure—local armature currents; reason for sparking; how reduced—high resistance connectors—effect of low power factor—effect of frequency—**series motor**—features—adaptation—**neutralized series motor**—conductive method—inductive method—**shunt motors—repulsion motors**—difficulty with early motors—means employed to stop sparking—**essentials of single repulsion motors**—the term repulsion induction motor—compensated repulsion motor—**power factor of induction motors**—its importance—false ideas in regard to power factor—**speed and torque of motors.**

TRANSFORMERS - - - - - - - 1,377 to 1,456

Their use—essential parts—**basic principles**—the primary winding—the secondary winding—*magnetic leakage*—**the induced voltage**—no load current—magnetizing current—action of transformer with load—classification—**step up transformers**—use—construction—copper economy—**step down transformers**—use—construction—**core transformers**—construction—advantages—**shell transformers**—comparison of core and shell types—choice—**combined core and shell transformers**—economy of construction—**single and polyphase transformers**—features of each type—choice of types for polyphase currents—operation of three phase transformer with one phase damaged

Digitized by Google

TRANSFORMERS—*Continued.*

—**transformer losses**—**hysteresis**—what governs the loss—how reduced—**eddy currents**—lamination—thickness of laminæ—importance of iron losses—how to reduce iron losses—**copper losses**—how caused—effect on power factor—effect of resistance—**cooling of transformers**—cooling mediums employed—heating of transformers—objection to heating—**dry transformers**—**air cooled transformers**—natural draught type—forced draught or air blast type—construction of coils for air cooling—requirements with respect to air supply—quantity of air used—**oil cooled transformers**—circulation of the oil—action of the oil—objection to oil—kind of oil used—oil requirements—moisture in oil—**water cooled transformers**—internal coil type—external coil type—*thermo-circulation*—quantity of circulating water required—**transformer insulation**—the **"major"** and **"minor" insulation**—mica—outdoor transformers for irrigation service—oil insulated transformers—efficiency of transformers—efficiency curve—**all day efficiency of transformers**—transformer fuse blocks—auto-transformers—**constant current transformers for series arc lighting;** elementary diagram illustrating principles—regulation—transformer connections—single phase connections—combining transformers—precautions—operating secondaries in parallel—connections for different voltages—precautions—two phase connections—**three phase connections:** delta, star, delta-star, star-delta—comparison of star and delta connections—three phase transformers—comparison of air blast, water cooled, and oil cooled transformers—standard transformer connections—**how to test transformers**—transformer operation with grounded secondary—transformer capacity for motors—transformer connections for motors—arc lamp transformer—transformer installed on pole—static booster or regulating transformer.

CONVERTERS - - - - - - - - 1,457 to 1,494

Where used—kinds of converter—A. I. E. E. classification—**rotary converters**—operation—speed—principles—relation between input and output pressures—single and polyphase types—advantage of polyphase converters—armature connections of polyphase converter—pressure relation—voltage variation—advantage of unity power factor—effect of field too strong—**compounding of rotary converters**—

Digitized by Google

CONVERTERS—*Continued.*

ratio of conversion—voltage regulation—split pole method—regulating pole method—best location of regulating poles—**reactance method—multi-tap transformer method—synchronous booster method**—winding connections—field connections—adaptation—**motor generator sets**—classification—standard practice—behavior of rotary when hunting; comparison with motor generator sets—racing—**frequency changing sets—parallel operation of frequency changers—cascade converter**—speed—action in motor armature winding—advantages—how started—comparison of cascade converter with synchronous converter.

RECTIFIERS - - - - - - - - - 1,495 to 1,530

Classification—**mechanical rectifiers**—essential features—construction—application—**electrolytic rectifiers**—principles of operation—Mohawk rectifier—the term *"valve"*—metals for electrodes—electrolyte—Nodon valve—Audion valve—Buttner valve—Churcher valve—De Faria valve—Fleming oscillation valve—Grisson valve—Pawlowski valve—Giles electric valve—Buttner valve—**mercury vapor rectifiers**—principles—the terms "arc" and "vapor"—three phase mercury vapor rectifier—construction—auxiliary apparatus—series mercury arc rectifier—dissipation of heat from bulb—replacement of bulb—advantages of rectifier—precautions in installing—**electromagnetic rectifiers**—construction and operation.

ALTERNATING CURRENT SYSTEMS 1,531 to 1,586

Advantages of the alternating current—**classification of systems**—vector summation; examples—**forms of circuit:** series, parallel, parallel series, series parallel—**transformer systems:** individual transformers; transformation at distribution centers—**single phase system;** two wire transmission and three wire distribution; objections to single phase systems; advantages—**monocyclic system—two phase systems:** adaptation; ordinary voltages used; two phase three wire system; two phase five wire system—**three phase systems:** six wire; four wire; three wire; connections: star, delta, star delta, delta star; evolution of three wire system; pressure and current

Digitized by Google

ALTERNATING CURRENT SYSTEM—*Continued.*

relations; connection of transformers; open delta connection — **change of frequency** — Schaghticoke-Schenectady transmission line — **transformation of phases:** three to one, three to two, two to six, and three to six phase — **Scott connection** for transforming from three to two phase — three to two phase with three star connected transformers — **economy of a. c. systems — relative weights of copper required for polyphase systems** — aermotor towers of Southern Power Co. — **choice of voltage — usual transmission voltages — diagram of three phase distribution — mixed current systems;** usual d. c. pressure on traction lines; use of mixed systems.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LI

ALTERNATING CURRENT MOTORS

The almost universal adoption of the alternating current system of distribution of electrical energy for light and power, and the many inherent advantages of the alternating current motor, have created the wide field of application now covered by this type of apparatus.

As many central stations furnish only alternating current, it has become necessary for motor manufacturers to perfect types of alternating current motor suitable for all classes of industrial drive and which are adapted for use on the kinds of alternating circuit employed. This has naturally resulted in a multiplicity of types and a classification, to be comprehensive, must, as in the case of alternators, divide the motors into groups as regarded from several points of view. Accordingly, alternating current motors may be classified:

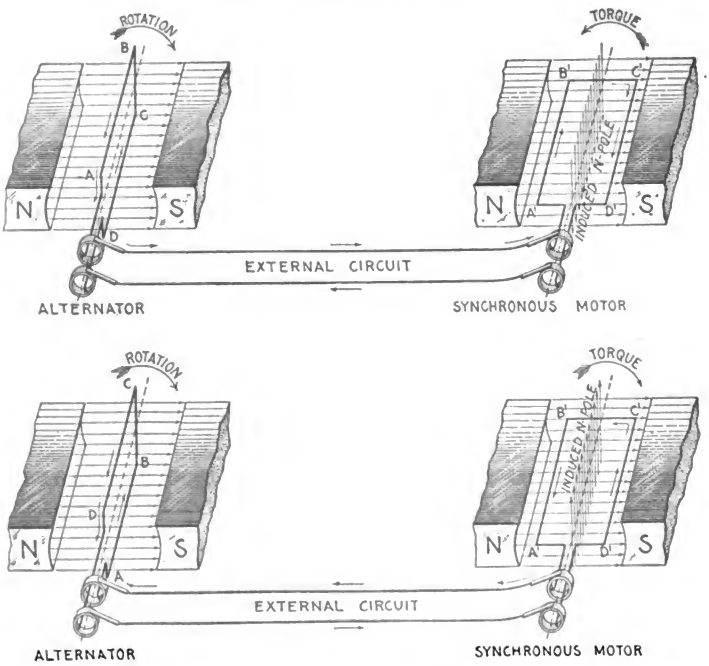
1. With respect to their principle of operation, as

   a. SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS;
   b. ASYNCHRONOUS MOTORS:
      1. Induction motors;
      2. Commutator motors { *series;* *compensated;* *shunt;* **repulsion.**

2. With respect to the current as

   a. Single phase;
   b. Polyphase;

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,585 to 1,588.—Synchronous motor principles: I. *A single phase synchronous motor is not self-starting.* The figures show an elementary alternator and an elementary synchronous motor, the construction of each being identical as shown. If the alternator be started, during the first half of a revolution, beginning at the initial position ABCD, fig. 1,585, current will flow in the direction indicated by the arrows, passing through the external circuit and armature of the motor, fig. 1,586, inducing magnetic poles in the latter as shown by the vertical arrows. These poles are attracted by unlike poles of the field magnets, which tend to turn the motor armature in a counter-clockwise direction. Now, **before** *the torque thus set up has time to* **overcome the inertia of the motor armature** *and cause it to rotate, the alternator armature has completed the half revolution,* and beginning the second half of the revolution, as in fig. 1,587, *the current is reversed* and consequently *the induced magnetic poles in the motor armature are reversed also.* This tends to rotate the armature in the reverse direction, as in fig. 1,588. *These reversals of current occur with such frequency that the force* **does not act long enough** *in either direction* **to overcome the inertia** *of the armature; consequently it remains at rest,* or to be exact, **it vibrates.** Hence, a single phase synchronous motor must be started by some external force and brought up to a speed that gives the same frequency as the alternator before it will operate. A single phase synchronous motor, then, is not self-starting, which is one of its disadvantages; the reason it will operate after being speeded up to synchronism with the alternator and then connected in the circuit is explained in figs. 1,589 to 1,592.

Digitized by Google

3. With respect to speed, as
   - *a.* Constant speed;
   - *b.* Variable speed.

4. With respect to structural features, as
   - *a.* Enclosed;
   - *b.* Semi-enclosed;
   - *c.* Open;
   - *d.* Pipe ventilated;
   - *e.* Back geared;
   - *f.* Skeleton frame;
   - *g.* Riveted frame;
   - *h.* Ventilated; etc.

Of the above divisions and sub-divisions some are self-defining and need little or no explanation; the others, however, will be considered in detail, with explanations of the principles of operation and construction.

Synchronous Motors.—The term "synchronous" means *in unison*, that is, *in step*. A so called synchronous motor, then, as generally defined, *is one which rotates in unison or in step with the phase of the alternating current which operates it.*

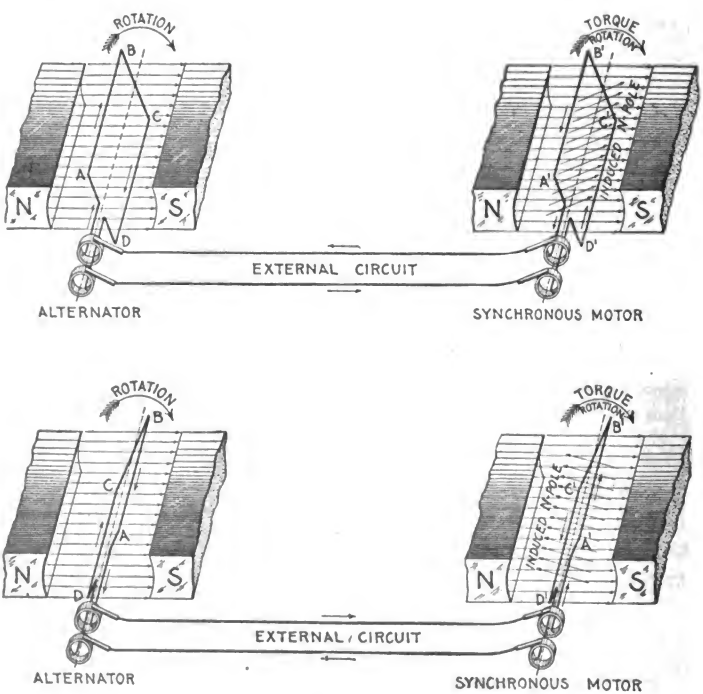
Strictly speaking, however, it should be noted that this condition of operation is only approximately realized as will be later shown.

Any single or polyphase alternator will operate as a synchronous motor when supplied with current at the same pressure and frequency as it produces as a generator, the essential condition, in the case of a single phase machine, being that it be speeded up to so called synchronism before being put in the circuit.

In construction, synchronous motors are almost identical with the corresponding alternator, and consist essentially of two elements:

1. An armature,
2. A field.

Digitized by Google

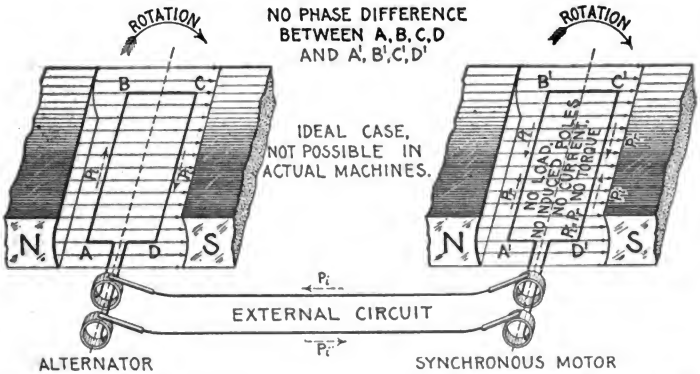


FIGS. 1,589 to 1,592.—Synchronous motor principles: II. *The condition necessary for synchronous motor operation is that the motor be speeded up until it rotates in synchronism, that is, in step with the alternator.* This means that the motor must be run at the same frequency as the alternator (not necessarily at the same speed). In the figures it is assumed that the motor has been brought up to synchronism with the alternator and connected in the circuit as shown. In figs. 1,589 and 1,590 the arrows indicate the direction of the current for the armature position shown. The current flowing through the motor armature induces magnetic poles which are attracted by the field poles, thus producing a torque in the direction in which the armature is rotating. After the alternator coil passes the vertical position, the current reverses as in fig. 1,591, and the current flows through the motor armature in the opposite direction, thus reversing the induced poles as in fig. 1,592. *This brings* **like** *poles near each other, and since the motor coil has rotated beyond the vertical position* **the repelling action** *of the* **like poles,** *and also* **the attraction of unlike poles,** *produces a torque acting in the direction in which the motor is rotating.* Hence, when the two armatures move synchronously, the torque produced by the action of the induced poles upon the field poles is always in the direction in which the motor is running, and accordingly, tends to keep it in operation.

Digitized by Google

either of which may revolve. The field is separately excited with direct current.

The principles upon which such motors operate may be explained by considering the action of two elementary alternators



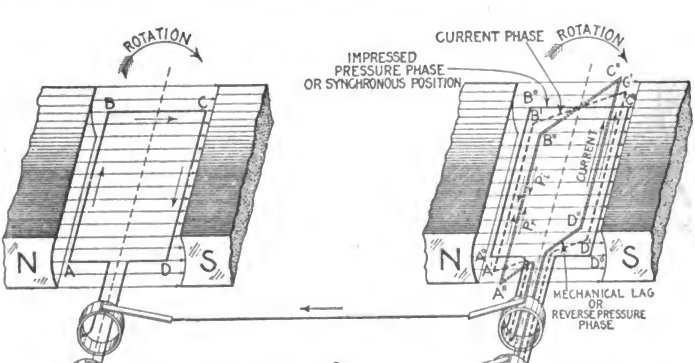
FIGS. 1,593 and 1,594.—Synchronous motor principles: III. *The current which flows through the armature of a synchronous motor is that due to the* **effective** *pressure.* Since the motor rotates in a magnetic field, a pressure is induced in its armature in a direction opposite to that induced in the armature of the alternator, and called the *reverse pressure*, as distinguished from the pressure generated by the alternator called the *impressed pressure. At any instant, the pressure available to cause current to flow through the two armatures, called the* **effective pressure**, *is equal to the difference between the pressure generated by the alternator or* **impressed pressure** *and the* **reverse pressure** *induced in the motor.* Now if the motor be perfectly free to turn, that is, without load or friction, the reverse pressure will equal the impressed pressure and no current will flow. This is the case of real synchronous operation, that is, not only is the frequency of motor and alternator the same, but the coils rotate without phase difference. In figs. 1,593 and 1,594, the impressed and reverse pressures are represented by the dotted arrows P_i and P_r, respectively. Since in this case these opposing pressures are equal, the resultant or effective pressure is zero; hence, there is no current. *In actual machines this condition is impossible*, because even if the motors have no external load, there is always more or less friction present; hence, in operation there must be more or less current flowing through the motor armature to induce magnetic poles so as to produce sufficient torque to carry the load. The action of the motor in automatically adjusting the effective pressure to suit the load is explained in figs. 1,595 and 1,596.

connected in circuit, as illustrated in the accompanying illustrations, one alternator being used as a generator and the other as a synchronous motor.

Suppose the motor, as in figs. 1,585 and 1,586, be at rest when

Digitized by Google

it is connected in circuit with the alternator. The alternating current will flow through the motor armature and produce a reaction upon the field tending to rotate the motor armature first in one direction, then in another.

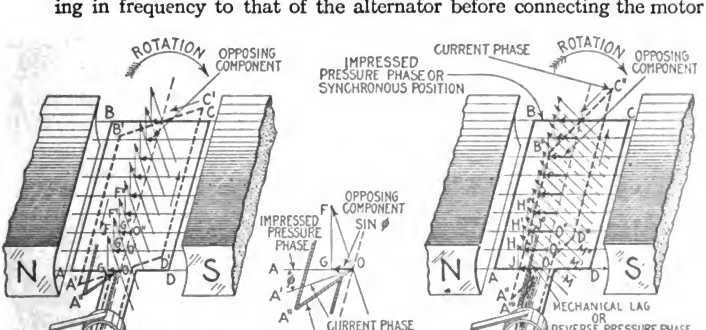


FIGS. 1,595 and 1,596.—Synchronous motor principles: IV—*A synchronous motor adjusts itself to changes of load by changing the phase difference between current and pressure.* If there be no load and no friction, the motor when speeded up and connected in the circuit, will run in true synchronism with the alternator, that is, at any instant, the coils A B C D and A°B°C°D° will be in parallel planes. When this condition obtains, no current will flow and no torque will be required (as explained in figs. 1,593 and 1,594). If a load be put on the motor, the effect will be to cause A°B°C°D° to lag behind the alternator coil to some position A"B"C"D" and current to flow. The reverse pressure will lag behind the impressed pressure equally with the coil, and the current which has now started will ordinarily take an intermediate phase so that it is **behind** *the impressed pressure but* **in advance** *of the reverse pressure.* These phase relations may be represented in the figure by the armature positions shown, viz.: 1, the synchronous position A°B°C°D° representing the impressed pressure, 2, the intermediate position A'B'C'D', the current, 3, the actual position A"B"C"D" (corresponding to mechanical lag), the reverse pressure. From the figure it will be seen that the current phase represented by A'B'C'D' is in advance of the reverse pressure phase represented by A"B"C 'D". Hence, by **armature reaction,** *the current leading the reverse pressure weakens the motor field and reduces the reverse pressure,* thus establishing equilibrium between current and load. As the load is increased, the mechanical lag of the alternator coil becomes greater and likewise the current lead with respect to the reverse pressure, which intensifies the armature reaction and allows more current to flow. In this way equitibrium is maintained for variations in load within the limits of zero and 90° mechanical lag. The effect of armature reaction on motors is just the reverse to its effect on alternators, which results in marked automatic adjustment between the machines especially when a single motor is operated from an alternator of about the same size. In other words, the current which weakens or strengthens the motor field, strengthens or weakens respectively the alternator field as the load is varied.

Digitized by Google

Because of the very rapid reversals in direction of the torque thus set up, there is not sufficient time **to overcome the inertia of the armature** *before the current reverses and produces a torque in the opposite direction, hence, the armature remains stationary or, strictly speaking,* **it vibrates.**

Now if the motor armature be first brought up to a speed corresponding in frequency to that of the alternator before connecting the motor



FIGS. 1,597 and 1,598.—Synchronous motor principles: V. *The effectiveness of armature reaction in weakening the field is proportional to the* **sine of the angle** *by which the current lags behind the impressed pressure.* If a motor be without load or friction, its armature will revolve synchronously (in parallel planes) with the alternator armature. In the figures let ABCD represent an instantaneous position of the motor armature when this condition obtains; it will then represent the phase relationship of impressed and reverse pressures for the same condition of no load, no friction, operation. *Now,* **if a light load be placed on the motor** for the same instantaneous position of alternator armature, **the motor coil will drop behind to some position as** A″, fig. 1,597 (part of the coil only being shown). The reverse pressure will also lag an equal amount and its phase with respect to the impressed pressure will be represented by A″. The armature current will ordinarily take an intermediate phase, represented by coil position A′B′C′D′, inducing a field strength corresponding to the 9 lines of force OF, O′F′, etc. *The current being* **in advance** *of the phase of the reverse pressure* A″, *the armature reaction* **weakens** *the field,* thus reducing the reverse pressure and allowing the proper current to flow to balance the load. The amount by which the field is weakened may be determined by resolving the induced magnetic lines OF, O′F′, O″F″, etc., into components OG, GF, O′G′, G′F′, O″G″, G″F″, etc., respectively parallel and at right angles to the lines of force of the main field. Of these components, the field is weakened only by OG, O′G′, O″G″, etc. Since by construction, angle OFG = AOA′, and calling OF unity length, OG = sine of angle by which the current lags behind the impressed pressure. The construction is shown better in the enlarged diagram. For a heavier load the armature coil will drop back further to some position as A‴, fig. 1,598, and the lag of the current increase to some intermediate phase as A″B″ C″D″. By similar construction it is seen that the component OG (fig. 1,597) has increased to OJ (fig. 1,598), this component thus further weakening the main field, by an amount *proportional to* **the sine of the angle** *by which the current lags behind the impressed pressure.* The increased current which is now permitted to flow, causes the induced field to be strengthened (as indicated by the dotted magnetic lines M, M′, M″, etc.), thus increasing the torque to balance **the additional load.**

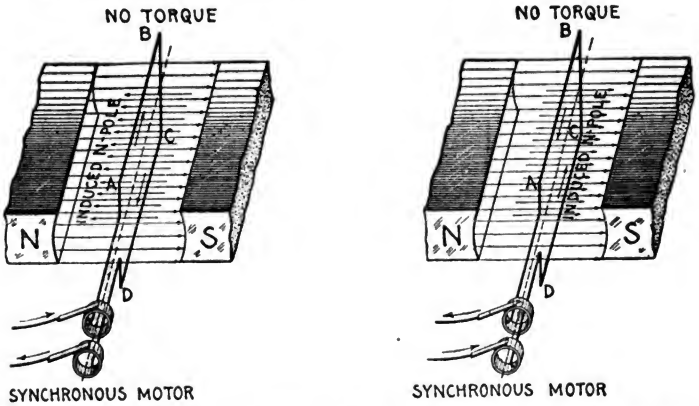
Digitized by Google

in the circuit, the armature will continue revolving at the same frequency as the alternator.

The armature continues revolving, because, **at synchronous speed,** *the field flux and armature current are always in the same relative position.* producing a torque which always pulls the armature around in the same direction.

A polyphase synchronous motor is self starting, because, before the current has died out in the coils of one phase, it is increasing in those of the other phase or phases, so that there is always some turning effort exerted on the armature.

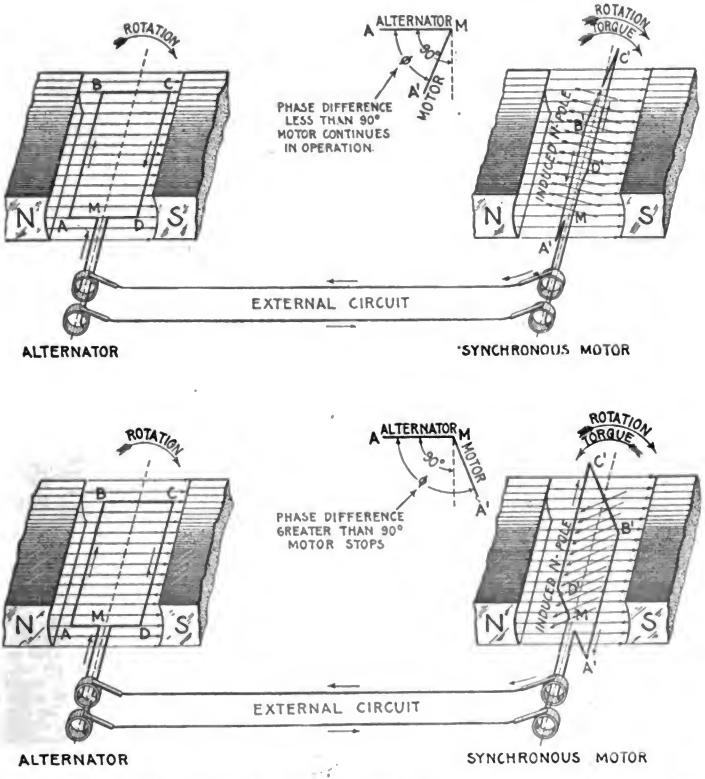
The speed of a synchronous motor is that at which it would have to run, if driven as an alternator, to deliver the number of cycles which is given by the supply alternator.



FIGS. 1,599 and 1,600.—Synchronous motor principles: VI. *A single phase synchronous motor has* **"dead centers,"** *just the same as a one cylinder steam engine.* Two diagrams of the motor are here shown illustrating the effect of the current in both directions. When the plane of the coil is perpendicular to the field, the poles induced in the armature are parallel to field for either direction of the current; that is to say, the field lines of force and the induced lines of force acting in parallel or opposite directions, no turning effect is produced, just as in analogy when an engine is on the dead center, the piston rod (field line of force) and connecting rod (induced line of force) being in a straight line, the force exerted by the steam on the piston produces no torque.

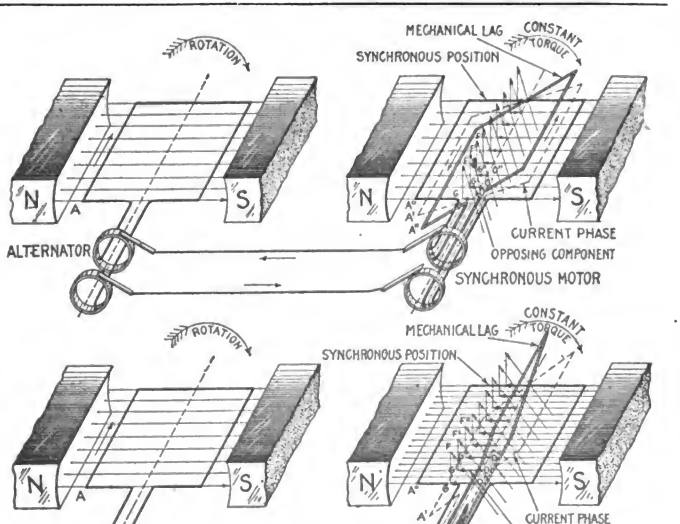
For instance, a 12 pole alternator running at 600 revolutions per minute will deliver current at a frequency of 60 cycles a second; an 8 pole synchronous motor supplied from that circuit will run at 900 revolutions per minute, which is the speed at which it would have to be driven as an alternator to give 60 cycles a second—the frequency of the 12 pole alternator.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,601 to 1,604.—Synchronous motor principles. VII. *An essential condition for synchronous motor operation is that the mechanical lag be less than 90°.* Figs. 1,601 and 1,602 represent the conditions which prevail when the lag of the motor armature A'B'C'D' is anything less than 90°. As shown, the lag is almost 90°. The direction of the current and induced poles are indicated by the arrows. *The inclination of the motor coil is such that* **the repulsion of like poles** *produces a torque* **in the direction of rotation,** thus tending to keep motor in operation. Now, in figs. 1,603 and 1,604, for the same position of the alternator coil ABCD, *if the lag be greater than* 90°, *the inclination of the motor coil* A'B'C'D' *is such that at this instant* **the repulsion of like poles** *produces a torque in a direction* **opposite** *to that of* **the rotation,** *thus* **tending to stop** *the motor.* In actual operation this quickly brings the motor to rest, having the same effect as a strong brake in overcoming the momentum of a revolving wheel.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,605 to 1,608.—Synchronous motor principles: VIII. *If the torque and current through the motor armature be kept constant, strengthening the field will increase the mechanical lag, and the lead of the current with respect to the reverse pressure.* In the figures, let A be an instantaneous position of the alternator coil, A°, synchronous position of motor coil, A′, position corresponding to current phase, A″, actual position or mechanical lag of motor coil behind alternator coil necessary to maintain equilibrium. In fig. 1,606, let A′ and A″ represent respectively the relation of current phase and mechanical lag *corresponding to a* **certain** *load and field strength.* For these conditions OG, O′G′, O″G″, etc., will represent the components of the induced lines of force in opposition to the motor field, that is, *they indicate the intensity of the armature reaction at the instant depicted.* Now, assume the field strength to be **doubled,** as in fig. 1,608, *the motor* **load** *and* **current** *being maintained* **constant.** Under these conditions, the armature reaction must be doubled to maintain equilibrium; that is, the components OG, O′G′, etc., fig. 1,608, must be twice the length of OG, O′G′, etc., fig. 1,605. Also since the current is maintained constant, the induced magnetic lines OF, O′F′ are of same length in both figures. Hence, in fig. 1,608 the plane of these components is such that their extremities touch perpendiculars from G, G′, etc., giving the other components FG, F′G′, etc. The plane A′, normal to OF, O′F′, etc., gives the current phase. By construction, the phase difference between A° and A′ is such that sin A°OA′ (fig. 1,608) = 2 × sin A°OA′ (fig. 1,606). That is, doubling the field strength causes an increase of current lag such that the sine of the angle of this lag is doubled. Since the intensity of the armature reaction depends on the lead of the current with respect to the reverse pressure, the mechanical lag of the coil must be increased to some position as A″ (fig. 1,608), such as will give an armature reaction of an intensity indicated by the components OG, O′G′, etc.

Digitized by Google

The following simple formula gives the speed relations between generators and motors connected to the same circuit and having different numbers of poles.

$$s = \frac{P \times S}{p}$$

in which
s. Revolutions per minute of the motor;
p. Number of poles of the motor;
S. Revolutions per minute of the alternator;
P. Number of poles of the alternator.

Question. If the field strength of a synchronous motor be altered, what effect does this have on the speed, and why?

Ans. The speed does not change (save for a momentary variation to establish the phase relation corresponding to equilibrium), because the motor has to run at the same frequency as the alternator.

Ques. How does a synchronous motor adjust itself to changes of load and field strength?

Ans. By changing the phase difference between the current and pressure.

If, on connecting a synchronous motor to the mains, the excitation be too weak, so that the voltage is lower than that of the supply, this phase difference will appear resulting in wattless current, since the missing magnetization has, as it were, to be supplied from an external source. A phase difference also appears when the magnetization is too strong.

Ques. State the disadvantages of synchronous motors.

Ans. A synchronous motor requires an auxiliary power for starting, and will stop if, for any reason, the synchronism be destroyed; collector rings and brushes are required. For some purposes synchronous motors are not desirable, as for driving shafts in small workshops having no other power available for starting, and in cases where frequent starting, or a strong torque

Digitized by Google

at starting is necessary. A synchronous motor has a tendency to *hunt** and requires intelligent attention; also an exciting current which must be supplied from an external source.

Ques. State the advantage of synchronous motors.

Ans. The synchronous motor is desirable for large powers where starting under load is not necessary. Its power factor

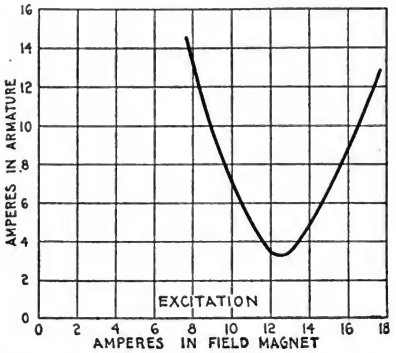


FIG. 1,609.—Diagram illustrating method of representing the performance of synchronous motors. The *V shaped curve* is obtained by plotting the current taken by motor under different degrees of excitation, the power developed by the motor remaining constant. The current may be made to lag or lead while the load remains constant, by varying the excitation. By varying the excitation, a certain value may be reached which will give a minimum current in the armature; this is the condition of unity power factor. If now the excitation be diminished the current will lag and increase in value to obtain the same power; if the excitation be increased the current will *lead* and increase in value to obtain the same power. The results plotted for several values of the excitation current will give the V curve as shown. This is an actual curve obtained by Mordey on a 50 kw. machine running unloaded as a motor. Other curves situated above this one may be obtained for various loadings of the motor.

may be controlled by varying the field strength. The power factor can be made unity and, further, the current can be made to lead the pressure.

A synchronous motor is frequently connected in a circuit solely to improve the power factor. In such cases it is often called a "condenser motor" for the reason that its action is similar to that of a condenser.

*NOTE.—See Hunting of synchronous motors, page 1,280.

Digitized by Google

The design of synchronous motors proceeds on the same lines as that of alternators, and the question of voltage regulation in the latter becomes a question of power factor regulation in the former.

Ques. For what service are they especially suited?

Ans. For high pressure service.

High voltage current supplied to the armature does not pass through a commutator or slip rings; the field current which passes through slip rings being of low pressure does not give any trouble.

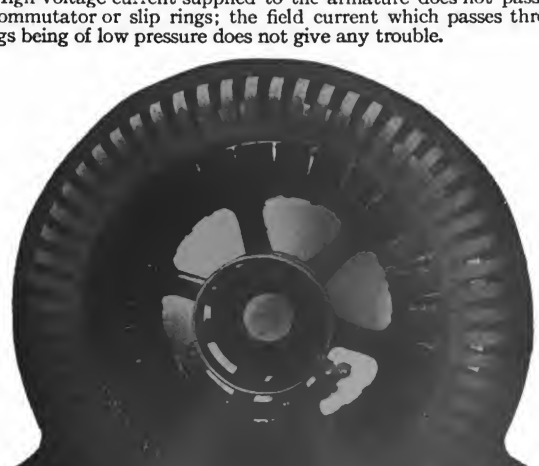


FIG. 1,610.—Westinghouse self-starting synchronous motor. Motors of this type are suitable for constant speed service where starting conditions are moderate, such as driving compressors, pumps, and large blowers. Synchronous motors can be made to operate not only as motors but as synchronous condensers to improve the power factor of the circuit. The field is provided with a combined starting and damper or *amortisseur* winding so proportioned that the necessary starting torque is developed by the minimum current consistent with satisfactory synchronous running without hunting. The armature slots are open and the coils form wound, impregnated, and interchangeable. Malleable iron finger plates at each end of the core support the teeth. Ventilating finger plates assembled with the laminations form air ducts. The frames are of cast iron, box section with openings for ventilation; shoes and slide rails permit adjustment of position. The brush holders are of the standard sliding shunt type. Two or more brushes are provided for each ring.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How do synchronous and induction motors compare as to efficiency?

Ans. Synchronous motors are usually the more efficient.

Hunting of Synchronous Motors.—Since a synchronous motor runs practically in step with the alternator supplying it with current when they both have the same number of poles,

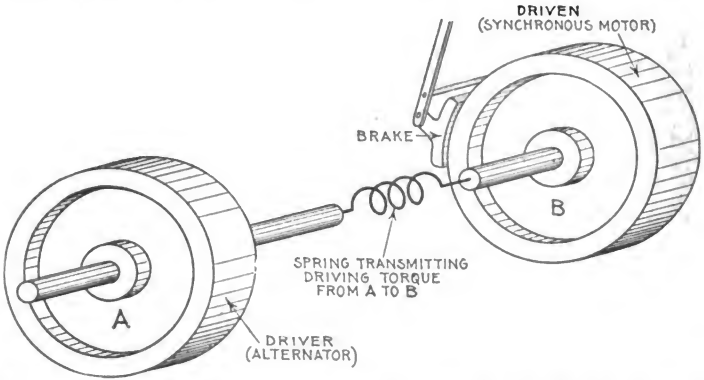


FIG. 1,611.—Mechanical analogy illustrating "hunting." The figure represents two flywheels connected by a spring susceptible to tortion in either direction of rotation. If the wheels A and B be rotating at the same speed and a brake be applied, say to B, its speed will diminish and the spring will coil up, and if fairly flexible, more than the necessary amount to balance the load imposed by the brake; because when the position of proper torque is reached, B is still rotating slightly slower than A, and an additional torque is required to overcome the inertia of B and bring its speed up to synchronism with A. Now before the spring stops coiling up the wheels must be rotating at the same speed. When this occurs the spring has reached a position of too great torque, and therefore exerting more turning force on B than is necessary to drive it against the brake Accordingly B is accelerated and the spring uncoils. The velocity of B thus oscillates above and below that of A when a load is put on and taken off. Owing to friction, the oscillations gradually die out and the second wheel takes up a steady speed. A similar action takes place in a synchronous motor when the load is varied.

or some multiple of the ratio of the number of poles on each machine, it will take an increasing current from the line as its speed drops behind the alternator, but will supply current to the line as a generator if for any reason the speed of the alternator

Digitized by Google

should drop behind that of the motor, or the current wave lag behind, which produces the same effect, and due to additional self-induction or inductance produced by starting up or overloading some other motor or rotary converter in the circuit.

When the motor is first taking current, then giving current back to the line, and this action is continued periodically, the motor is said to be *hunting*.

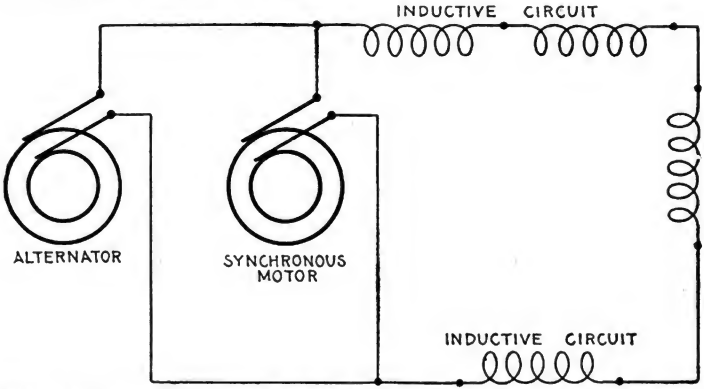


FIG. 1,612.—Diagram illustrating the use of a synchronous motor as a condenser. If a synchronous motor be sufficiently excited the current will lead. Hence, if it be connected across an inductive circuit as in the figure and the field be over excited it will compensate for the lagging current in the main, thus increasing the power factor. If the motor be sufficiently over excited the power factor may be made unity, the minimum current being thus obtained that will suffice to transmit the power in the main circuit. A synchronous motor used in this way is called a *rotary condenser* or *synchronous compensator*. This is especially useful on long lines containing transformers and induction motors.

Ques. What term is applied to describe the behavior of the current when hunting occurs?

Ans. The term *surging* is given to describe the current fluctuations produced by hunting.

The mechanical analogy of hunting illustrated in fig. 1,611 will help to an understanding of this phenomenon. In alternating current circuits a precisely similar action takes place between the alternators and synchronous motors, or even between the alternators themselves.

Digitized by Google

CHARACTERISTICS OF SYNCHRONOUS MOTORS

Starting.—The motor must be brought up to synchronous speed without load, a *starting compensator* being used. If provided with a self-starting device, the latter must be cut out of circuit at the proper time. The starting torque of motor with self-starting device is very small.

Running.—The motor runs at synchronous speed. The maximum torque is several times full load torque and occurs at synchronous speed.

Stopping.—If the motor receive a sudden overload sufficient to momentarily reduce its speed, it will stop; this may be brought about by momentary interruption of the current, sufficient to cause a loss of synchronism.

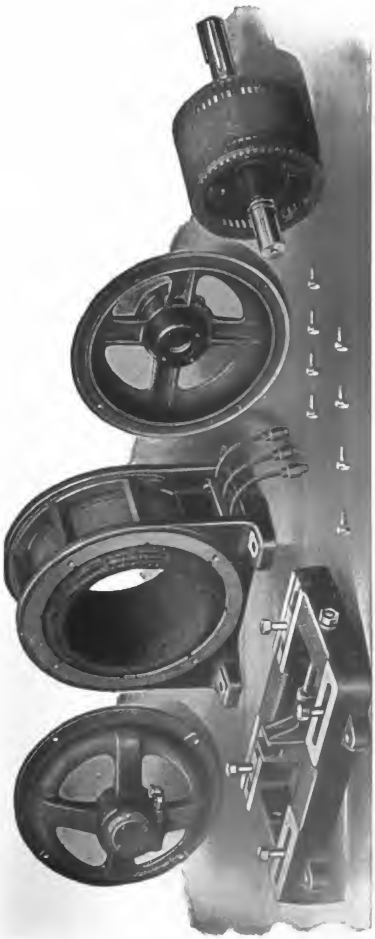
Effect upon Circuit.—In case of short circuit in the line the motor acts as a generator and thus increases the intensity of the short circuit. The motor impresses its own wave form upon the circuit. Over excitation will give to the circuit the effect of *capacity*, and under excitation, that of *inductance*.

Power Factor.—This depends upon the field current, wave form and hunting. The power factor may be controlled by varying the field excitation.

Necessary Auxiliary Apparatus.—Power for starting, or if self-starting, means of reducing the voltage while starting; also, field exciter, rheostat, friction clutch, main switch and exciter switch, instruments for indicating when the field current is properly adjusted.

Adaptation.—If induction motors be connected to the same line with a synchronous motor that has a steady load, then the field of the synchronous motor can be over excited to produce a leading current, which will counteract the effect of the lagging currents induced by the induction motors. Owing to the weak starting torque, skilled attendance required, and the liability of the motor to stop under abnormal working conditions, the synchronous motor is not adapted to general power distribution, but rather to large units which operate under a steady load and do not require frequent starting and stopping.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,613 to 1,625.—Disassembled view of Western Electric three phase squirrel cage skeleton frame induction motor.

Induction (Asynchronous) Motors.—*An induction motor consists essentially of an armature and a field magnet, there being, in the simplest and most usual types, no electrical connection between these two parts.**

According to the kind of current that an induction motor is designed to operate on, it may be classified as:

1. Single phase;
2. Polyphase.

The operation of an induction motor depends on the production of a magnetic field by passing an alternating current through field magnets.

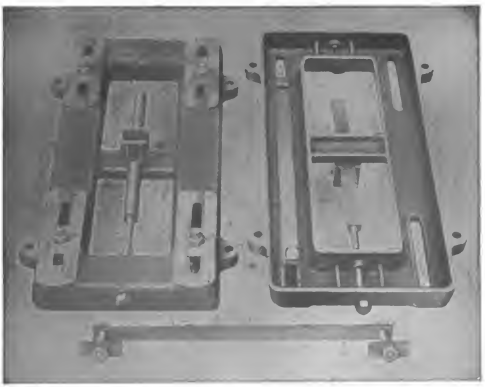
*NOTE.—The author prefers the terms armature and field magnet, instead of "primary," "secondary," "stator," "rotor," etc., as used by other writers, the armature being the part in which currents are induced and the field magnet (or magnets) that part furnishing the field in which the induction takes place.

Digitized by Google

The character of this field is either

1. Oscillating*, or
2. Rotating,

according as single phase or polyphase current is used.



FIGS. 1,626 to 1,628.—General Electric base construction for polyphase induction motors. The base is made of cast iron. Adjusting gear is provided to slide the motor along the base as shown in the illustrations, the movement being from 6 to 12 inches according to size. With this design of base, motors are securely held in position under all conditions and may be run with an upward pull on the belt. Close fitting guides moving in an accurately machined slot on the base preserve a correct alignment of the motor when adjustment of the latter is required. The same base can be used whether the motor be supported from the wall or ceiling or located on the floor. A single adjusting screw is placed under the center line of the motor frame, which produces an even and balanced draw in either direction on all parts of the motor when the belt tension is altered. This screw can be located at either end of the base. The base can be omitted when the motor is direct connected or when provision for belt adjustment is not required.

Ques. Describe briefly the operation of a single phase motor.

Ans. A single phase current being supplied to the field magnets, an *oscillating field* is set up. A single phase motor is

*NOTE.—"The word *oscillating* is becoming specialized in its application to those currents and fields whose oscillations are being damped out, as in electric 'oscillations.' But for this, we should have spoken of an oscillating field."—*S. P. Thompson.* The author believes the word *oscillating*, notwithstanding its other usage, best describes the single phase field, and should be here used.

Digitized by Google

not self-starting; but when the armature has been set in motion *by external means*, the reaction between the magnetic field and the induced currents in the armature being no longer zero, a torque is produced tending to turn the armature.

The current flowing through the armature produces an alternating polarity such that the attraction between the unlike armature and field poles is always in one direction, thus producing the torque.



FIG. 1,629.—Richmond three phase induction motor on base fitted with screw adjusting gear for shifting the position of the motor on the base to take up slack of belt.

Ques. Why is a single phase induction motor not self-starting?

Ans. When the armature is at the rest, the currents induced therein are at a maximum in a plane at right angles to the magnetic field, hence there is no initial torque to start the motor.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,630 to 1,641.—Terminals for General Electric polyphase induction motors. In order to prevent any mechanical strain on the leads being transmitted to the motor windings, the terminal cables are clamped in insulated bushings with a connector for each cable.

Ques. What provision is made for starting single phase induction motors?

Ans. Apparatus is supplied for "splitting the phase" (later described in detail) of the single phase current furnished, converting it temporarily into a two phase current, so as to obtain a *rotating field* which is maintained till the motor is brought up to speed. The phase splitting device is then cut out and the motor operated with the *oscillating field* produced by the single phase current.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Describe briefly the operation of a polyphase induction motor.

Ans. Its operation is due to the production of a *rotating magnetic field* by the polyphase current furnished. This field "rotating" in space about the axis of the armature induces currents in the latter. The reaction between these currents and the rotating field creates a torque which tends to turn the armature, whether the latter be at rest or in motion.



FIGS. 1642 and 1643.—Western Electric end flange rivets and punchings of riveted frame induction motor. The riveted frame is constructed of two cast iron flanges between which the stator laminations of sheet steel are securely clamped and riveted under hydraulic pressure. This construction exposes the laminations directly to the air and improves the radiation, thus insuring high overload capacity and low operating temperatures. The field slots are overhung or partially closed, affording mechanical protection to the coils.

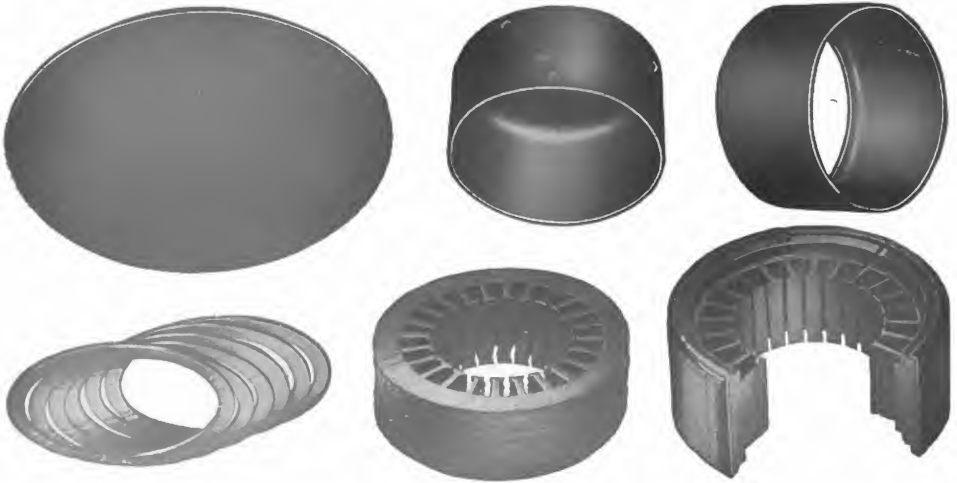
Ques. Why are induction motors called "asynchronous"?

Ans. Because the armature does not turn in synchronism with the rotating field, or, in the case of a single phase induction motor, with the oscillating field (considering the latter in the light of a rotating field).

Ques. How does the speed vary?

Ans. It is slower (more or less according to load) than the "field speed," that is, than "synchronism" or the "synchronous speed."

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,644 to 1,649.—Construction of General Electric drawn shell fractional horse power motors. The distinguishing feature of drawn shell motors is the field construction which consists of a steel shell or cylinder supporting and clamping together the stator or field punchings. This method avoids the cast frame work outside the active magnetic material. A disc is first punched or "blanked" out of soft steel, fig. 1,644, this disc being faced into the shape, fig. 1,645, with one end closed. The other end of the shell is then cut out, leaving the small flange as in fig. 1646. It is now ready to receive the core punchings. In the next operation a suitable number of spacing rings, fig. 1,647, are forced into the shell and seated against the retaining lip, which may be seen in fig. 1,646. The field punchings or laminae, fig. 1,648, are now assembled, after which a second and equal set of spacing rings are put into place to center the active field iron. The open edge of the shell is then rolled over the punchings under heavy pressure, thus preparing the field structure for the machinings and fitting of the end heads and base. Fig. 1,649 shows a section of the completely assembled field structure, the parts being cut away to indicate the relation between the field punchings, spacing rings and shell. After the spacing rings at both frame ends have been turned true and grooved, the bearing heads, fig. 1,649, are ready for fastening in place by four fillister headed screws. A complete wound field is shown in fig. 1,858, with flat base casting attached.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is the difference of speed called?

Ans. The *slip*.

This is a vital factor in the operation of an induction motor, since *there must be slip in order that the armature inductors shall cut magnetic lines* to **induce** (hence the name **"induction"** motor) currents therein so as to create a driving torque.



FIG. 1,650.—Ideal fifteen horse power two phase induction motor. The armature core is supported by a cast iron frame carried on a base, with sliding ways and screw adjustment for tightening the belt. The armature core is provided with ventilating apertures, with metal spacers between each tooth. The revolving field is a steel casting with radially projecting poles, to which the pole shoes are bolted. The overhanging pole tips retain the field coils. All coils of the smaller sizes are wound with insulated copper wire of square section, and of the larger sizes, with flat copper, wound on edge, each turn being insulated by sheet insulation. Motors of this type are adapted for use in small power plants and isolated plants. The relatively high speed for which they are designed, reduces considerably the weight and overall dimensions, and likewise the cost. The exciter is belt driven. The normal kw. capacity of the exciter usually exceeds the kw. required for the excitation under normal load conditions to permit of station lighting. All exciters are built as compound wound dynamos, capable of delivering the exciter current up to 125 volts, which is sufficient margin in the field to control the alternating current line voltage on circuits of unusually low power factor.

Ques. What is the extent of the slip?

Ans. It varies from about 2 to 5 per cent. of synchronous speed depending upon the size.

Ques. Why are induction motors sometimes called constant speed motors?

Ans. They are erroneously and ill advisedly, yet conveniently so called by builders to distinguish them from induction motors

Digitized by Google

Polyphase Induction Motors.—As many central stations put out only alternating current circuits, it has become necessary for motor builders to perfect types of alternating current motor suitable for all classes of industrial drive and which are adapted for use on these commercial circuits. Three phase

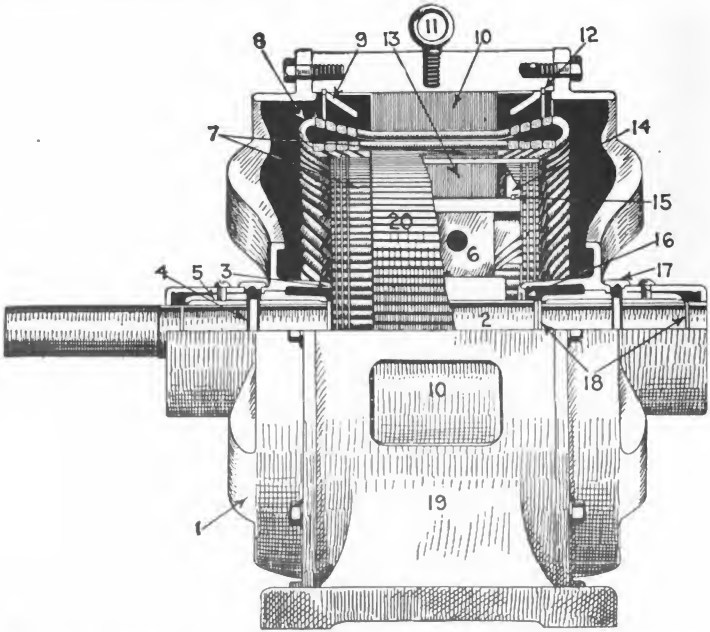


FIG. 1,653.—Sectional view showing parts of Reliance polyphase induction motor. A special feature of the squirrel cage armature construction is the multiplicity of short circuiting rings. The holes in the rings are bored slightly smaller than the diameter of the copper rods, and the force fit gives good contact. The rings having been forced in place are dip soldered in an alloy of tin of high melting point. The motor parts are: 1, end yoke; 2, shaft; 3, armature short circuiting rings; 4, oil ring; 5, self-aligning bearing bushing; 6, spider; 7, armature bars; 8, field coils; 9, field lamination end plate; 10, field laminations; 11, eye bolt; 12, stator locking key; 13, armature laminations; 14, armature lamination end plate; 15, armature locking key; 16, dust cap; 17, oil well cover; 18, oil throws; 19, field frame; 20, squirrel cage armature.

Digitized by Google

induction motors are slightly more efficient at all loads than two phase motors of corresponding size, due to the superior distribution of the field windings. The power factor is higher, especially at light loads, and the starting torque with full load current is also greater. Furthermore, for given requirements of load and voltage, the amount of copper required in the distributing system is less; consequently, wherever service conditions will permit, three phase motors are preferable to two phase.

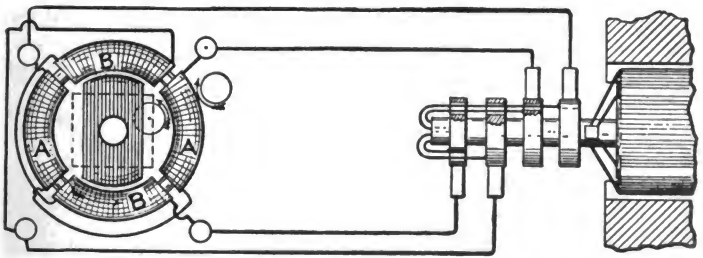


FIG. 1,654.—Tesla's rotating magnetic field. The figure is from one of Tesla's papers as given in The Electrician, illustrating how a rotating magnetic field may be produced with stationary magnets and polyphase currents. The illustration shows a laminated iron ring overwound with four separate coils, AA, and BB, each occupying about 90° of the periphery. The opposite pairs of coils AA and BB respectively are connected in series and joined to the leads from a two phase alternator, the pair of coils AA being on one circuit and the coils BB on the other. The resultant flux may be obtained by combining the two fluxes due to coils AA and BB, taking account of the phase difference of the two phase current, as in fig. 1,655.

The construction of an induction motor is very simple, and since there are no sliding contacts as with commutator motors, there can be no sparks during operation—a feature which adapts the motor for use in places where fire hazards are prominent.

The motor consists, as already mentioned, simply of two parts: *an armature and field magnets, without any electrical connection between these parts.* Its operation depends upon:

Digitized by Google

1. *The production of a rotating field;*
2. *Induction of current in the armature;*
3. *Reaction between the revolving field and the induced currents.*

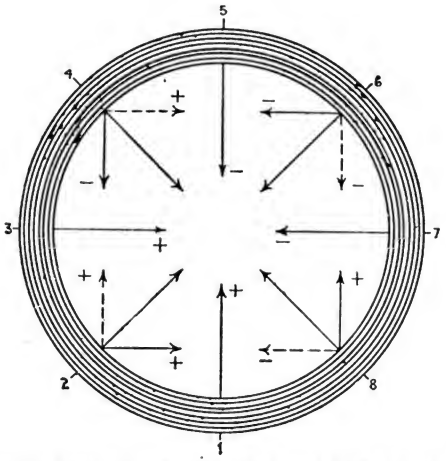


FIG. 1,655.—Method of obtaining resultant flux of Tesla's rotating magnetic field. The eight small diagrams here seen show the two components and resultant for eight equivalent successive instants of time during one cycle. At 1, the vertical flux is at + maximum and the horizontal is zero. At 2, the vertical flux is still + but decreasing, and the horizontal is + and increasing, the resultant is the thick line sloping at 45° upwards to the right; At 3, the vertical flux is zero, and the horizontal is at its + maximum, and similarly for the other diagrams. Thus at 8, the vertical flux is + and increasing, while the horizontal is − and decreasing, the resultant is the thick line sloping at 45° upwards to the left. At points 2, 4, 6, and 8 the increasing fluxes are denoted by full and the decreasing by dotted lines. The laminated iron of the ring is indicated by the circles, and the result is that at the instants chosen the flux across the plane of the ring is directed inwards from the points 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., on the inner periphery of the iron. There will, therefore, appear successively at these points effective north poles, the corresponding south poles being simultaneously developed at the points diametrically opposite. These poles travel continuously from one position to the next, and thus the magnetic flux across the plane of the ring swings round and round, completing a revolution without change of intensity during the cycle time of the current.

Production of a Rotating Field.—It should at once be understood that the term "rotating field" does not signify that part of the apparatus revolves, the expression merely refers to

Digitized by Google

the magnetic lines of force set up by the field magnets without regard to whether the latter be the stationary or rotating member.

A rotating field then may be defined as *the resultant magnetic field produced by a system of coils symmetrically placed and supplied with polyphase currents.*

A rotating magnetic field can, of course, be produced by spinning a horse shoe magnet around its longitudinal axis, but with polyphase currents, as will be later shown, the rotation of the field can be produced without any movement of the mechanical parts of the electro magnets.

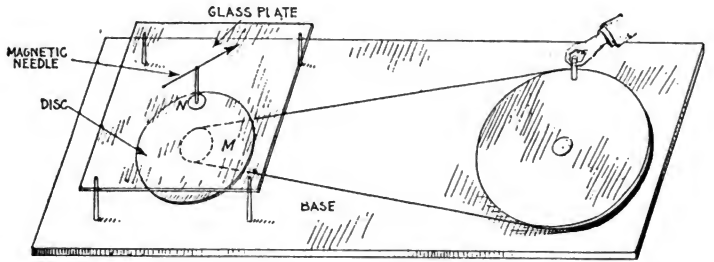


FIG. 1,656.—Arago's rotations. The apparatus necessary to make the experiment consists of a copper disc M, arranged to rotate around a vertical axis and operated by belt drive, as shown. By turning the large pulley by hand, the disc M may be rotated with great rapidity. Above the disc is a glass plate on which is a small pivot supporting a magnetic needle N. If the disc now be rotated with a slow and uniform velocity, the needle is deflected in the direction of the motion, and stops at an angle of from 20° to 30° with the direction of the magnetic meridian, according to the velocity of the rotation of the disc. If the velocity increase, the needle is ultimately deflected more than 90° and then continues to follow the motion of the disc.

The original rotating magnetic field dates back to 1823, when Francois Jean Arago, an assistant in Davy's laboratory, discovered that if a magnet be rotated before a metal disc, the latter had a tendency to follow the motion of the magnet, as shown in fig. 290, page 270 and also in fig. 1,656. This experiment led up to the discovery which was made by Arago in 1824, when he observed that the *number of oscillations which a magnetized*

Digitized by Google

needle makes in a given time, under the influence of the earth's magnetism, is very much lessened by the proximity of certain metallic masses, and especially of copper, which may reduce the number in a given time from 300 to 4.

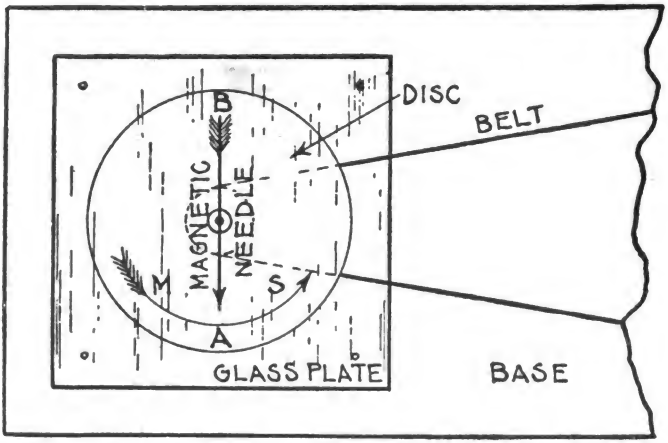


FIG. 1,657.—Explanation of Arago's rotations. Part of fig. 1,656 is here reproduced in plan Faraday was the first to give an explanation of the phenomena of magnetism by rotation in attributing it to the induction of currents which, by their electro-dynamic action, oppose the motion producing them; the action is mechanically analogous to friction. In the figure, let AB be a needle oscillating over a copper disc, and suppose that in one of its oscillations it goes in the direction of the arrow from M to S. In approaching the point S, for instance, it develops there a current in the opposite direction, and which therefore repels it; in moving away from M it produces currents which are of the same kind, and which therefore attract, and both these actions concur in bringing it to rest. Again, suppose the metallic mass turn from M towards S, and that the magnet be fixed; the magnet will repel by induction points such as M which are approaching A, and will attract S which is moving away; hence the motion of the metal stops, as in Faraday's experiment. If in Arago's experiment the disc be moving from M to S, M approaches A and repels it, while S, moving away, attracts it; hence the needle moves in the same direction as the disc. If this explanation be true, all circumstances which favor induction will increase the dynamic action; and those which diminish the former will also lessen the latter.

The explanation of Arago's rotations is that *the magnetic field cutting the disc produces eddy currents therein and the reaction between the latter and the field causes the disc to follow the rotations of the field.*

Digitized by Google

The induction motor is a logical development of the experiment of Arago, which so interested Faraday while an assistant in Davy's laboratory and which led him to the discovery of the laws of electro-magnetic induction, which are given in Chapter X.

*In 1885, Professor **Ferraris**, of Turin **discovered** that *a rotating field could be produced from stationary coils by means of polyphase currents.*

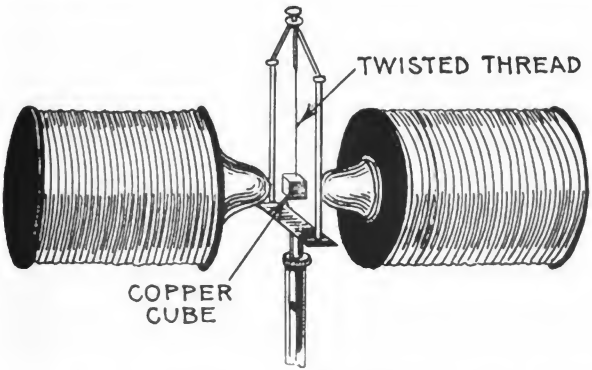


FIG. 1,658.—Experiment made by Faraday being the reverse of Arago's first observation. Faraday assumed that since the presence of a metal at rest stops the oscillations of a magnetic needle, the neighborhood of a magnet at rest ought to stop the motion of a rotating mass of metal. He suspended a cube of copper by a twisted thread, which was placed between the poles of a powerful electromagnet. When the thread was left to itself, it began to spin round with great velocity, but stopped the moment a powerful current was passed through the electro-magnet.

†This discovery was commercially applied a few years later by Tesla, Brown, and Dobrowolsky.

*NOTE.—Walmsley attributes the first production of rotating fields to Walter Bailey in 1879. who exhibited a model at a meeting of the Physical Society of London, but very little was done, it is stated, until Ferraris took up the subject.

†NOTE.—The Tesla patents were acquired in the U. S. by the Westinghouse Co. in 1888, and polyphase induction motors, as they were called, were soon on the market. Brown of the Oerlikon Machine Works developed the single phase system and operated a transmission plant over five miles in length at Kassel, Germany, which operated at 2,000 volts.

Digitized by Google

The principles of polyphase motors can be best understood by means of elementary diagrams illustrating the action of polyphase currents in producing a rotating magnetic field, as explained in the paragraphs following.

Production of a Rotating Magnetic Field by Two Phase Currents.—Fig. 1,659 represents an iron ring wound with coils of insulated wire, which are supplied with a two phase current at the four points A, B, C, D, the points A and B, and C and D, being electrically connected.

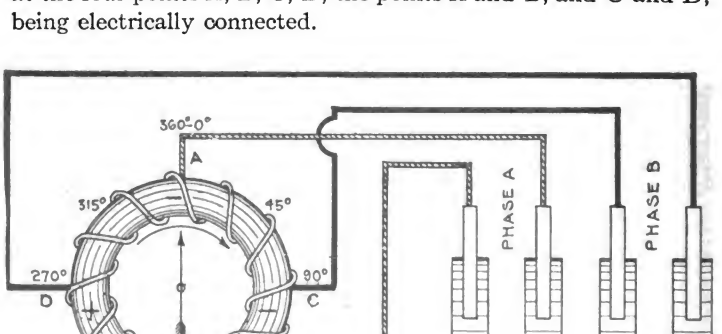


FIG. 1,659.—Production of a rotating magnetic field by two phase currents. The figure represents an iron ring, wound with coils of insulated wire, and supplied with two phase currents at the four points A, B, C, and D. The action of the two phase current on the ring in producing a rotating magnetic field is explained in the accompanying text.

According to the principles of electro-magnetic induction, if only one current *a* entered the ring at A, and the direction of the winding be suitable, a negative pole (—) will be produced at A and a positive pole (+) at B, so that a magnetic needle pivoted in the center of the ring would tend to point vertically

Digitized by Google

upward towards A. Now suppose that at this instant, corresponding to the beginning of an alternating current cycle, a second current *b*, differing in phase from the first by 90 degrees, is allowed to enter the ring at C. As shown in fig. 1,659, when the pressure of the current *a* is at its maximum, that of the current *b* is at its minimum; therefore, even a two phase current, at the beginning of the cycle, the needle will point toward A.

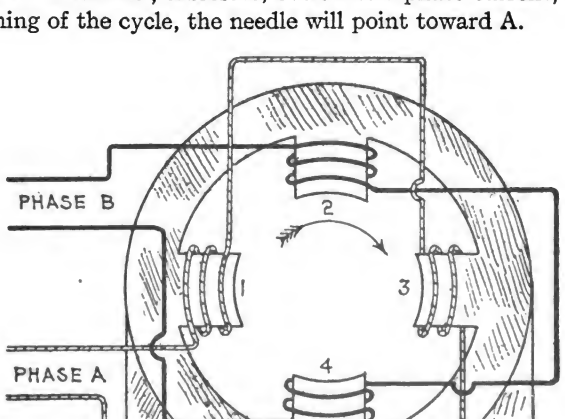


FIG. 1,660.—Production of rotating magnetic field in a two pole two phase motor. The poles are numbered from 1 to 4 in a clockwise direction. Phase A winding is around poles 1 and 3, and phase B winding, around poles 2 and 4. In each case the poles are wound alternately, that is, if 1 be wound clockwise, 3 will be wound counter clockwise, thus producing unlike polarity in opposite poles. Now during one cycle of the two phase current, the following changes take place, starting with pole 1 of N polarity and 3, of S polarity:

	One Cycle			
Degrees	0° to 90°	90° to 180°	180° to 270°	270° to 360°
Polarity	1N — 3S	2N — 4S	3N — 1S	4N — 2S

Digitized by Google

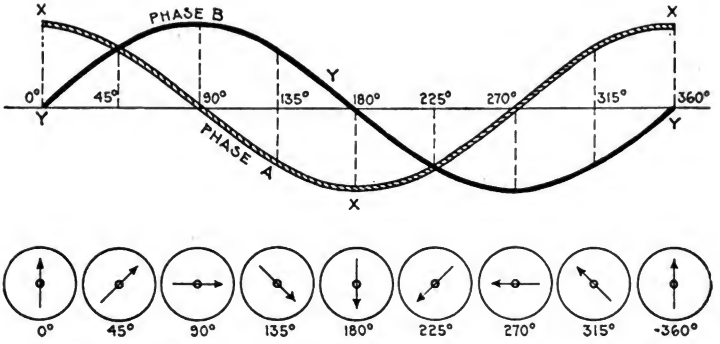


FIG. 1,661.—Diagram showing resultant poles due to two phase current.

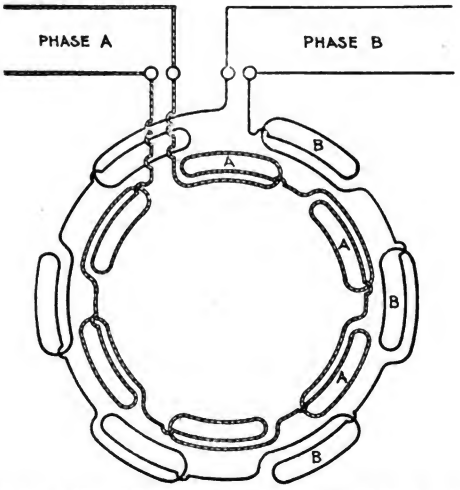


FIG. 1,662.—Diagram of two phase, six pole field winding. There are six coils in each phase, as shown. The coils of each phase are connected in series, adjacent coils being joined in opposite senses, thus, for each phase, first one coil is wound clockwise, and the next counter clockwise.

Digitized by Google

As the cycle continues, however, the strength of *a* will diminish and that of *b* increase, thus shifting the induced pole toward C, until *b* attains its maximum and *a* falls to its minimum at 90° or the end of the first quarter of the cycle, when the needle will point toward C. At 90°, the phase *a* current reverses in direction

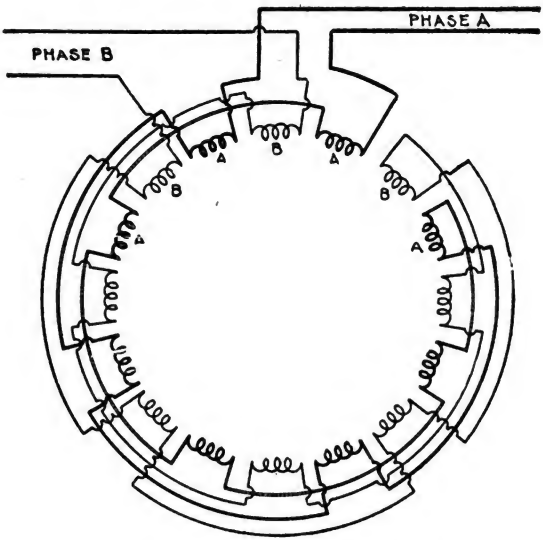


FIG. 1,663.—Diagram of two phase, eight pole field winding. The winding is divided into 16 groups (equal to the product of the number of poles multiplied by the number of phases). Each group such as at A comprises a number of coils in series, each coil being located in a separate pair of slots, the end of one being connected to the beginning of the next. When the currents are in the same direction, the currents circulate in the same direction in two adjacent groups, a pole then with this arrangement being formed by two groups, both phases contributing to the formation of the pole. After ¼ cycle when the current in each phase reverses, the pole advances the angular distance, covered by two groups; hence the field completes one revolution in eight alternations of current.

and produces a negative pole at B, and as its strength increases from 90° to the 180° point of the cycle, and that of phase *b* diminishes, the resultant negative pole is shifted past C toward

Digitized by Google

Figs. 1,664 to 1,683.—Sine curves of two phase current and diagrams showing the physical conception of **a two phase rotating magnetic field.** The alternating magnetizing current is assumed to be of such strength that, at its maximum strength, the field produced may be represented by 10 lines of force as indicated by the parallel lines. At the beginning of the rotation, fig. 1,664, phase A magnetization, according to sine curve is zero, indicated by the solid black poles, while phase B is of strength 10 with

current in the direction to produce a south pole at B. Similarly, in fig. 1,665, the strength of A is 4 lines, and of B, 9 lines, the resultant magnetization having rotated 22½°. The direction of the resultant magnetization is indicated by the arrow in each figure. It should be noted in fig. 1,669, that the polarity of B is reversed, the current curve now being above the zero line. By following the arrow through the successive positions the rotation of the resultant magnetization is clearly seen.

Digitized by Google

B, until *a* attains its maximum and *b* falls to its minimum at 180°, and the needle points in the direction of B.

At the 180° point of the cycle, *b* reverses in direction and produces a negative pole at D, and as the fluctuation of the pressure of the two currents during the second half of the cycle, from 180° to 360°, bear the same relation to each other as during the first half, the resultant poles of the rotating magnetic field thus produced carry the needle around in continuous rotation so long as the two phase current traverses the windings of the ring.

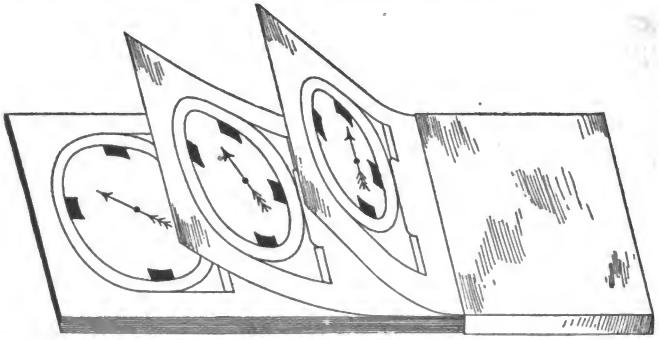


FIG. 1,684.—Moving picture method of showing motion of a rotary magnetic field. A number of sheets of paper are prepared, each containing a drawing of the motor frame and a magnetic needle in successively advancing angular positions, indicating resultant directions of the magnetism. The sheets are bound together so that the axis of the needle on each sheet coincides. When passing the sheets in one way the revolving field will be seen to rotate in one direction, while, when moving the sheets backward, the rotation of the magnetic field is in the opposite direction, showing that the reversal of the order of the coils has the effect of reversing the rotation of the magnetic field.

Production of Rotating Magnetic Field by Three Phase Current.—A rotating magnetic field is produced by the action of a three phase current in a manner quite similar to the action of a two phase current. Fig. 1,685 shows a ring suitably wound and supplied with a three phase current at three points A, B, C, 120° of a cycle apart.

Digitized by Google

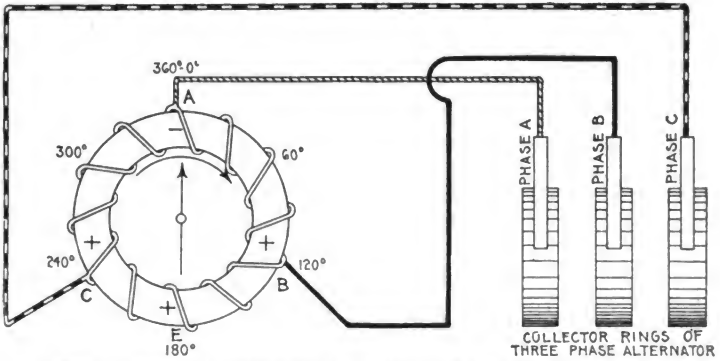


FIG. 1,685.—Production of a rotating magnetic field by three phase current. A ring wound as shown is tapped at points A, B, and C, 120° apart, and connected with leads to a three phase alternator. As described on page 1,304, a rotating magnetic field is produced in a manner similar to the two phase method.

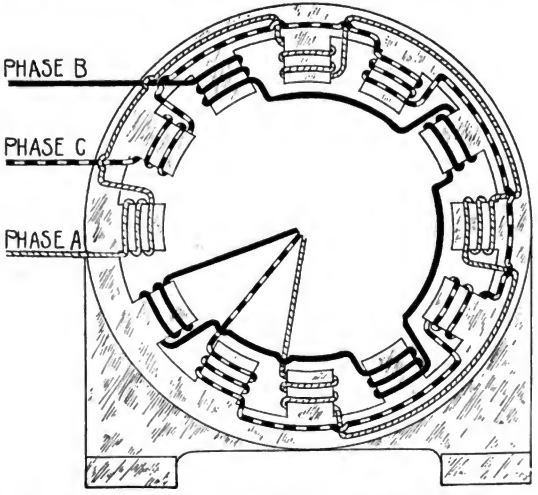


FIG. 1,686.—Diagram of three phase, four pole Y connected field winding.

Digitized by Google

At the instant when the current *a*, flowing in at A, is at its maximum, two currents *b* and *c*, each one-half the value of *a*, will flow out B and C, thus producing a negative pole at A and a positive pole at B and at C. The resultant of the latter will be a positive pole at E, and consequently, the magnetic needle will point towards A.

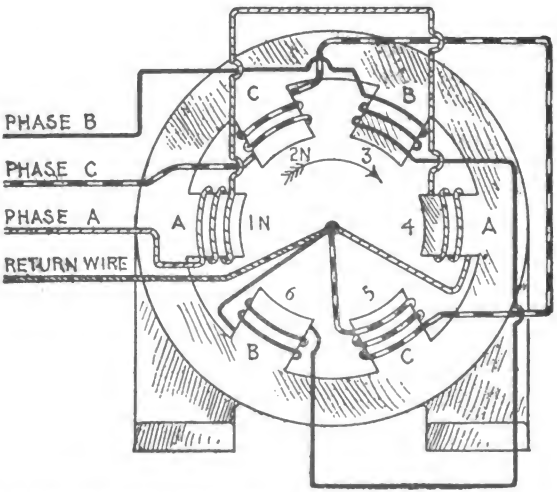


FIG. 1,687.—**Production** of a rotating magnetic field in a two pole three phase motor. In order to obtain a uniformly rotating magnetic field, it is necessary to arrange the phase windings in the direction of rotation, in the sequence ACB, not ABC as indicated on the magnets. Thus poles 1 and 4 are connected in series to phase A, 2 and 5 in series to phase C, and 3 and 6 in series to phase B. The different phase windings are differently lined, and it should be noted that they have a common return wire, though this is not absolutely necessary. Since the phases of the three currents differ from each other by one-third of a period or cycle, each of the phase windings will therefore set up a field between its poles, which at any instant will differ, both in direction and magnitude, from the fields set up by the other phase windings. Hence, the three phase windings acting together will produce a resultant field, and if plotted out, the directions of this field for various fractions of the period is such that in one complete period the resultant field will make one complete round of the poles in a clockwise direction, as indicated by the curved arrow. The positions of the resultant field during one complete period may be tabulated as follows:

	One Cycle					
	0° to 60°	60° to 120°	120° to 180°	180° to 240°	240° to 300°	300° to 360°
Polarity	1N − 4S	2N − 5S	3N − 6S	4N − 1S	5N − 2S	6N − 3S

Digitized by Google

As the cycle advances, however, the mutual relations of the fluctuations of the pressures of the three currents, and the time of their reversals of direction will be such, that when a maximum current is flowing at any one of the points A, B, and C, two currents each of one-half the value of the entering current will flow out of the other two points, and when two currents are entering at any two points, a current of maximum value will flow out of the other point. This action will produce one complete rotation of the magnetic field during each cycle of the current.

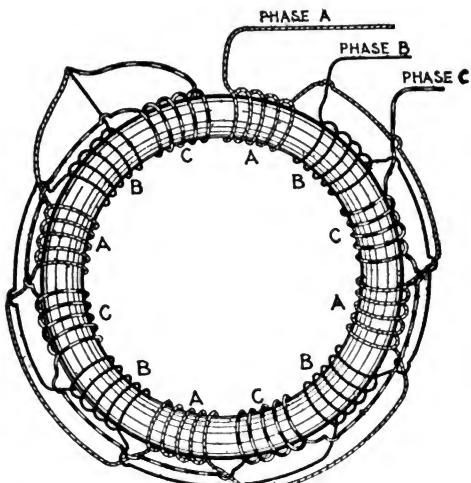


FIG. 1,688.—Production of three phase rotating magnetic field with winding on laminated iron ring. The winding is divided into twelve sections, which are connected in three groups, A, B, and C, of four sections each, the sections in each group being evenly placed round the ring with the sections of the two other groups between them. One end of each group is to be connected to the line wire and the other end to the common junction J, from which it follows that the winding given is an example of "star" winding. With three phase currents the winding will give at every instant four N poles and four S poles round the ring, and in actual working these poles will be on the inner periphery because of the presence of an inner ring or cylinder of good magnetic iron placed, with the requisite clearance to allow of rotation, as close as is mechanically possible to the outer ring. Each one of these eight poles will make a complete revolution round the ring in four times the periodic time of the currents supplied. Thus, if the supply current has a frequency of 50, a complete revolution of the field will take place in .08 (= 4/50) of a second, which corresponds to an angular velocity of 750 revolutions per minute in place of 3,000 revolutions per minute, which would be the angular velocity with a bi-polar field at this periodicity. Similarly a continuously wound Gramme ring tapped at twelve points, joined in three groups of four each to the supply mains, would give an eight pole rotary field. In this case the grouping would be a "mesh" grouping, with each side of the mesh formed of four coils in parallel.

Digitized by Google

Figs. 1,689 to 1,708.—Sine curves of three phase current and diagrams showing the physical conception of **a three phase rotating magnetic field.** The diagrams are constructed in the same manner as explained in figs. 1,664 to 1,683. It should be noted that the phase windings are arranged in the direction of rotation in the sequence ACB, phase C being wound in opposite

Digitized by Google

sense to A and B, as indicated by the curves, in that north poles are produced at A and B when the respective curves are above the zero line, a south pole being produced at C when its curve is above the zero line. The rotation of the resultant magnetization is clearly seen by following the arrow through its successive positions.

Digitized by Google

Slip.—Instead of the magnetic needle as was used in the preceding figures, a copper cylinder may be placed in a rotating magnetic field and it will be urged also to turn in the same direction as the rotation of the field.

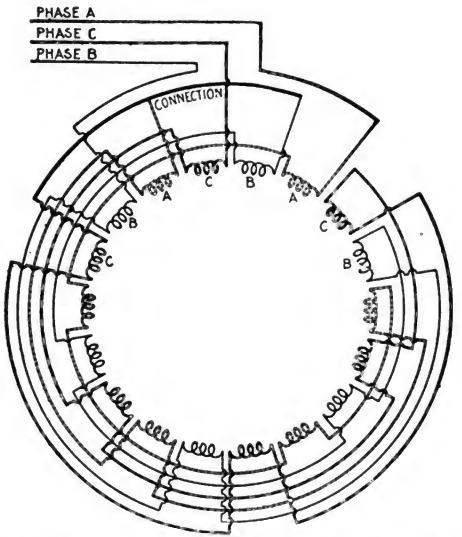


FIG. 1,708.—Diagram of three phase, six pole field winding. There are 18 groups, and the sequence of phases is ABC in a counter clockwise direction. For a Y connection, the middle phase is reversed, so that a pole will be formed by the three consecutive phases when the current is in the same direction in A and C, and opposite in B. The beginning of the middle coil C, and not the end, as with the other two, is connected to the common point O. In this case the pole shifts a distance equal to three groups for each alternation, so that one revolution of the field requires three cycles.

The torque tending to turn the cylinder is due to the induction of currents of opposite polarity in the cylinder.

For simplicity, the rotating magnetic field may be supposed to be produced by a pair of magnetic poles placed at opposite sides of the cylinder and *revolved around it* as in fig. 1,710.

Digitized by Google

Now, for instance in starting, the cylinder being at rest any element or section of the surface as the shaded area A B, will, as it comes into the magnetic field of the rotating magnet, cut

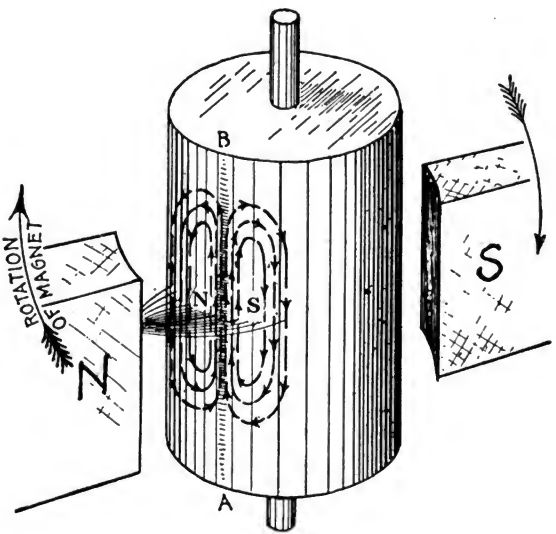
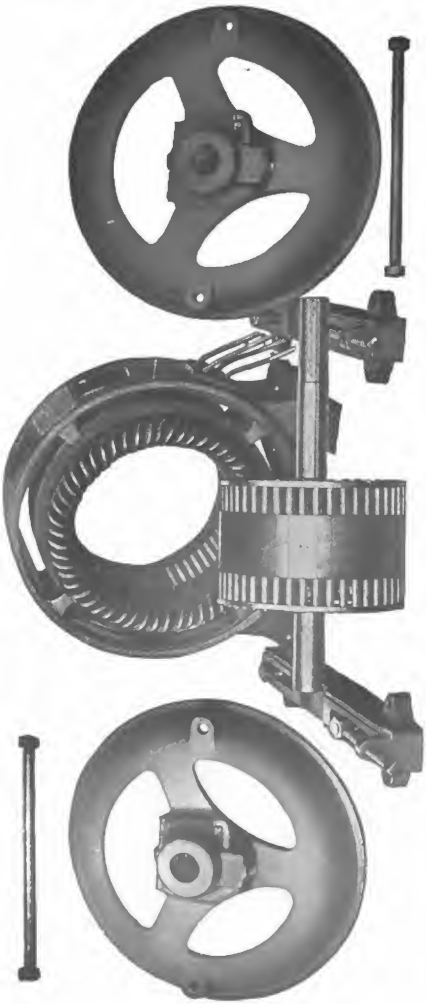


FIG. 1,710.—Copper cylinder and rotating magnet *illustrating the principle of operation of an induction motor.* The "rotating magnetic field" which is necessary for induction motor operation is for simplicity here produced by rotating a magnet as shown. In starting, the cylinder being at rest, any element as AB, as it is swept by the field will cut magnetic lines, which will induce a current upward in direction as determined by applying Fleming's rule (fig. 132, page 133). The inductive action is strongest at the center of the field hence as AB passes the center the induced pressure along AB is greater than along elements more or less remote on either side. Accordingly a pair of eddy currents will result as shown (see fig. 291, page 271). Applying the right hand rule for polarity of these eddy currents (see fig. 119, page 117) it will be seen that a S pole is induced by the eddy on the side of the cylinder receding from the magnet, and a N pole by the eddy on the side toward which the magnet is approaching. The cylinder, then, is *attracted* in the direction of rotation of the magnet by the induced pole on the receding side, and *repelled* in the same direction by the induced pole on the approaching side. Accordingly, the cylinder begins to rotate. The velocity with which it turns depends upon the load; it must always turn *slower* than the magnet, in order that its elements may cut magnetic lines and induce poles to produce the necessary torque to balance the load. The difference in speed of the magnet and cylinder is called the *slip*. Evidently the greater the load, the greater is the slip required to induce poles of sufficient strength to maintain equilibrium. The figure is drawn somewhat distorted, so that both eddies are visible.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,711 to 1,718.—Parts of Allis-Chalmers polyphase induction motor with squirrel cage armature.

magnetic lines of force inducing a current therein, whose direction is easily determined by applying Fleming's rule.

Since the field is not uniform, but gradually weakens, as shown, on either side of the shaded area (which is just passing the center), the pressure induced on either side will be less than that induced in the shaded area, giving rise to eddy currents (as illustrated in

NOTE.—In order to avoid confusion in applying Fleming's rule, it may be well to regard the pole as being stationary and the cylinder as in motion; for, since motion is "purely a relative matter" (see fig. 1,393), the inductive action will be the same as if the pole stood still while the cylinder revolved from left to right, that is, counter clockwise, looking down on it. Regarding it thus (pole stationary and cylinder revolving counter clockwise) Fleming's rule (see fig. 132, page 133) is easily applied to ascertain the direction of the induced current, which is found to flow upward in the shaded area as shown.

Digitized by Google

fig. 291, page 271). These eddy currents induce poles as indicated at the centers of the whorls, the polarity being determined by applying the right hand rule (fig. 119, page 117).

By inspection of fig. 1710, it is seen that *the induced pole toward which the magnet is moving is of the same polarity as the magnet; therefore it is* **repelled**, *while the induced pole from which the magnet is receding, being of opposite polarity, is* **attracted.** *A torque is thus produced tending to rotate the cylinder.*

It must be evident that this torque is greatest when the cylinder is at rest, because the magnetic lines are cut by any element on the cylindrical surface at the maximum rate.

Moreover, as cylinder is set in motion and brought up to speed, the torque is gradually reduced, because the rate with which the magnetic lines are cut is gradually reduced.

Ques. What is the essential condition for the operation of an induction motor?

Ans. The armature, or part in which currents are induced, must rotate at a speed slower than that of the rotating magnetic field.

In the elementary induction motor, fig. 1,710, the cylinder is the armature, and the rotating magnets are the equivalent of a rotating magnetic field.

Ques. What is the difference of speed called?

Ans. *The slip.*

Ques. Why is slip necessary in the operation of an induction motor?

Ans. If the armature had no weight and there was no friction offered by the bearings and air, it would revolve in synchronism with the rotating magnetic field, that is, the slip would be zero; but since weight and friction are always present and constitute

Digitized by Google

a small load, its speed of rotation will be a little less than that of the rotating magnetic field, so that induction will take place, in amount sufficient to produce a torque that will balance the load.

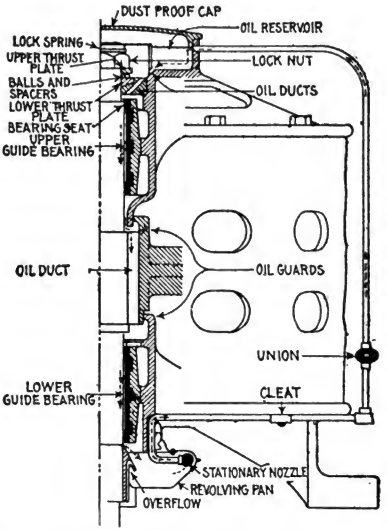


FIG. 1,719.—General Electric vertical type induction motor; sectional view showing oiling system. It is provided with ball thrust bearings and top and bottom guide bearings, and a continuous flow of oil is maintained through all the bearings by means of a pump which is made integral with the motor. The ball thrust bearings are designed to support the weight of the armature only. In cases where the armature is direct connected a flexible coupling should be used to prevent additional weight coming on the thrust bearings. In operation, when the motor starts, the oil, revolving with the pan, flows against the stationary nozzle and is forced by its velocity at a high pressure through the oil pipe into the reservoir on top. It then flows down through the ball bearing and upper guide bearing, through a slot in the armature spider into the lower guide bearing and thence into the oil pan. Thus a continuous stream of oil is delivered through all bearings.

Ques. How is slip expressed?

Ans. In terms of synchronism, that is, as a percentage of the speed of the rotating magnetic field.

Digitized by Google

The slip is obtained from the following formula:

$$\text{Slip (rev. per sec.)} = S_f - S_a$$

or, expressed as a percentage of synchronism, that is, of the synchronous speed,

$$\text{Slip (\%)} = \frac{(S_f - S_a) \times 100}{S_f}$$

where

S_f = Synchronous speed, or R.P.M. of the rotatory magnetic field;
S_a = Speed of the armature.

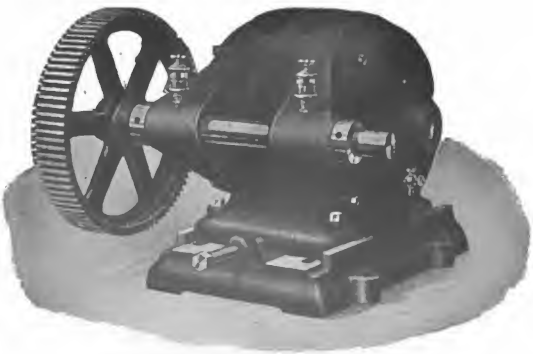


FIG. 1,720.—Triumph back geared polyphase induction motor. A great many applications, especially for direct attachment, require the use of either a very slow or special speed motor. As these are quite costly, the preferable arrangement, and one equally as satisfactory, is the use of a standard speed motor combined with a back geared attachment. Rawhide pinions are furnished whenever possible, insuring smooth running with a minimum of noise.

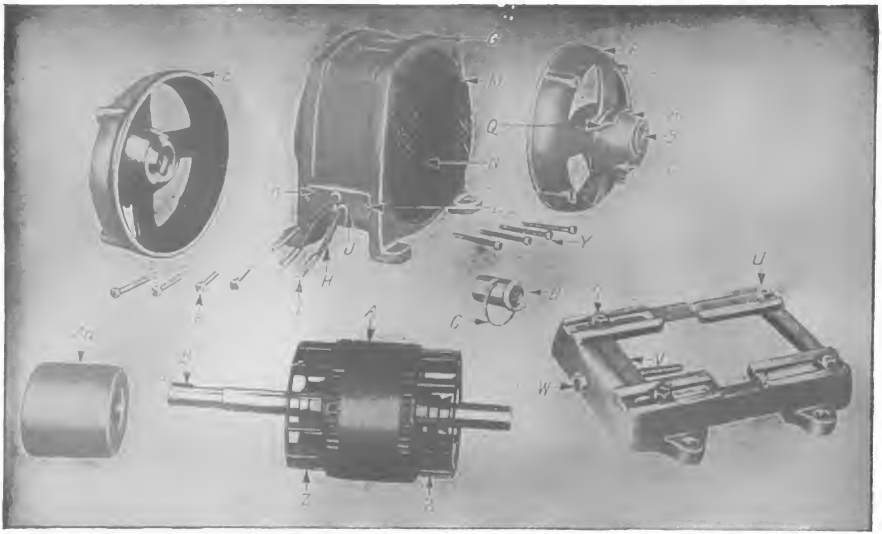
The synchronous speed is determined the same as for synchronous motor by use of the following formula:

$$S_f = \frac{2f}{P}$$

where

S_f = Synchronous speed or R.P.M. of the rotating magnetic field;
P = Number of poles;
f = frequency.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,721 to 1,735.—Parts of General Electric small polyphase induction motors. A, armature; B, key for armature shaft; C, oil ring; D, bearing lining; E, bearing head, pulley end; F, cap screw for bearing heads; G, field, complete with winding, terminal plate and leads; H, motor leads; I, terminal connector for motor leads; J, soft rubber bushing for motor leads; K, terminal plate; L, screw for terminal board; M, field coils; N, wooden top sticks for field coils; O, oil filler; P, bearing head opposite pulley end; Q, screw for oil well cover; R, oil well cover; S, socket pipe plug for bearing head; U, motor base; V, yoke for motor base; W, motor base adjusting screw; X, bolt for motor base and frame (short); Y, cap screw for bearing head; Z, internal directive fan; Aa, pulley.

Digitized by Google

The following table gives the synchronous speed for various frequencies and different numbers of poles:

Table of Synchronous Speeds

Frequency	R.P.M. of the rotating magnetic field, when number of poles is					
	2	6	10	16	20	24
25	1,500	500	300	188	150	125
60	3,600	1,200	720	450	360	300
80	4,800	1,600	960	600	480	400
100	6,000	2,000	1,200	750	600	500
120	7,200	2,400	1,440	900	720	600
125	7,500	2,500	1,500	938	750	625

Ques. How does the slip vary?

Ans. It varies from about 1 per cent. in a motor designed for very close regulation to 40 per cent. in one badly designed, or designed for some special purpose.

Ques. Why is the slip ordinarily so small?

Ans. Because of the very low resistance of the armature, very little pressure is required to produce currents therein, of sufficient strength to give the required torque. Hence, the necessary rate of cutting the magnetic lines to induce this pressure in the armature is reached with very little difference between the field speed and armature speed, that is, with very little slip.

Ques. How does the slip vary with the load?

Ans. The greater the load the greater the slip.

In other words, if the load increase, the motor will run slower, and the slip will increase. With the increased slip, the induced currents and the driving force will further increase. If the motor be well designed so that the field strength is constant and the lag of the armature currents is small, the driving force developed or *torque* will be proportional to the slip, that is the slip will increase automatically as the load is increased, so that the *torque* will be proportional to the load.

Digitized by Google

According to Weiner, the slip varies according to the following table:

SLIP OF INDUCTION MOTORS

Capacity of motor H. P.	Slip at full load per cent.		Capacity of motor H. P.	Slip at full load per cent.	
	Usual limits	Average		Usual limits	Average
1/8	20 to 40	30	15	5 to 11	8
1/4	10 " 30	20	20	4 " 10	7
1/2	10 " 20	15	30	3 " 9	6
1	8 " 20	14	50	2 " 8	5
2	8 " 18	13	75	1 " 7	4
3	8 " 16	12	100	1 " 6	3.5
5	7 " 15	11	150	1 " 5	3
7½	6 " 14	10	200	1 " 4	2.5
10	7 " 12	9	300	1 " 3	2

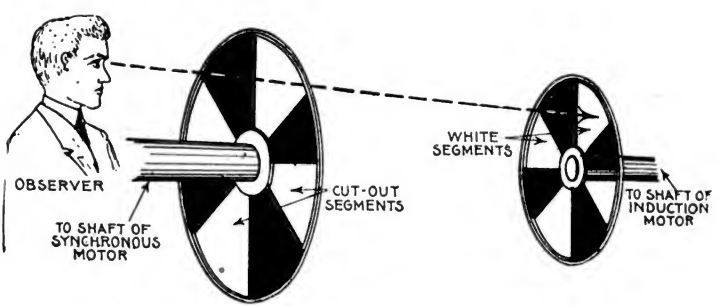


FIG. 1,736.—Sector method of measuring the slip of induction motors. A black disc having a number of white sectors (generally the same as the number of poles of the induction motor) is fastened with wax to shaft of the induction motor, and is observed through another disc having an equal number of sector shaped slits (that is a similar disc with the white sectors cut out) and attached to the shaft of a small self-starting synchronous motor, which is fitted with a revolution counter that can be thrown in or out of gear at will; then the slip (in terms of N_r) = $N \div (N_s \div N_r)$, in which: N = number of passages of the sectors; N_s = number of sectors; N_r = number of revolutions recorded by the counter during the interval of observation. For large values of slip, the observations may be simplified by using only one sector ($N_s = 1$), then N will equal the slip in revolutions.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Describe one way of measuring the slip.

Ans. A simple though rough way is to observe simultaneously the speed of the armature and the frequency, calculating the slip from the data thus obtained, as on page 1,315.

This method is not accurate, as, even with the most careful readings, large errors cannot be avoided. A better way is shown in fig. 1,736.

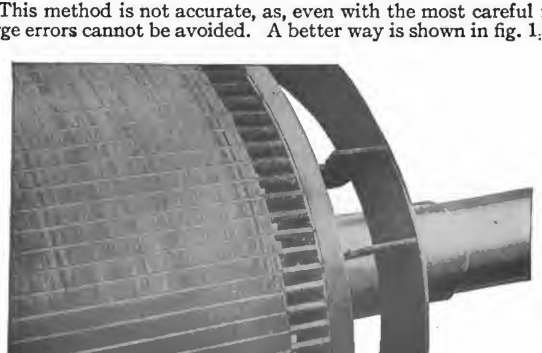
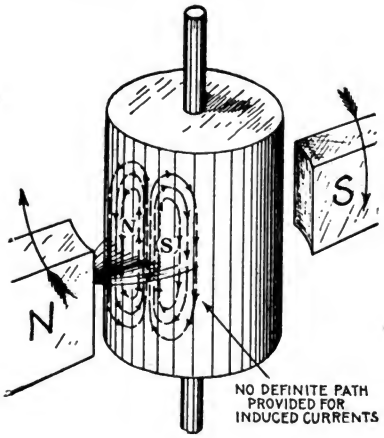


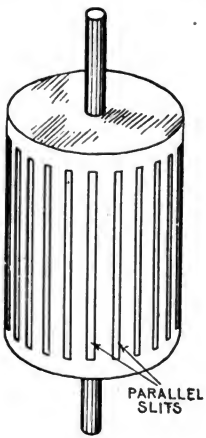
FIG. 1,737.—Detail of Westinghouse squirrel cage armature for induction motor. This is an example of *cast on* construction similar to that of Morse-Fairbanks (see figs. 1,752, 1,753 and 1,915). The inductors are embedded in a special cement.

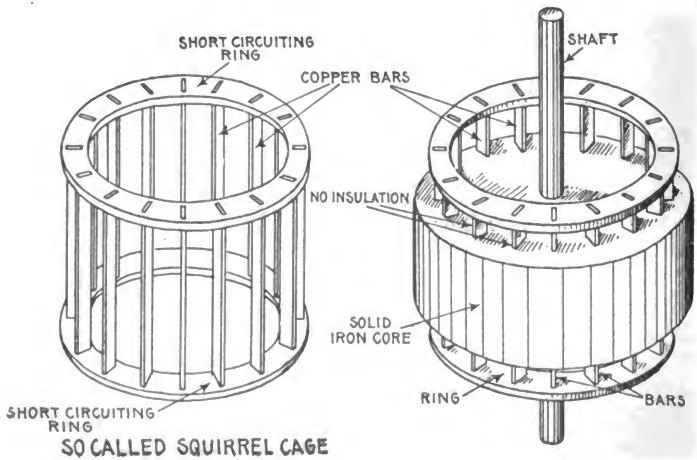
Evolution of the Squirrel Cage Armature.—In the early experiments with rotating magnetic fields, copper discs were used; in fact, it was then discovered that *a mass of copper or any conducting metal, if placed in a rotating magnetic field, will be urged in the direction of rotation of the field.*

Ferraris used a copper cylinder as in figs. 1,710 and 1,738, which was the first step in the evolution of the squirrel cage armature. The trouble with an armature of this kind is that there is no definite path provided for the induced currents.

Digitized by Google

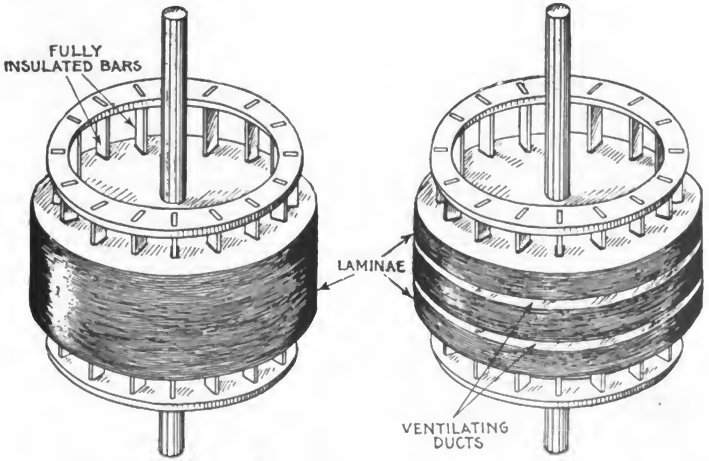


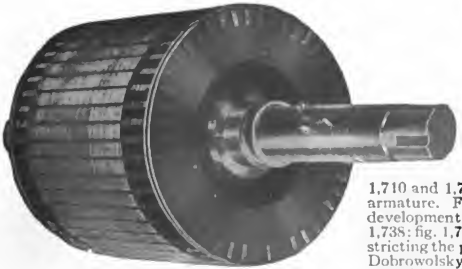




SQ CALLED SQUIRREL CAGE

Digitized by Google





FIGS. 1,738 to 1,744.—Evolution of the squirrel cage armature. The early experiments of Arago, Herschel, Babbage and Baily demonstrated that a mass of copper or any conducting metal, if placed in a revolving magnetic field, will be urged to revolve in the direction of the revolving field. They used discs, but Ferraris used a copper cylinder as shown in figs. 1,710 and 1,738; this was the first squirrel cage armature. Figs. 1,739 to 1,744 show the gradual development of the primitive device shown in fig. 1,738: fig. 1,739, Ferraris' cylinder with slots restricting the path of induced currents; fig. 1,740, Dobrowolsky's so-called squirrel cage which he embedded in a solid iron core, as in fig. 1,741; fig. 1,742, design with insulated bars and laminated core to prevent eddy currents in the core; fig. 1,743, laminated core with ventilating ducts; fig. 1,744, modern squirrel cage armature representing the latest practice as built by Mechanical Appliance Co. The core is built up of discs punched from No. 29 gauge electrical sheet, insulated from each other and firmly clamped between end plates locked on the shaft. The slots in the discs are of the same general form as those in the core. Heavy fibre end pieces, punched to match the discs are placed at each end of the core, to prevent the bars coming in contact with the sharp edges of the teeth. The winding is made up of rectangular copper bars, passing through slots in the core, and short circuited on each other by means of copper end rings of special design. The bars are pressed into holes punched in the end rings, and the contact is then protected from corrosion by being dipped in a solder bath. The bars are insulated from the iron of the core by fibre cell projecting beyond the end of the slot. To secure ventilation the short circuiting rings are set some distance from the end of the core. In this way the bars between the core and the ring act as the vanes of a pressure blower, forcing a large volume of air through the field coils and ventilating openings.

Digitized by Google

Obviously, a better result is obtained if, in fig. 1,738, the downward returning currents of the eddies are led into some path where they will return across a field of opposite polarity from

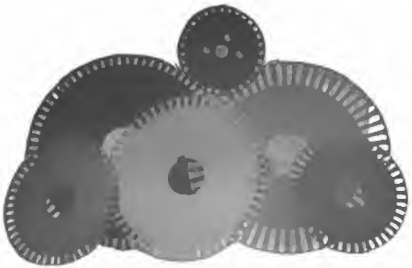


FIG. 1,745.—Mechanical Appliance Co. solid core discs as used on small and medium size induction motors.



FIG. 1,746.—Allis-Chalmers squirrel cage armature construction. The core laminae are mounted on a cast iron spider having arms shaped to act as fan blades for forcing air through the motor. The spider is pressed on to the shaft. In the smallest sizes the punchings are mounted directly on the shaft, which is properly machined to hold them firmly. Copper bars are used as inductors in the larger sizes, and copper rods in the smaller sizes. The ends of the inductors are turned down somewhat smaller than the body and fit in holes in the end rings. The shoulder thus formed fits firmly against the end rings. Good electrical contact is obtained by expanding the inductors in the end ring holes. In large armatures both bars and end rings are of rectangular cross section, the bars and rings being fastened by machine steel cap screws.

Digitized by Google

that across which they ascended, as in such case, the turning effect will be doubled. Accordingly the design of fig. 1,738 was modified by cutting a number of parallel slits which extended nearly to the ends, leaving at each end an uninterrupted "ring" of metal. This may be called the first squirrel cage armature, and in the later development Dobrowolsky was the first to employ a built-up construction, using a number of bars joined together by a ring at each end, as in fig. 1,740, and embedded in a solid



FIG. 1,747.—Triumph squirrel cage armature. In construction thin sheet steel laminations, japanned, are built up to form the core, and are rigidly clamped together by heavy malleable iron end plates. Semi-enclosed slots are punched in the outer periphery to receive the windings, so that none of the centrifugal force is carried by the inductors. These inductors are set edge on, and are riveted and soldered into resistance rings. These rings are punched to receive the inductors in such a manner that there is an unbroken strip of metal completely surrounding them. Moreover, the short circuiting rings are set some distance from the end of the core, so that the inductors between the core and ring act as vanes to force air through the coils for ventilation.

mass of iron, as in fig. 1,741; he regarding the bars merely as veins of copper lying buried in the iron.

A solid cylinder of iron will of course serve as an armature, as it is magnetically excellent; but the high specific resistance of iron prevents the flow of induced currents taking place sufficiently copiously; hence a solid cylinder of iron is improved by surrounding it with a mantle of copper, or by a squirrel cage of copper bars (like fig. 1,740), or by

Digitized by Google

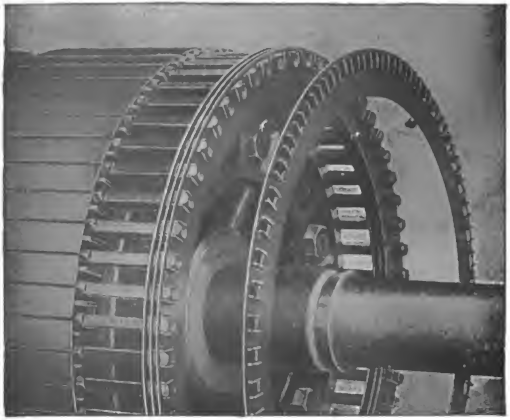


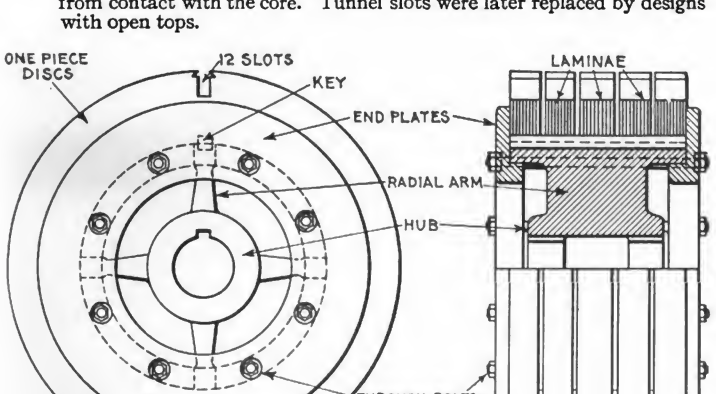
FIG. 1,748.—General Electric soldered form of end ring construction on squirrel cage armatures. The armature inductors or copper bars laid in the core slots are short circuited by these end rings, which are also made of copper. For the smaller sizes the rings are thin, but of considerable radial depth and are held apart by spacing washers. They have rectangular holes punched near their outer peripheries through which the bars pass. Lips are formed on the rings, as shown, to which the bars are soldered.



FIG. 1,749.—General Electric welded form of end ring construction on squirrel cage armatures. Space limitations make it difficult to provide multiple soldered rings of sufficient area for large motors; hence, on such machines welding is resorted to, as shown. The ring in welded construction is placed beneath the bars at each end of the armature. Short radial bars are welded to the edges of these rings and to the inductors or squirrel cage bars, thereby making good electrical contact.

Digitized by Google

embedding rods of copper (short circuited together at their ends with rings) in holes just beneath its surface. However, since all eddy currents that circle round, as those sketched in fig. 1,738, are not so efficient in their mechanical effect as currents confined to proper paths, and as they consume power and spend it in heating effects, the core was then constructed with laminations lightly insulated from each other, and further the squirrel cage copper bar inductors were fully insulated from contact with the core. Tunnel slots were later replaced by designs with open tops.



FIGS. 1,750 and 1,751.—Built up core construction with discs punched in one piece. The spider proper consists of a hub provided with four radial arms, which fit the inner diameter of the disc. The hub is bored out so that it fits very tightly on the shaft, and a key is provided to avoid any chance of turning. The core disks are clamped firmly in place by two heavy cast iron end plates which are pressed up and held by the bolts. These bolts pass under the discs, so that there is no danger of their giving rise to eddy currents. The key not only prevents the discs turning on the spider but also ensures the alinement of discs, which is necessary to make the teeth form smooth slots when the core is assembled.

Fig. 1,744 shows a modern squirrel cage armature conforming to the latest practice, other designs being illustrated in the numerous accompanying cuts.

In the smaller sizes, the core laminæ are of the solid type as shown in fig. 1,745, but for larger motors the core consists of a spider and segmental discs as shown in figs. 1,750 and 1,751.

Fig. 1,748 shows a soldered form of end ring construction, and figs. 1,752 and 1,753 the method of welding the end ring to the inductors.

Digitized by Google

The Field Magnets.—The construction of the field magnets, which, when energized with alternating current produce the rotating magnetic field, is in many respects identical with the armature construction of revolving field alternators.



FIG. 1,752.—Fairbanks-Morse squirrel cage armature with cast-on rings showing inspection grooves. The method consists in fusing the ends of the inductors into an end ring of a special composition, thereby producing a perfect electrical and mechanically strong joint. In this process the armature with its bars in place is put into a mould and the molten metal poured around the inductors, melting their ends and effectually fusing them into the body of the ring. The ring is then turned down to finished size and polished. An inspection groove is cut as shown to indicate that the fusion is complete and the joint perfect.

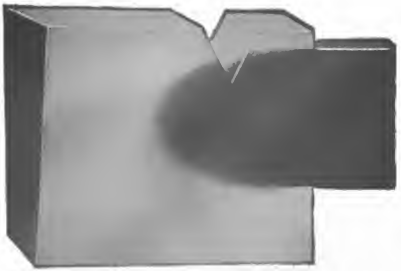


FIG. 1,753.—Section of Fairbanks-Morse "cast-on" joint showing union of end ring and inductor. The view shows the V-shape inspection groove as described in fig. 1,752.

Digitized by Google

Broadly, the field magnets of induction motors consists of:

1. Yoke or frame;
2. Laminae, or core stampings;
3. Winding.



FIG. 1,754.—Richmond field construction for polyphase induction motors, showing style of winding for use with squirrel cage and wound armature types.

Ques. What is the construction of the yoke and laminae?

Ans. They are in every way similar to the armature frame and core construction of revolving field alternators.

Field Windings for Induction Motors.—The field windings of induction motors are almost always made to produce

Digitized by Google



FIG. 1,755.—Western Electric squirrel cage armature of high speed induction motor for centrifugal pump service. This armature is an example of heavy duty construction. The inductors are welded to the short circuiting end rings, the latter being located beneath the inductors, as shown. Fan vanes are provided at one end for ventilation. In the field construction, the core laminations are assembled in a closed box frame, and clamped by heavy rings while under hydraulic pressure. The stator coils are form wound and subjected to a special insulating process, which renders them especially impervious to moisture, and capable of operating without breakdown in locations which are too damp for ordinary motors. The bearing brackets are of rigid mechanical construction, and the pulley end bracket and bearings of all sizes are split to facilitate removal of the rotor and complete inspection. These machines range in size from 50 to 200 horse power, the rugged construction adapting them to heavy and severe service, such as is met with in mining, the construction of dams, canals, aqueducts, tunnels, etc.

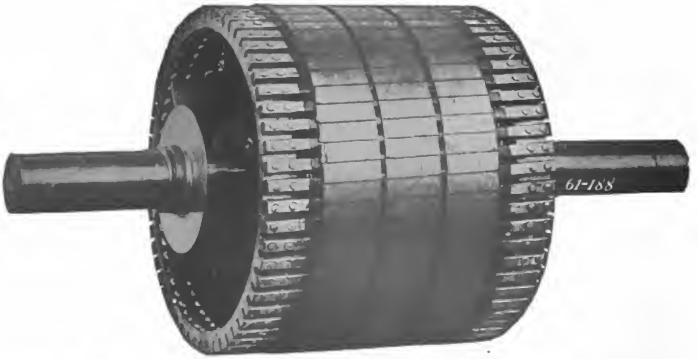


FIG. 1,756.—Wagner squirrel cage armature for polyphase induction motor, as employed on motors of from 5 to 25 horse power. The features of construction as seen in the illustration are bar inductors, ventilating passages through the core laminae, riveted connection between inductors and end rings ventilating vanes on end plate, extra large end rings. The object of making the rings unusually large is to make the resistance of the rings lower than is desirable for some classes of service, in order to obtain motors having minimum slip, increased efficiency, and maximum overload capacity under normal operation. When the torque required by some very unusual and entirely abnormal installation exceeds that of the average conditions it is an easy matter to reduce the section of the end rings, by turning them down in a lathe, thereby increasing the resistance and starting torque.

Digitized by Google

more than two poles in order that the speed may not be unreasonably high. This will be seen from the following:

If P be the number of *pairs* of poles per phase, f, the frequency, and N, the number of revolutions of the rotating field per minute, then

$$N = \frac{60 \times f}{P}$$

Thus for a frequency of 100 and one pair of poles, $N = 60 \times 100 \div 1 = 6{,}000$. By increasing the number of pairs of poles to 10, the frequency remaining the same, $N = 60 \times 100 \div 10 = 600$. Hence, in design, by increasing the number of pairs of poles the speed of the motor is reduced.

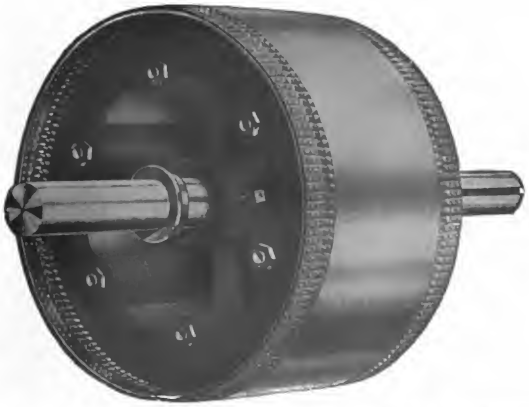


FIG. 1,757.—Richmond squirrel cage armature. The copper bars are double riveted at either end to the resistance rings, then dipped into a solder bath.

Ques. State an objection to very high speed of the rotating field.

Ans. The more rapid the rotation of the field, the greater is the starting difficulty.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Besides employing a multiplicity of poles, what other means is used to reduce the speed?

Ans. Reducing the frequency.

Ques. What difficulty is encountered with low frequency currents?

Ans. If the frequency be very low, the current would not be suitable for incandescent lamp lighting, because at low frequency the rise and fall of the current in the lamps is perceptible.

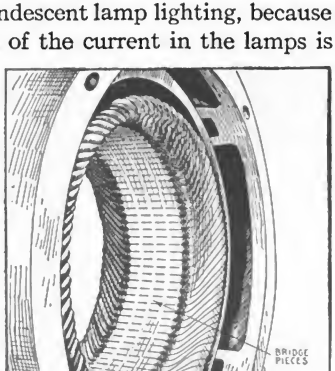


FIG. 1,758.—Field construction of Crocker Wheeler induction motor with *magnetic bridge* Steel bridges are inserted in the grooves where the coils are placed, to protect them from dirt and mechanical injury and at the same time provide a path for the magnetic flux which has a more uniform reluctance, thereby insuring a better distribution of the flux in the air gap and at the same time retaining open slot construction from which the coils can be readily removed.

Ques. What is the general character of the field winding?

Ans. The field core slots contain a distributed winding of substantially the same character as the armature winding of a revolving field polyphase alternator.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Are the poles formed in the usual way?

Ans. They are produced by properly connecting the groups of coils and not by windings concentrated at certain points on salient or separately projecting masses of iron, as in direct current machines.

Ques. How are the coils grouped?

Ans. Three phase windings are usually Y connected.



FIG. 1,759.—Western Electric squirrel cage armature. The inductors consist of solid copper bars embedded in the slots of a laminated core, with their projecting ends securely fitted and soldered to heavy copper rings.

Ques. What other arrangement is sometimes used?

Ans. In some cases Y grouping is used for starting and Δ grouping for running.

Starting of Induction Motors.—It must be evident that if the field winding of an induction motor whose armature is at rest, be connected directly in the circuit without using any starting device, the machine is placed in the same condition as a transformer with the secondary short circuited and the primary connected to the supply circuit. Owing to the very low resistance

Digitized by Google

of the armature, the machine, unless it be of very small size, would probably be destroyed by the heat generated before it could come up to speed. Accordingly some form of starting device is necessary. There are several methods of starting, as with:

1. Resistances in the field;
2. Auto-transformer or compensator;
3. Resistance in armature.



FIG. 1,760.—Holzer Cabot combination polyphase induction motor set, consisting of wound frame and three rotors: 1, squirrel cage armature, 2, wound armature, 3, rotating field. The set is intended for school demonstration of induction motor phenomena. The motor operating with the squirrel cage armature has an inherent constant speed characteristic and on brake tests will show its exceptionally strong starting torque and ability to take excessive overloads. This motor can be used as a generator also, in the sense that if connected to the line and driven above synchronous speed by some external means, it will act as an asynchronous generator and return power to the line. For variable speed service, an armature having a winding upon it similar to that on the frame must be used. External resistances inserted in the armature circuit may be used to produce, first, a reduction of starting current, second, an increase of starting torque, or third, a variation of speed. Thus an extensive list of experiments can be performed with this phase wound armature directly along the line of present engineering practice. The phase wound armature can be used as an alternator in the same sense as mentioned above for the squirrel cage machine. For synchronous motor and three phase operation the revolving field with projecting poles and slip rings would be used, the field being excited from a direct current supply.

Ques. Explain the method of inserting resistances in the field.

Ans. Variable resistances are inserted in the circuits leading to the field magnets and mechanically arranged so that the

Digitized by Google

resistances are varied simultaneously for each phase in equal amounts. These starting resistances are enclosed in a box similar to a direct current motor rheostat.

Ques. Is this a good method?

Ans. It is more economical to insert a variable inductance in the circuit, by using an auto-transformer.

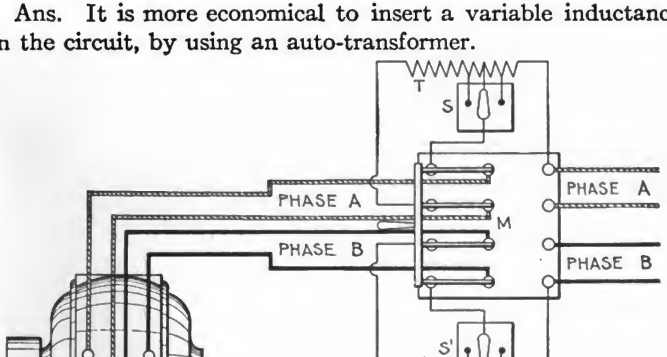


FIG. 1,761.—Westinghouse auto-starter. Polyphase induction motors may be started by connecting them directly to the circuit with an ordinary switch, and the smaller motors are started in this way in practice. In the larger motors, however, the starting torque at normal voltage is several times its full load torque; therefore, they are started on a reduced voltage, and the full pressure of the circuit is not applied until they have practically reached their operating speed. The figure shows connections with a two phase alternating current circuit. The auto-starter consists of two auto-transformers T and T', each having only a single winding for both primary and secondary, which are tapped at certain points by switches, thus dividing the winding into a number of loops, so that one of several voltages may be applied for starting, and the starting torque thus adjusted to the work that has to be performed. At the highest points tapped by the switches S, and S', the full pressure, and at the lowest points, the lowest pressure, is applied to the motor by the operation of the main switch M. This switch has four blades and three positions. When thrown to the left as indicated, it connects the auto-transformers T and T', across the circuits A and B respectively, so that the pressure across the transformer coils, as determined by the position of the switches S and S', is applied to the motor circuits A and B. The intermediate position of the switch M interrupts both circuits. To start the motor, the switch M is thrown to the left and a reduced pressure applied; after the motor has started and come up to speed the switch M is thrown to the right, thus cutting out the transformer and connecting the motor directly to the circuit. The starting device can be located at a point remote from the motor, thus eliminating danger from fire due to possible sparks, in case where it is necessary to install the motors in grain elevators, woolen mills, or in any place exposed to inflammable gases, or floating particles of combustible matter. This feature is also valuable in cases where motors are suspended from the ceiling, or installed in places not easily accessible.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is the auto-transformer or compensator method of starting?

Ans. It consists of reducing the pressure at the field terminals by interposing an impedance coil across the supply circuit and feeding the motor from variable points on its windings.

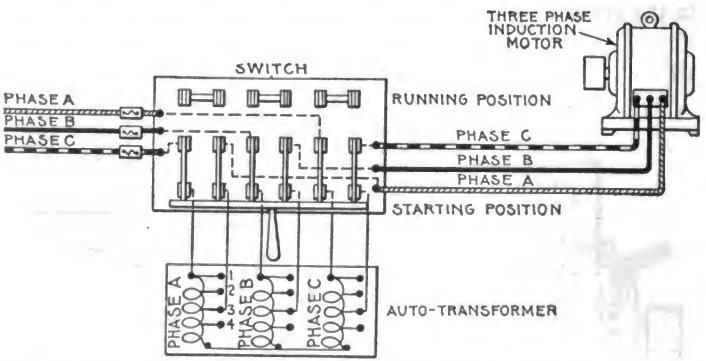


FIG. 1,762.—Auto-transformer or compensator connections for three phase induction motor. In operation when the double throw switch is thrown over to starting position, the current for each phase of the motor flows through an auto-transformer, which consists of a choking coil for each phase, arranged so that the current may be made to pass through any portion of it (as 1, 2, 3) to reduce the voltage to the proper amount for starting. After the motor has come up to speed on the reduced voltage, the switch is thrown over to running position, thus supplying the full line voltage to the motor. *In actual construction fuses are usually connected, so that they will be in circuit in the running position, but not in the starting position, where they might be blown by the large starting current.

Internal Resistance Induction Motors.—The armature of this type of induction motor differs from the squirrel cage variety in that the winding is not short circuited through copper rings, but, in starting, is short circuited through a resistance mounted directly on the shaft in the interior of the armature.

When the motor is thrown in circuit, a very low starting current is drawn from the line due to the added resistance in the armature. As the motor comes up to speed, this resistance is gradually cut out, and at full speed the motor operates as a squirrel cage motor, with short circuited winding.

*NOTE.—The construction of starting devices for induction motors is fully explained later, the accompanying cuts serving merely to illustrate the principles involved.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How is the resistance gradually cut out in internal resistance motors?

Ans. By operating a lever which engages a collar free to slide horizontally on the shaft. The collar moves over the internal resistance grids (located within the armature spider), thus gradually reducing their value until they are cut out.



FIG. 1,763.—View of armature interior of Wagner polyphase induction motor with wound armature, showing the centrifugal device which at the proper speed short circuits all the coils, transforming the motor to the squirrel cage type. The winding is connected with a vertical "commutator" so called. Inside the armature are two governor weights, which are thrown outwards by the centrifugal force when the machine reaches the proper speed, thus pushing a solid copper ring (which encircles the shaft) into contact with the inner ends of the "commutator" bars, thus completely short circuiting the armature winding.

Ques. For what size motors is the internal resistance method suited?

Ans. Small motors.

Ques. Why is it not desirable for large motors?

Ans. The excessive I^2R loss in the resistances, if confined within the armature spider, would produce considerable heating, and on this account it is best placed external to the motor.

Digitized by Google

Ques. On what class of circuit are internal resistance motors desirable?

Ans. On circuits devoted to lighting service as well as power service, where a high degree of voltage regulation is essential.

The initial rush of current when a squirrel cage motor is thrown on the line is more or less objectionable and there are central stations which allow only resistance type of induction motor to be used on their lines.



FIG. 1,764.—Western Electric wound armature for internal resistance induction motor. In starting the inductors are short circuited through a resistance which is gradually cut out as the motor comes up to speed.



FIGS. 1,765 to 1769.—Western Electric wound armature for external resistance, or slip ring induction motor, showing brush rigging, slip rings and bar winding.

External Resistance or Slip Ring Motors.—In large machines, and those which must run at variable speed, such as is required in the operations of cranes, hoists, dredges, etc., it is

Digitized by Google

advisable that the regulating resistances be placed externally to the motor. Motors having this feature are commercially known as **slip ring motors,** because *connections are made between the external resistances and the armature inductors by means of slip rings.*



FIG. 1,770.—Richmond slip ring motor.

As with the internal resistance motor the armature winding of a slip ring motor is not short circuited through copper rings in starting, but through a resistance, which in this case is located externally.

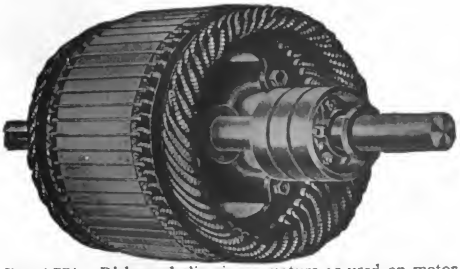


FIG. 1,771.—Richmond slip ring armature as used on motor in fig. 1,770.

Ques. How is the armature winding connected?

Ans. It is connected in Y grouping and the free ends connected to the slip rings, leads going from the brushes to the

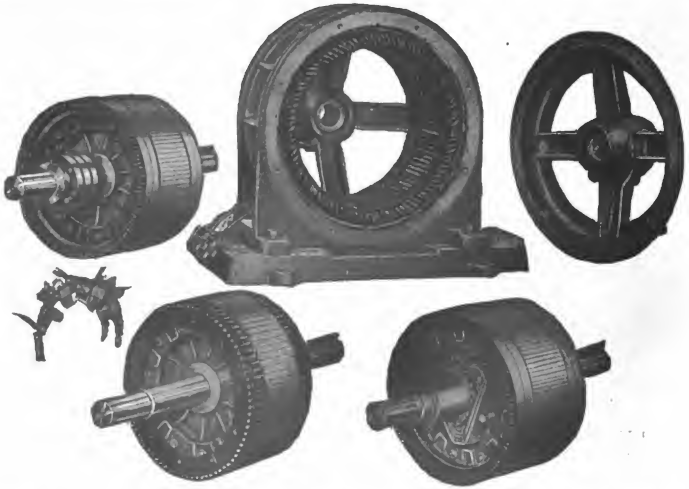


FIG. 1,772.—Western Electric riveted frame slip ring induction motor for variable speed service; adapted either to continuous or intermittent operation.

Digitized by Google

variable external resistances, these being illustrated in fig. 1,779.

Single Phase Induction Motors.—The general utility of single phase motors, particularly the smaller sizes, is constantly



FIGS. 1,773 to 1,778.—Sprague skeleton type motor frame with various types of armature. Fig. 1,777, plain squirrel cage armature; fig. 1,778, internal resistance armature; fig. 1,773 slip ring armature. In the construction of the plain squirrel cage armature, fig. 1,777, copper bars are inserted in the slots of the core, and are insulated from the core by enclosing tubes which project about one-half inch beyond the iron at each side. The bars are short circuited at their ends by copper rings. These rings are thin, but of considerable radial depth and are held apart by spacing washers. They have rectangular holes punched near their outward periphery, through which the armature bars pass, and to which they are soldered. The internal resistance armature, fig. 1,778, is provided with a phase winding, starting (internal) resistance, and switch located on the shaft. The starting resistance is designed to give approximately full load torque with full load current at starting. A greater torque than full load torque can be obtained for starting, if required, by cutting out resistance. The resistance consists of cast iron grids enclosed in a triangular cover which is bolted to the end plates holding the armature laminæ together, and is short circuited by sliding laminated spring metal brushes along the inside surface of the grids. The brushes are supported by a metal sleeve sliding on the shaft which is operated by a lever secured to the bearing bracket and located just above the bearing. A rod passing through the end of the shaft operates the short circuiting arrangement in sizes up to about 25 horse power. The external resistance or slip ring armature, fig. 1,773, is similar in construction to fig. 1,778, with the exception that slip rings are provided because of the external location of the resistance. These rings connect the inductor through brushes to a controlling and external resistance, two or more carbon brushes being provided for each ring, as in fig. 1,776.

Digitized by Google

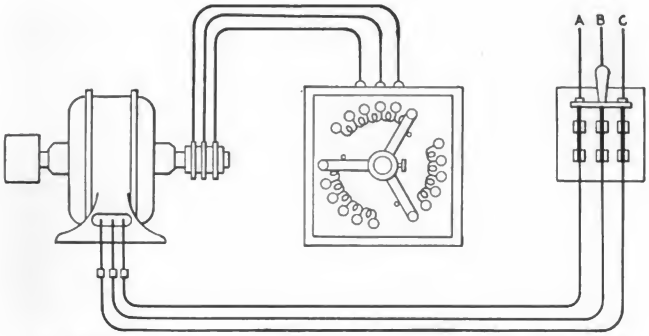
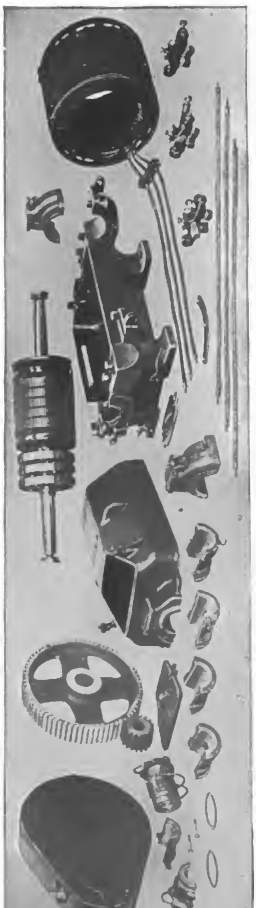


FIG. 1,779.—External resistance or slip ring induction motor connections. The squirrel cage armature winding is not short circuited by copper end rings, but connected in Y grouping and the three free ends connected to three slip rings, leads going from the brushes to three external resistances, arranged as triplex rheostat having three arms rigidly connected as shown, so that the three resistances may be varied simultaneously and in equal amounts.



FIG. 1,800.—Allis-Chalmers phase wound external resistance type or slip ring armature construction. The winding is for three phases and the terminals are brought out to three slip rings. The front bracket is slightly modified to make room for these rings on the inside. For starting duty sufficient resistance is supplied to reduce the starting current taken by the motor to 1¼ times the normal full load current. In the running position the resistance is all cut out of the circuit. For speed regulation sufficient resistance is supplied to reduce the speed 50% on normal full load torque.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,801 to 1,828.—Disassembled view of Western Electric three phase external resistance or slip ring mill type induction motor. It is adapted to severe working conditions such as are met with in steel mills, crane and hoist service, etc. Designed for 220 or 440 volt, 25 cycle circuits. The frame is divided horizontally into an upper and a lower steel casting, both of which are bolted together at the corners by four heavy bolts. The lower casting is provided with four feet for bolting the motor to its foundation. The end of the upper frame which covers the slip rings is equipped with malleable iron covers held in place by lock bolts. The field and armature are of the usual construction. One end of the armature winding is protected against mechanical injury by the slip rings which are of heavy construction and of practically the same diameter as the armature, and the other end by a detachable flange of the same diameter as the outside of the winding. The slip rings are mounted on the same spider as the armature, so that the shaft can be removed without disturbing any of the connections. The brushes are equipped with riveted pigtails, and held in brass brush boxes machined to gauge. Heavy coiled clock springs are used to maintain an even pressure of the brushes on the slip rings. The armature leads are brought out through holes in the upper half of the frame, and the field leads are brought through a block, which fits in an opening in the upper edge of the lower half.

being enlarged by the growing practice of central stations generating polyphase current, of supplying their lighting service through single phase distribution, and permitting the use of single phase motors of moderate capacity on the lighting circuit.

The simplicity of single phase systems in comparison with polyphase systems, makes them more desirable for small alternating current plants.

The disadvantage of single phase motors is that they are not self-starting.

A single phase motor consists essentially of an *armature and field magnet having a single phase winding and also some phase splitting arrangement for starting.*

Digitized by Google



FIG. 1829.—General Electric single phase induction motor. It is suitable for constant speed service where full load torque at starting does not exceed 140 per cent., and in general is adapted to drive all geared and belted machinery requiring *constant speed with light or moderate* starting torque.

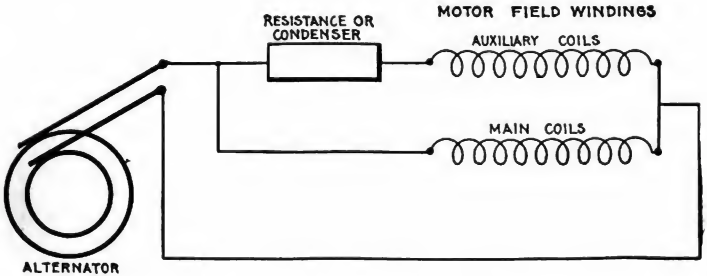


FIG. 1,830.—Simplified diagram showing the principle of phase splitting for starting single phase induction motors. By the use of an auxiliary set of coils connected in parallel with the main coils and having in series a resistance or condenser as shown, the single phase current delivered by the alternator is 'split' into two phases, which are employed to produce a rotating field on which the motor is started.

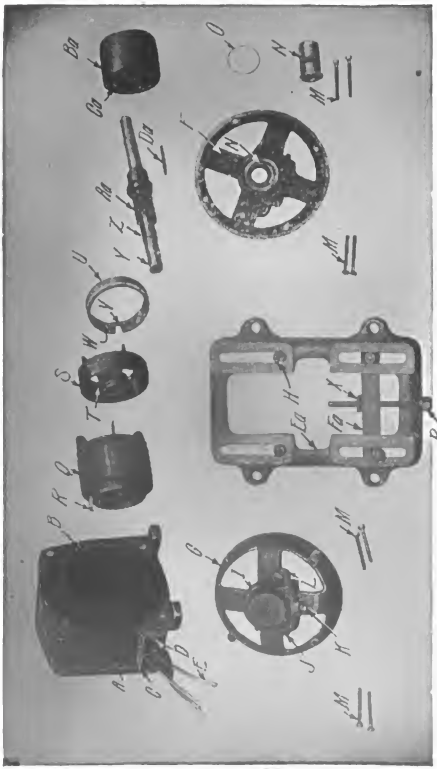
Digitized by Google

Ques. Why is a single phase motor not self-starting?

Ans. Because the nature of the field produced by a single phase current is oscillating and not rotating.

Ques. How is a single phase motor started?

Ans. By splitting the phase, a field is set up normal to the



FIGS. 1,831 to 1,850.—Parts of Sprague single phase clutch type induction motor. The armature is of the high resistance smooth core squirrel cage type, the core laminæ being assembled upon a steel sleeve. On starting the armature revolves *freely* around the shaft on roller bearings until it accelerates to about 75% of its rated speed, when a centrifugal clutch engages with an outer shell keyed directly on the shaft, thus throwing on the load. This type of motor is adapted to drive all belted, geared, or direct connected machinery requiring constant speed with moderate starting torque, such as generators, blowers, line shafting in machine shops and factories, drill presses, laundry machinery, baking machinery, and the like. When greater torque is required at the moment of starting type RI motors should be used, or clutch couplings may be installed between the motor and the machine it is to drive. The parts are as follows: A, field frame; B, field coils; C, terminal block; D, terminal block screws; E, connectors; F, bearing head pulley end; G, bearing head opposite pulley end; H, motor clamping bolts; I, oil well cover; J, oil well plug; K, drain plug; L, oil filler; M, cap bolts; N, bearing lining; O, oil ring; P, belt tightener screw; Q, armature core; R, latch; S, driving shell; T, driving shell set screw; U, clutch ring; V, clutch ring spring; W, spring adjusting screw; X, nut for belt tightener screw; Y, shaft; Z, driving shell key; Aa, armature bearing; Ba, pulley; Ca, pulley set screw; Da, pulley key; Ea, sliding base; Fa, yoke.

Digitized by Google

axis of the armature, and nearly 90° displaced in phase from the field in that axis. This cross field produces the useful torque.



FIG. 1,851.—General Electric high resistance clutch type smooth core squirrel cage armature of single phase induction motor. The core laminæ are slotted near the circumference to retain the bar inductors, which extend beyond the core at either end where they are permanently connected to heavy short circuiting rings.



FIGS. 1,852 to 1,855.—Parts of General Electric centrifugal clutch pulley as used on clutch type, single phase induction motor. A, clutch; B, friction band; C, adjusting spring; D, outer clutch shell with pulley sleeve; E, solid removable pulley; F, internal mechanism comprising parts A, B, and C; G, outer shell and pulley comprising parts D and E.



FIGS. 1,856 and 1,857.—Partly assembled clutch pulley. F, internal mechanism comprising parts A, B, C, of fig. 1,852. G, outer shell and pulley, comprising parts D and E of fig. 1,852.

Phase Splitting; Production of Rotating Field from Oscillating Field.—As previously stated, an oscillating field, that is, one due to a single phase current, does not furnish any starting torque. It is therefore necessary to provide a rotating

Digitized by Google

field for a single phase induction motor to start on, which, after the motor has come up to speed, may be cut out and the motor will then operate with the oscillating field. . . . . .

A rotating field may be obtained from single phase current by what is known as *splitting the phase.*



FIG. 1,858.—Switch end view of General Electric drawn shell type fractional horse power single phase motor.

Ques. Describe one method of splitting the phase.

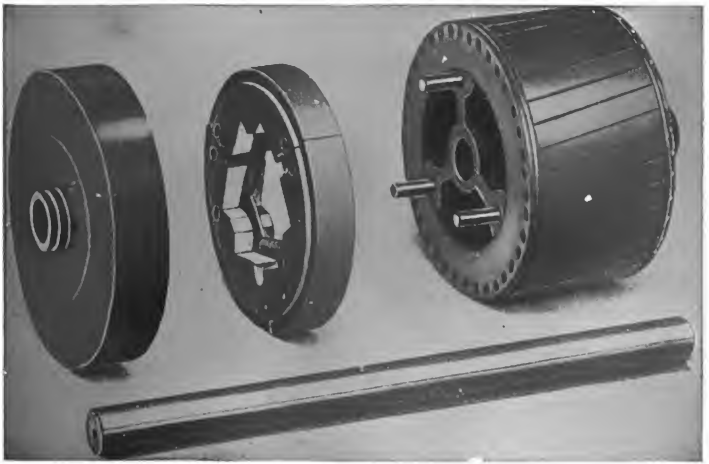
Ans. The field of the motor is provided, in addition to the main single phase winding, with an auxiliary single phase winding, and the two windings are connected in parallel to the single phase supply mains with a resistance or a condenser placed in series with the single phase winding, as shown in diagram fig. 1,830. the two windings being displaced from each other

Digitized by Google

on the armature about 90 magnetic degrees, just as in the ordinary two phase motor.

Ques. What is the construction of the two windings?

Ans. The main coils are of more turns than the auxiliary, being spread over more surface, and are heavier because they are for constant use; whereas the auxiliary coils are used only while starting.



FIGS. 1,859 to 1,862.—Detail construction of clutch parts of General Electric drawn shell type fractional horse power single phase motor. The starting switch, which is assembled within the motor frame, consists essentially of three parts: a rotating member mounted on the armature and provided with two spring controlled pivoted levers in contact with an insulated collector ring.

Ques. What are the auxiliary coils sometimes called?

Ans. *Starting coils.*

Ques. What are "shading" coils?

Ans. Auxiliary coils as placed on fan motors in the manner shown in fig. 1,863.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How can single phase motors be started without the use of external phase splitting devices?

Ans. Such apparatus may be avoided by having the auxiliary winding of larger self-inductance than the main winding.

Ques. What is the character of the starting torque produced by splitting the phase?

Ans. It does not give strong starting torque.

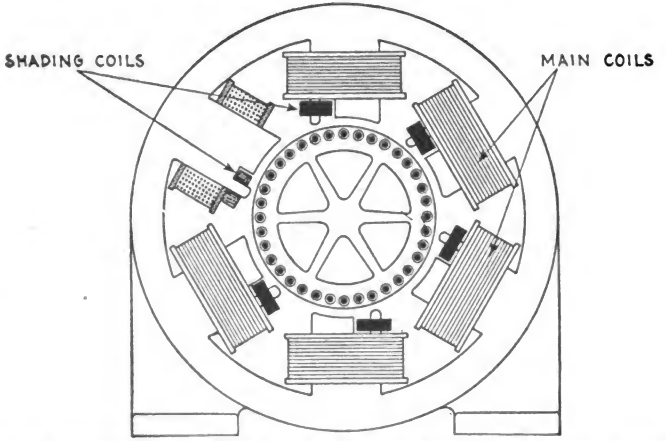


FIG. 1,863.—Single phase fan motor with *shading coils* for starting. In addition to the main field coils, one tip of each pole piece is surrounded by a short circuited coil of wire or frame of copper, as indicated in the figure. This coil, or copper frame, is called a *shading coil* and it causes a phase difference between the pulsating flux that emanates from the main portion of each polar projection and the pulsating flux which emanates from the pole tip, thus introducing a two phase action on the armature which is sufficiently pronounced to start the motor.

Ques. How is the plain squirrel cage armature modified to enable the motor to start with a heavier load?

Ans. An automatic clutch is provided which allows the armature to turn free on the shaft until it accelerates almost to running speed.

Digitized by Google

This type motor is known as the *clutch type* of single phase induction motor. In operation when the circuit is closed, the armature starts to revolve upon the shaft; when it reaches a premeditated speed, a centrifugal clutch expands and engages the clutch disc, which is fastened to the shaft.

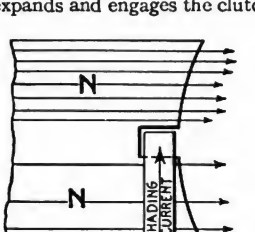


FIG. 1864.—Diagram showing action of shading coil in alternating current motor. The extremities of these pole pieces are divided into two branches, one of which a copper ring called a *shading coil* is placed as shown, while the other is left *unshaded*. The action of the shading coils is as follows: Consider the field poles to be energized by single phase current, and assume the current to be flowing in a direction to make a north pole at the top. Consider the poles to be just at the point of forming. Lines of force will tend to pass downward through the shading coil and the remainder of the pole. Any change of lines within the shading coil generates an e. m. f., which causes to flow through the coil a current of a value depending on the e. m. f. and always in a direction to oppose the change of lines. The field flux is, therefore, partly shifted to the free portion of the pole, while the accumulation of lines through the shading coil is retarded.



FIGS. 1,865 and 1,866.—Fort Wayne split phase factional horse power induction motor with stationary armature. The object of placing the squirrel cage armature winding on the stationary part or frame is to decrease the radial depth of the latter more than would be possible with the usual arrangement where the armature forms the rotating part. The small radial depth of the stationary armature makes possible a revolving field of maximum diameter giving in turn an exceptionally large air gap area, which reduces the magnetizing current, hence improves the power factor of the motor.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Explain in detail the action of the clutch type of motor in starting.

Ans. It can start a load which requires much more than full load torque at starting, because the motor being nearly up to full speed, has available not only its maximum overload capacity, but also the momentum of the armature to overcome the inertia of the driven apparatus. In this it is assisted by a certain amount of slippage in the clutch, which is the case when the armature speed is pulled down to such a point as to reduce the grip of the centrifugal clutch.



FIGS. 1,867 and 1,868.—General Electric dissembled clutch as used on clutch type, single phase (KS) induction motor. In starting, the armature revolves freely on the shaft until approximately 75 per cent. of normal rated speed is reached. The load is then picked up by the automatic action of a centrifugal clutch, which rigidly engages an outer shell, keyed directly to the shaft. The brass friction band of the clutch is permanently keyed to the pulley end of the armature.

Commutator Motors.—Machines of this class are similar in general construction to direct current motors. They have a closed coil winding, which is connected to a commutator.

There are several types of commutator motor, namely:

1. Series;
2. Shunt;
3. Compensated;
4. Repulsion.

Digitized by Google

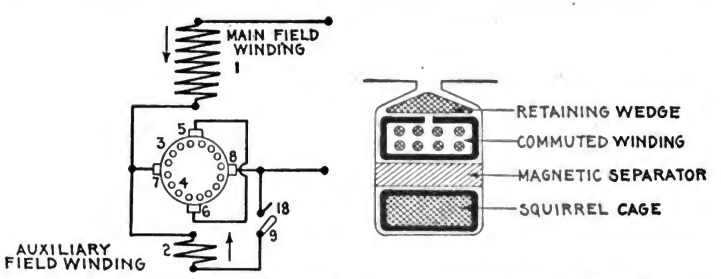
Since, as stated, commutator motors are similar to direct current motors, the question may be asked: Is it possible to run a direct current motor with alternating current? If the mains leading to a direct current motor be reversed, the direction or rotation remains the same, because the currents through both the field magnets and armature are reversed. It must follow then that an alternating current applied to a direct current motor would cause rotation of the armature.



FIG. 1,869.—Wagner single phase variable speed commutator motor. The commutator is of the regular horizontal type and the brushes remain in contact all the time. As the torque of alternating motors varies directly as the square of the applied pressure, wide speed variation may be obtained by varying the voltage applied at the motor terminals.

Action of Closed Coil Rotating in Alternating Field.—When a closed coil rotates in an alternating field, there are several different pressures set up and in order to carefully distinguish between them, they may be called:

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,870 and 1,871.—Diagrams illustrating construction and operation of Wagner "unity power factor" single phase motor. In the field construction, fig. 1,870, two windings are used. The main winding 1 produces the initial field magnetization as heretofore; the auxiliary winding 2 controls the power factor or "compensates" the motor. The main structural departure is in the armature, the construction of which is more clearly indicated in fig. 1,871. Here again two windings are employed. The main or principal winding 4 is of the usual well known squirrel cage type and occupies the bottom of the armature slots. The second or auxiliary winding 3 is of the usual commuted type, is connected to a standard form of horizontal commutator and occupies the upper portion of the armature slots. Between the two is placed a magnetic separator in the form of a rolled steel bar. Two sets of brushes are provided, as indicated in the diagram of connections shown in fig. 1,870. The main pair of brushes 5-6 is placed in the axis of the main field winding 1 and is short circuited. The auxiliary pair of brushes 7-8 is placed at right angles to the axis of the main field winding and is connected in series with it at starting. The auxiliary field winding 2 is permanently connected to one auxiliary brush 7, and is adapted to be connected to the other auxiliary brush 8 by means of the switch 9. The purpose of the peculiar armature construction illustrated in fig. 1,871 and of the brush arrangement and connections shown in fig. 1,870 is to accentuate, at starting, the effect of the squirrel cage along the axis 5–6 of the main field winding 1, while suppressing it as far as possible along the axis 7–8 at right angles to main winding. The magnetic separator placed above the squirrel cage winding 4 tends to suppress the effect of that winding along all axes, by making it less responsive to outside inductive effects. But the influence of the separator is nullified along the axis of the main field winding by the presence of the short circuited brushes 5–6, while no means are provided for nullifying its effects along the axis at right angles to that of the main field winding. Thus the main field winding 1 will be able to induce heavy currents in both armature windings because of the short circuited brushes in the axis 5–6, and in spite of the magnetic separator; while the armature winding 3, connected in series with 1, will not be able to produce heavy currents in the squirrel cage winding 4 along the axis 7–8 because of the magnetic separator between 3 and 4, which shunts or side tracks the inducing magnetic flux. In operation, at starting, switch 9 of fig. 1,870 is open, the commuted winding 3 along the axis 7–8 being connected in series with the main field winding 1 and across the mains. The winding 1 induces a large current in the armature windings 3 and 4 along the axis 5–6, and the winding 3 produces a large flux along the axis 7–8. The armature currents in the main axis co-acting with the flux threading the armature along the auxiliary axis yield the greater part of the starting torque. As the motor speeds up, the squirrel cage gradually assumes those functions which it performs in the ordinary single phase, squirrel cage motor, developing a magnetic field of its own along the axis 7–8 and a correspondingly powerful torque, which increases very rapidly as synchronism is approached, but falls suddenly to zero at or near actual synchronism. It is known that the magnetizing currents circulating in the bars of the squirrel cage of a single phase motor have, at synchronism, double the frequency of the stator currents; the fluxes they produce must therefore also be of double frequency. Now, the magnetic separator is made of solid steel, and, while this separator forms a sufficiently effective shunt for the fluxes of line frequency induced from the field, it is quite ineffective as a shunt for the double frequency fluxes produced by the armature. With respect to the squirrel cage, the effect of this magnetic separator diminishes with increasing speed, and at synchronism the machine operates practically in the same manner as if the magnetic separator did not exist.

Digitized by Google

1. The transformer pressure;
2. The generated pressure;
3. The self-induction pressure.

These pressures may be defined as follows:

The transformer pressure *is that pressure induced in the armature by the alternating flux from the field magnets.*

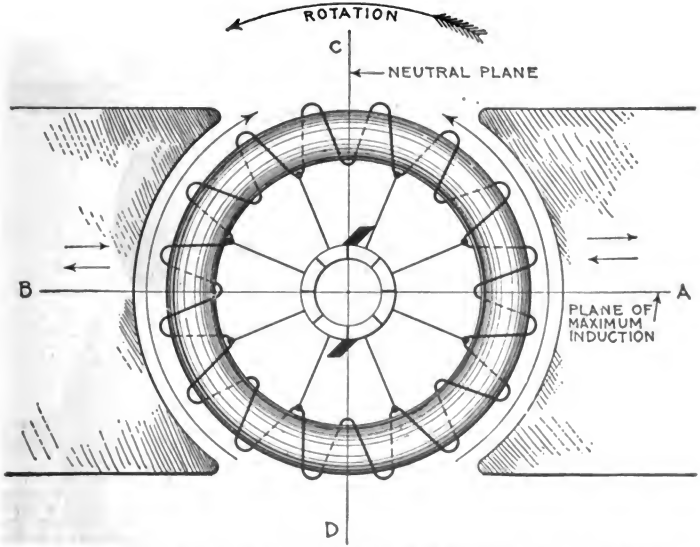


FIG. 1,872.—Diagram of ring armature in alternating field illustrating the principles of commutator motors.

For instance, assuming in fig. 1,872 the armature to be at rest, as the alternating current which energizes the magnets rises and falls in value, the variations of flux which threads through the coils of the ring winding, induce pressure in them in just the same way that pressure is induced in the secondary of a transformer.

A ring winding is used for simplicity; the same conditions obtain in a drum winding.

Digitized by Google

The generated pressure is that pressure *induced in the armature by the cutting of the flux when the armature rotates.*

The self-induction pressure *is that pressure induced in both the field and armature by self-induction.*

Nature of the Generated Pressure.—In fig. 1,872, the generated pressure induced by the rotation of the armature is minimum at the neutral plane C D and maximum at A B. It tends to cause current to flow up each half of the armature from D to C, producing poles at these points.



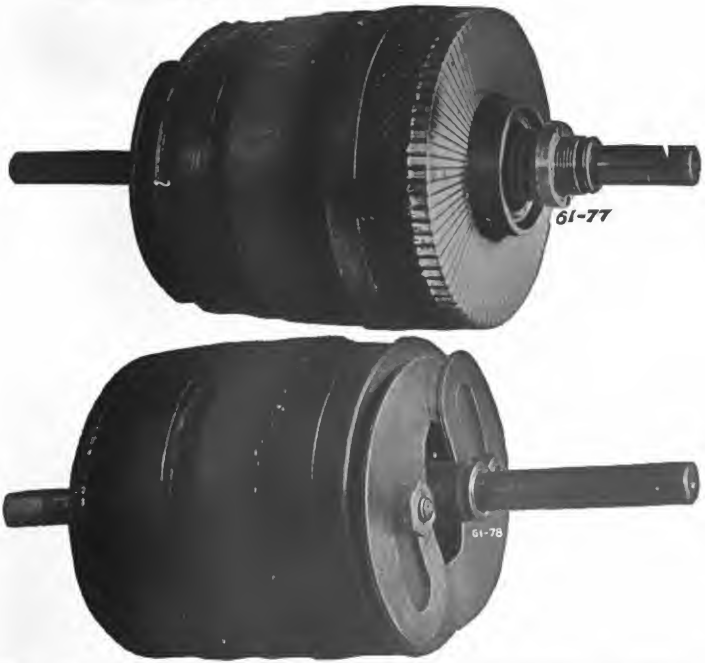
FIG. 1,873.—Wagner single phase repulsion induction commutator motor. Its working principle is *repulsion start* and *induction operation.* Starting with the machine at rest, brushes in pairs cross connected through a low resistance conductor, bear upon the commutator, temporarily short circuiting the armature winding then developing a strong starting torque on the repulsion principle. On attaining full load speed the individual segments of the commutator are all positively connected together by the operation of an automatic centrifugal governor, thereby transforming the armature winding to the squirrel cage form, the motor then continuing as an induction motor. The governor at the same time removes the brushes from contact with the commutator to save wear. If the power service should fail for any reason, the motor returns to the starting condition, and picks up its load when the power comes on again without attention of the operator.

Nature of the Transformer Pressure.—This is caused by variations of the flux passing through each coil of the armature winding. Evidently this variation is least at the plane A B because at this point

Digitized by Google

the coils are inclined very acutely to the flux, and greatest at the plane C D where the coils are perpendicular to the flux. Accordingly, the transformer pressure induced in the armature winding is least at A B and greatest at C D.

The transformer pressure acts in the same direction as the generated pressure as indicated by the long arrows and gives rise to what may be called *local armature currents.*



FIGS. 1,874 and 1,875.—Armature of Wagner single phase repulsion-induction commutator motor as seen from the commutator and rear ends, showing the vertical commutator and type of governor employed on the smaller sizes. The operation is explained in fig. 1,873.

Nature of the Self-Induction Pressure.—The self-induction pressure, being opposite in direction to the impressed pressure, it must be evident that in the operation of an alternating current commutator motor, the impressed pressure must overcome not only the generated

Digitized by Google



FIG. 1,876.—General Electric single phase compensated repulsion motor. The frame is of the riveted form and the field winding consists of distributed concentric coils, each being separately insulated and taped up to each core slot. The compensating winding (depending usually on the size of frame), forms either the center portion of the main winding or a separate winding concentric therewith. The polar groupings are arranged for a frequency of 25 and 60. There are four terminal leads permitting interchangeability of operation on 110 or 220 volt circuits. By connecting adjacent pairs of these terminals in multiple, motors of this type are made adaptable for 110 volt service; for double this pressure the four leading in wires are connected in series. The motor will operate satisfactorily where the arithmetical sum of voltage and frequency variation does not exceed 10 per cent.; that is, the voltage may be 10 per cent. high if the frequency remain at normal, or the frequency may be 10 per cent. high assuming no variation in voltage. A decrease of 5 per cent. in frequency accompanied by a similar increase in voltage is permissible or, as above stated, any similar combination whose arithmetical sum is within 10 per cent. of normal. The armature winding is of the series drum type connected to a commutator carrying two sets of brushes, each set being displaced electrically from the other by 90 degrees. The first set, known as the **energy brushes**, is permanently short circuited and disposed at an angle to the lines of field or primary magnetization, as in an ordinary repulsion motor. The second set, or **compensating brushes**, is connected to a small portion of the primary winding included in the field circuit, so as to impress upon the armature an electromotive force, which serves both to raise the power factor and at the same time maintain approximately synchronous speed at all loads. The armature laminations are built up on a cast iron sleeve having the same inside bore as the commutator. In case the shaft become damaged or worn, it can be readily pressed out and replaced without disturbing the commutator or windings. The motor is connected to run counter clockwise. Clockwise rotation is obtained by interchanging the leads to the compensating brushes and slightly shifting the brush holder yoke. This type motor may be thrown on the line without the use of a rheostat, and is suitable for operating refrigerating machines, air compressors, house pumps or similar apparatus where a float switch or pressure regulator is used to close or open the supply circuit.

Digitized by Google

pressure but also the self-induction pressure. Hence, as compared to an equivalent direct current motor, the applied voltage must be greater than in the direct current machine, to produce an equal current.



FIG. 1,877.—Armature of General Electric single phase compensated repulsion motor, assembled ready for dip and banding.



FIG. 1,878.—Cast brush rigging of General Electric single phase compensated repulsion motor as used for the 3 and 5 horse power motors.

The Local Armature Currents.—These currents produced by the transformer pressure occur in those coils undergoing commutation. They are large, because the maximum transformer action occurs in them, that is, in the coils short circuited by the brushes.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Why do the local armature currents cause sparking?

Ans. Because of the sudden interruption of the large volume of current, and also because the flux set up by the local currents being in opposition to the field flux, tends to weaken the field just when and where its greatest strength is required for commutation.



FIG. 1,879.—Field of Sprague single phase compensated repulsion motor. The frame is of the skeleton form which exposes the core, giving effective heat radiation. The single phase field winding is of the distributed concentric type. To facilitate connection to circuits of either 110 or 220 volts, four plainly tagged leads are brought out to the back of the removable terminal board.

Ques. What is the strength of the local current?

Ans. They may be from 5 to 15 times the strength of the normal armature current.

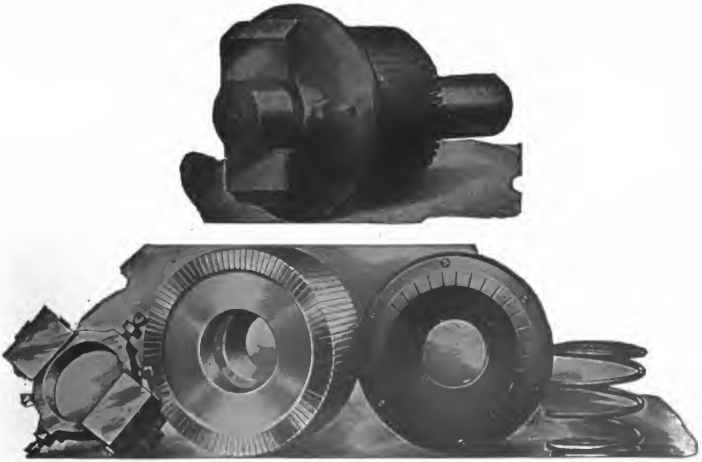
Ques. Upon what does the local armature current depend?

Ans. Upon the number of turns of the short circuited coils, their resistance, and the frequency.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How can the local currents be reduced to avoid heavy sparking?

Ans. 1. By reducing the number of turns of the short circuited coils, that is, providing a greater number of commutator bars; 2, reducing the frequency; and 3, increasing the resistance of the short circuited coil circuit: *a*, by means of high resistance connectors; or *b*, by using brushes of higher resistance.



FIGS. 1,880 to 1,884.—Assembly and disassembled view of short circuiting device as used on Bell single phase repulsion induction motor. The armature, which is wound in a similar manner to those used in direct current motors, has a commutator, and brushes, which being short circuited on themselves, allow great starting torque, with small starting current. The motor starts by the repulsion principle, and on reaching nearly full speed, a centrifugal governor pushes the copper ring against the commutator segments, thereby short circuiting them, and the motor then operates on the induction principle.

Ques. What are high resistance connectors?

Ans. The connectors between the armature winding and the commutator bars, as shown in fig. 1,885.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Does the added resistance of preventive leads, or high resistance brushes, materially reduce the efficiency of the machine?

Ans. Not to any great extent, because it is very small in comparison with the resistance of the whole armature winding.

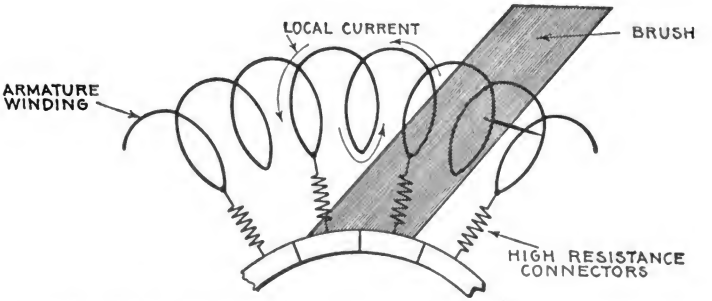


FIG. 1,885.—Section of ring armature of commutator motor showing local current set up by transformer action of the alternating flux.

Ques. What is the objection to reducing the number of turns of the short circuited coils to diminish the tendency to sparking?

Ans. The cost of the additional number of commutator bars and connectors as well as the added mechanism.

Ques. What effect has the inductance of the field and armature on the power factor?

Ans. It produces phase difference between the current and impressed pressure resulting in a low power factor.

Ques. What is the effect of this low power factor?

Ans. The regulation and efficiency of the system is impaired.

The frequency, the field flux and the number of turns in the winding have influence on the power factor.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How does the frequency affect the power factor?

Ans. Lowering the frequency tends to improve the power factor.

The use of very low frequencies has the disadvantage of departing from standard frequencies, and the probability that the greater cost of transformers and alternators would offset the gain.

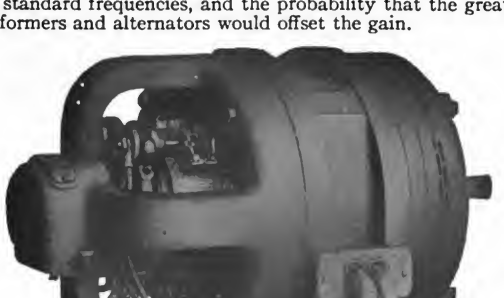


FIG. 1,886.—General Electric 5 H.P., 6 pole adjustable speed single phase compensated repulsion motor. This type is suitable for service requirements demanding the use of a motor whose speed can be adjusted over a considerable range, this speed at a fixed controller setting remaining practically unaffected by any load within the motor's rated capacity. With the controller on the high speed points, the motor possesses an inherent speed regulation between no load and full load of approximately 6 per cent. At the low speed points, under similar load conditions, the speed variation will be approximately 20 per cent. To secure adjustable speed control, the armature circuits employ transformers, whose primaries are excited by the line circuit. The secondaries of these transformers are divided into two sections; the first or "regulating" circuit is placed across the *energy* brushes; the other section, since it is connected in series with the compensating winding, maintains the high power factor and speed regulation obtained in the constant speed type. The speed range is 2 : 1, approximately one-half of this range being below and one-half above synchronous speed.

Series Motors.—This class of commutator motor is about the simplest of the several types belonging to this division. In general design the series motor is identical with the series direct current motor, but all the iron of the magnetic circuit must be laminated and a *neutralizing winding* is often employed.

It will be readily understood that the torque is produced in the same way as in the direct current machine, when it is

Digitized by Google

remembered that the direction of rotation of the direct current series motor is independent of the direction of the voltage applied.

At any moment the torque will be proportional to the product of the current and the flux which it is at that moment producing in the magnetic system, and the average torque will be the product of the average current and the average flux it produces, so that if the iron parts be unsaturated, as they must be if the iron losses

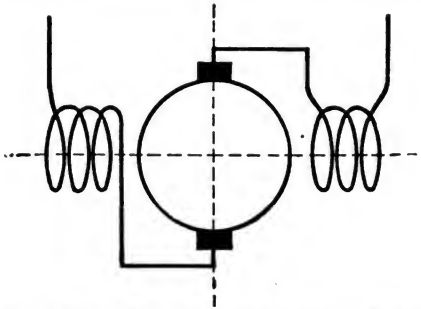


FIG. 1,887.—Diagram of single phase series commutator motor. It is practically the same as the series direct current motor, with the exception that all the metal of the magnetic circuit must be laminated.

are not to be too high, *the torque will be proportional simply to the square of the current*, there being no question of power factor entering into the consideration.

Ques. What are the characteristics of the series motor?

Ans. They are similar to the direct current series motor, the torque being a maximum at starting and decreasing as the speed increases.

Ques. For what service is the series motor especially suited?

Ans. On account of its powerful starting torque it is particularly desirable for traction service.

Digitized by Google

Neutralized Series Motor.—A chief defect of the series motor is the excessive self-induction of the armature, hence in almost every modern single phase series motor a neutralizing coil is employed *to diminish the armature self-induction.*

The neutralizing coil is wound upon the frame 90 magnetic degrees of half a pole pitch from the field winding and arranged to carry a current equal in magnetic pressure and opposite in phase to the current in the armature.

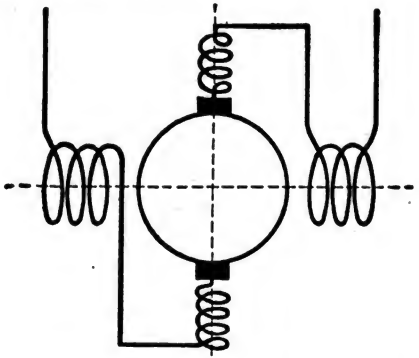


FIG. 1,888.—Diagram of neutralized series motor; **conductive method.** In the simple series motor, there will be a distortion of the flux as in the direct current motor. As the distorting magnetic pressure is in phase with that of the magnets, the distortion of the flux will be a fixed effect. If the poles be definite as in direct current machines, this distortion may not seriously affect the running of the motor, but with a magnetizing system like that universally adopted in induction motors the flux will be shifted as a whole in the direction of the distortion, which will produce the same effect as if in the former case the brushes had been shifted forward, whereas for good commutation they should have been shifted backward. As in direct current machines, this distortion is undesirable since it is not conducive to sparkless working, and also reduces to a more or less extent the torque exerted by the motor. The simplest remedy is to provide *neutralizing coils* displaced 90 magnetic degrees to the main field coils as shown. The neutralizing current is obtained by the method of connecting the neutralizing coils in series in the main circuit.

The current through the neutralizing winding may be obtained, either

1. Conductively; or
2. Inductively.

Digitized by Google

In the conductive method, fig. 1,888, the winding is connected in series as shown.

In the inductive method, fig. 1,889, the winding is short circuited upon itself and the current obtained inductively, the neutralizing winding being virtually the secondary of a transformer, of which the armature is the primary.

Ques. When is the conductive method to be preferred?

Ans. When the motor is to be used on mixed circuits.

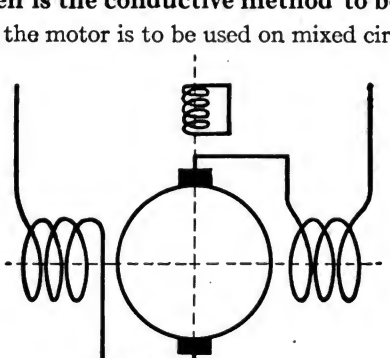


FIG. 1,889.—Diagram of neutralized series motor; **inductive method.** Although the conductive method of neutralization is employed in nearly all machines, it is possible merely to short circuit the neutralizing winding upon itself, instead of connecting it in series with the armature circuit. In this case the flux due to the armature circuit cannot be eliminated altogether, as sufficient flux must always remain to produce enough pressure to balance that due to the residual impedance of the neutralizing coil. It would be a mistake to infer, however, that on this account this method of neutralization is less effective than the conductive one, since the residual flux simply serves to transfer to the armature circuit a drop in pressure precisely equivalent to that due to the resistance and local self-induction of the neutralizing coil in the conductive method.

Shunt Motors.—The simple shunt motor has inherently many properties which render it unsuitable for practical use, and accordingly is of little importance. Owing to the many turns of the field winding there is large inductance in the shunt field circuit.

Digitized by Google

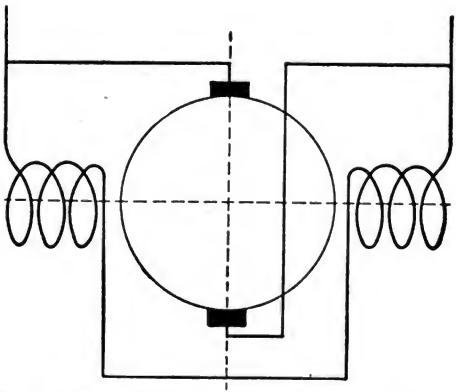


FIG. 1,890.—Diagram of simple shunt commutator motor. Owing to its many inherent defects it is of little importance.

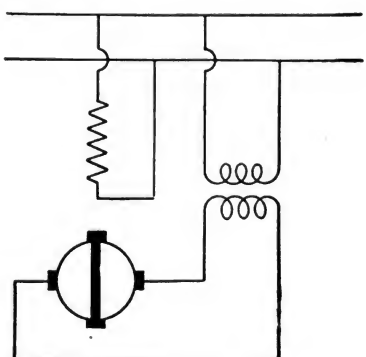


FIG. 1,891.—Compensated shunt induction single phase motor. The transformer shown in the arrangement is capable of being replaced by a coil placed on the frame having the same axis as the field winding, so that the flux produced by the field winding induces in the coil a pressure in phase with the supply pressure. Such a coil will now be at right angles to the circuit to which it is connected. In a similar manner a coil at right angles to the armature circuit, that is, the circuit parallel to the stator axis, if connected in series with that circuit, will also serve to compensate the motor.

Digitized by Google

The inductance of the armature is small as compared with that of the field; accordingly, the two currents differ considerably in phase.

The phase difference between the field and armature currents and the corresponding relation between the respective fluxes results in a weak torque.

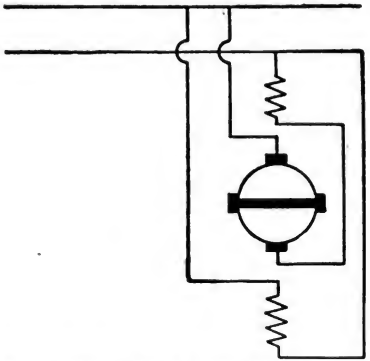


FIG. 1,892.—Fynn's shunt conductive single phase motor. In order to supply along the stator axis a constant field, suitable for producing the cross flux to which the torque is due by its action on the circuit perpendicular to the stator axis, the "armature circuit," as it may be called, has a neutralizing coil in series with it, so that the armature circuit and neutralizing coil together produce no flux. In addition to this, there is a magnetizing coil along the same axis, which is connected across the mains and so produces the same flux as the primary coil in a shunt induction machine. Fynn has proposed a number of methods of varying the speed and compensating this machine. It is, however, complicated in itself, and is only suited for very low voltages, so that on ordinary circuits it would need a separate transformer.

It is necessary to use laminated construction in the field circuit to avoid eddy currents, which otherwise would be excessive. Fig. 1,890 is a diagram of a simple shunt commutator motor.

Repulsion Motors.—In the course of his observations on the effects of alternating currents, in 1886–7, Elihu Thomson observed that a copper ring placed in an alternating magnetic field tends either to move out of the field, that is, it is *repelled* by the

Digitized by Google

field (hence the name **repulsion motor**), or to return so as to set itself edgeways to the magnetic lines.

The explanation of the repulsion phenomenon is as follows:

When a closed coil is suspended in an alternating field so that lines of force pass through it, as in fig. 1,893, an alternating pressure will be induced in the coil which will be 90° later in phase than the inducing flux, and since every coil contains some in-

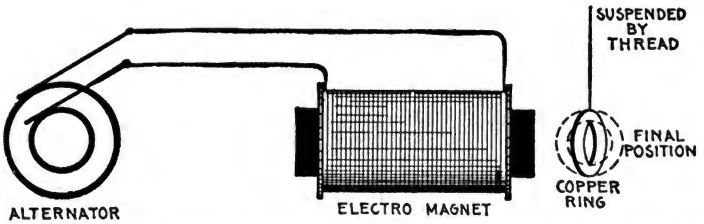


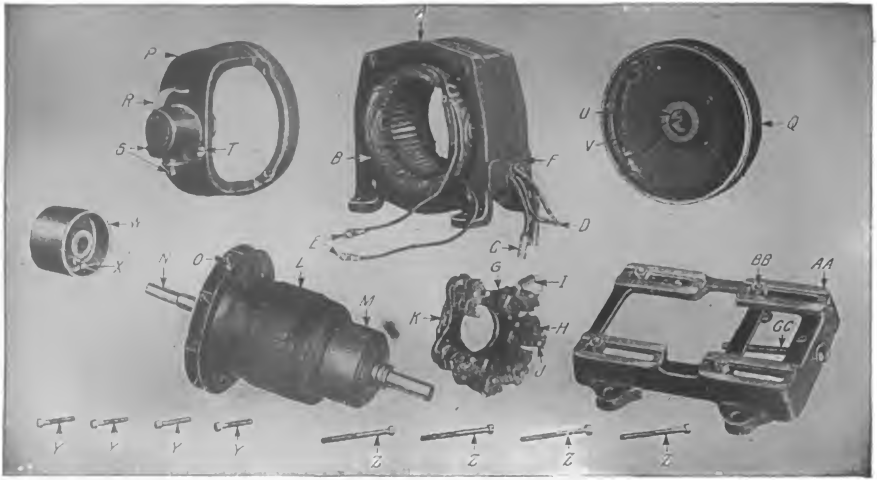
FIG. 1,893.—Effect of alternating field on copper ring. *If a copper ring be suspended in an alternating field so that the plane of the ring is oblique to the lines of force, it will turn until its plane is parallel to the lines of force*, that is, to the position in which it does not encircle any lines of force. The turning moment acting upon the ring is proportional to the current in it, to the strength of the field, and to the cosine of the angle β. Hence it is proportional to the product $\sin \beta \cos \beta$. The tendency to turn is zero both at 0° and at 90°; in the former case because there is no current, in the latter because the current has no leverage. It is a maximum when $\beta = 45°$. Even in this position there would be no torque if there were no lag of the currents in the ring, for the phase of the induced pressure is in quadrature with the phase state of the field. When the field is of maximum strength there is no pressure, and when the pressure reaches its maximum there is no field. If there be self-induction in the ring causing the current to lag, there will be a net turning moment tending to diminish β. The largest torque will be obtained when the lag of the current in the ring is 45°.

ductance the resulting current will lag more or less with respect to the pressure induced in the coil.

The cosine of this phase relation becomes a negative quantity which means that the coil is **repelled** by the field.

It is only when the ring is in an oblique position that it tends to turn. If it be placed with its plane directly at right angles to the

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,894 to 1,908.—Parts of General Electric single phase compensated repulsion motor. The field frame employs the riveted form of construction, so that the ends of the laminations are exposed directly to the air, insuring low operating temperatures and high overload capacity. The field winding consists of a main winding of the distributed concentric type, and a compensating winding. The series type of winding is employed, and the completed rotor is treated with a special insulating compound, which renders the coils moisture proof under ordinary conditions. On motors of more than 2 horse power capacity a ventilating fan is attached to the rotor which provides a continuous supply of cool air while the motor is in operation. Two types of brush holder yoke are used. The smaller motors use a moulded yoke of insulating compound, reinforced by a cast iron L section ring embedded in the moulded structure. Cast iron yokes are used on larger motors. The brushes are of carbon with copper pigtails which carry all the current. The brushes in this machine remain permanently in contact with the commutator. The parts are: A, field; B, field winding; C, line terminal; D, tube terminal; E, compensating terminal; F, terminal board; G, brush yoke; H, brush holder; I, carbon brush; J, brush stud; K, short circuit connection; L, armature; M, commutator; N, shaft; O, fan; P, commutator end shield; Q, pulley end shield; R, oil well cover; S, oil plugs; T, oil gauge; U, bearing lining; V, oil ring; W, pulley; X, pulley set screw; Y, commutator end shield holding bolts; Z, pulley end shield holding bolts; AA, base; BB, float bolts; CC, belt tightener screw.

Digitized by Google

direction of the magnetic lines, it will not turn; if ever so little displaced to the right or left, it will turn until its plane is parallel to the lines.

The production of torque may be explained by saying that the current induced in the ring produces a cross field which being out of phase with, and inclined to the field impressed by the

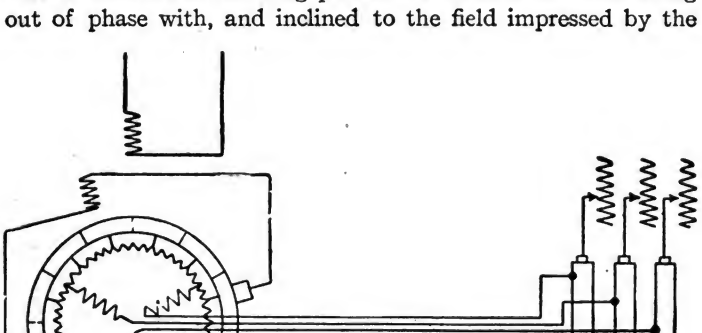


FIG. 1,909.—Fynn's compensated shunt induction motor. This is a combination of the compensated shunt induction motor with the ordinary squirrel cage form. In one form, in addition to the ordinary drum winding on the armature, there is another three phase winding into the "star," of which the drum winding is connected. This second winding is connected to three slip rings which are short circuited when the machine is up to speed. Upon the commutator are placed a pair of brushes connected to an auxiliary winding placed on the frame in such a position that the flux from the primary coil induces in it a pressure of suitable phase to produce compensation. The same pair of brushes is also used for starting.

primary alternating current, causes a rotary field, and this in turn, reacting on the conductor, a turning moment results.

Elihu Thompson took an ordinary direct current armature, placed it in an alternating field, and having short circuited the brushes, placed them in an oblique position with respect to the direction of the field. The effect was to cause the armature to rotate with a considerable torque.

The inductors of the armature acted just as an obliquely placed ring, but with this difference, that the obliquity was continuously preserved

Digitized by Google

by the brushes and commutator, notwithstanding that the armature turned, and thus the rotation was continuous. This tendency of a conductor to turn from an oblique position was thus utilized by him to get over the difficulty of starting a single phase motor. With this object in view he then constructed motors in which the use of commutator and brushes was restricted to the work of merely starting the armature, which when so started was then entirely short circuited on itself, though disconnected from the rest of the circuit, the operation then being solely on the induction principle.

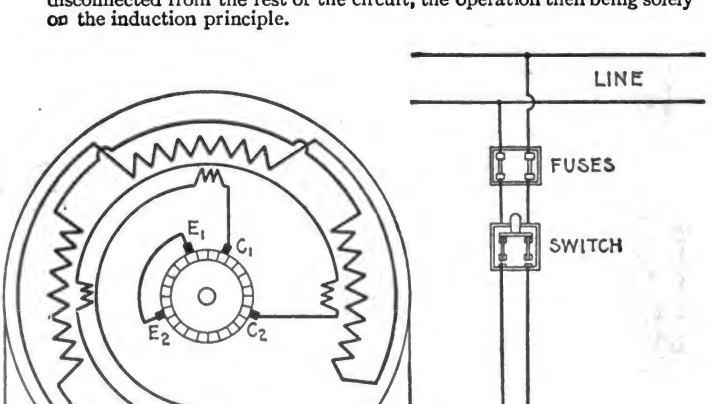


FIG. 1,910.—Diagram of connection of Sprague single phase compensated repulsion motor. To reverse direction of rotation interchange leads C_1 and C_2 and slightly shift the brush holder yoke. Brushes E_1 and E_2 are permanently short circuited. This diagram of connections applies also to fig. 1,911.

Ques. What difficulty was experienced with Thomson's motor?

Ans. Since an open coil armature was used, the torque developed was due to only one coil at a time, which involved a necessarily high current in the short circuited coil resulting in heavy sparking.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How was this remedied?

Ans. By the use of closed coil armatures in later construction

Ques. Did this effectually stop sparking?

Ans. No.

Ques. What other means is employed in modern designs to reduce sparking?

Ans. Compensation and the use of a distributed field winding, high resistance connectors, high resistance brushes, etc.

Ques. What are the names of the two classes of repulsion motor?

Ans. The simple and the compensated types.

Ques. Describe a simple repulsion motor.

Ans. It consists essentially of an armature, commutator and field magnets. The armature is wound exactly like a direct current armature, and the windings are connected to a commutator. The carbon brushes which rest on this commutator are not connected to the outside line, however, but are all connected together through heavy short circuiting connectors. The brushes are placed about 60° or 70° from the neutral axis. The field is wound exactly like that of the usual induction motor.

Ques. What is the action of this type of motor?

Ans. If nothing be done to prevent, the motor will increase in speed at no load until the armature bursts, just as it will in a series direct current motor.

Ques. What provision is made to avoid this danger?

Ans. A governor is usually mounted on the armature which short circuits the windings, after the motor has been started. The motor then runs as a squirrel cage induction motor. As a

Digitized by Google

rule the brushes are lifted off the commutator when the armature is short circuited, so as to prolong their life.

This is a very successful motor, but it is of course more costly than the simple squirrel cage motor used on two and three-phase circuits.

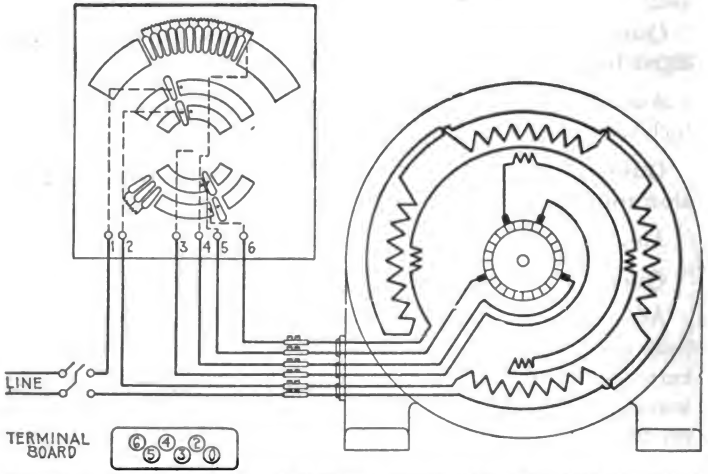


FIG. 1,911.—Diagram of connections of Sprague variable speed single phase compensated repulsion motor and controller. The controller is designed to give speed reduction and speed increase as resistance or reactance is inserted in the energy and compensating circuits. With the exception of the leads brought out from these circuits, the constant speed and variable speed motors are identical. The standard controller gives approximately 2 : 1 speed variation.

Ques. What name may appropriately be applied to the motor?

Ans. It may be called the *repulsion induction motor*, because it is constructed for repulsion start and induction running.

Ques. Describe a compensated repulsion motor.

Ans. In its simplest form it consists of a simple repulsion motor in which there are two independent sets of brushes, one

Digitized by Google

set being short circuited, while the other set is in series with the field magnet winding, as in the series alternating current motor.

Ques. What names are given to the two sets of brushes on a compensated repulsion motor?

Ans. The *energy* or main short circuiting brushes, and the *compensating* brushes.

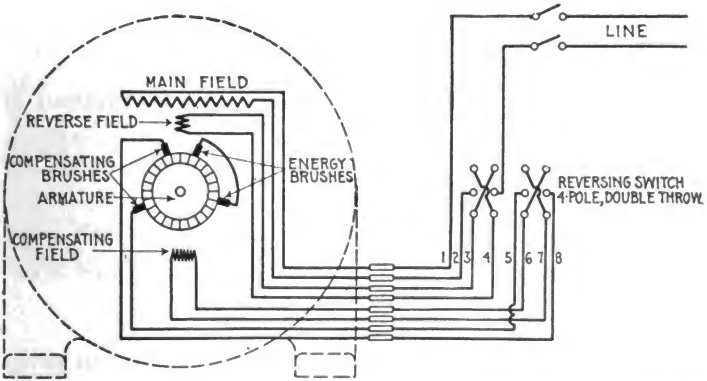


FIG. 1,912.—Diagram of connections of Sprague reversing type of single phase compensated repulsion motor. As shown, there is a special reverse field winding having terminals for connection to a four pole double throw switch.

Ques. What is the behavior of the armature of a compensated repulsion motor at starting?

Ans. It possesses at starting most of the apparent reactance of the motor, and the effect of speed is to decrease such apparent reactance, the latter becoming zero at either positive or negative synchronism, and negative at higher speeds in either direction.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is the nature of the field circuit of the compensated repulsion motor at starting?

Ans. At starting it is practically non-inductive, the effect of speed being to introduce a spurious resistance which increases directly with the speed, and becomes negative when the speed is reversed.

Ques. For what use is the compensated repulsion motor especially adapted?

Ans. For light railroad service.

Ques. When employed thus what is the method of control?

Ans. A series transformer is used in the field circuit.

Ques. What frequencies are employed with this motor?

Ans. 25 to 60, the preferred frequency being 40.

Ques. To what important use is the repulsion principle put?

Ans. It is sometimes employed for starting on single phase induction motors.

In this method, after bringing the motor up to speed, the winding is then short circuited upon itself, and the motor then operates on the induction principle.

Ques. What name is given to this type of motor?

Ans. It is called the repulsion induction motor.

Digitized by Google

Power Factor of Induction Motors.—In the case of a direct current motor, the energy supplied is found by multiplying the current strength by the voltage, but in all induction motors the effect of self-induction causes the current to lag behind the pressure, thereby increasing the amount of current taken by the motor. Accordingly, as the increased current is not utilized by the motor in developing power, the value obtained by multiplying the current by the voltage represents an *apparent energy* which is greater than the real energy supplied to the motor.



FIG. 1,913.—Fairbanks-Morse squirrel cage armature, showing ball bearings.

It is evident, that if it were possible to eliminate the lag entirely, the real and apparent watts would be equal, and the power factor would be unity.

The importance of power factor and its effect upon both alternator capacity and voltage regulation is deserving of the most careful consideration with all electrical apparatus, in which an inherent phase difference exists between the pressure and the current, as for instance in static transformers and induction motors

Digitized by Google

While the belief is current that any decrease in power factor from unity value does not demand any increase of mechanical output, this is not true, since all internal alternator and line losses manifest themselves as heat, the wasted energy to produce this heat being supplied by the prime mover.

Apart from the poor voltage regulation of alternating current generators requiring abnormal field excitation to compensate for low power factor, some of the station's rated output is rendered

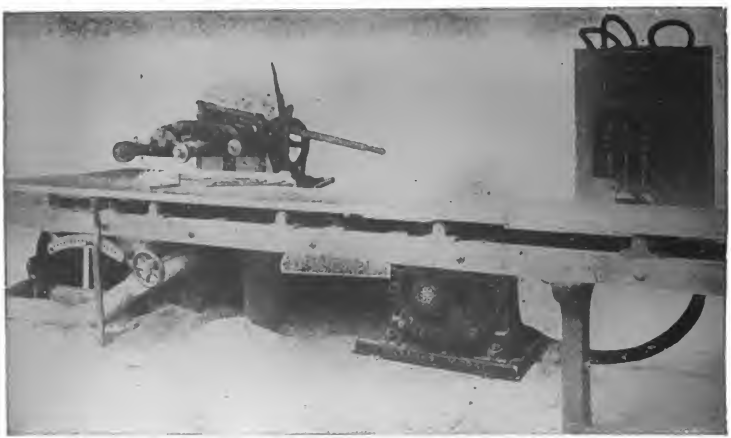


FIG. 1,914.—Fairbanks-Morse 20 horse power squirrel cage induction motor connected to a 20 inch self-feed rip and chamfering saw. The absence of commutator and brushes on the squirrel cage armature eliminates sparking and therefore renders this type of motor particularly adapted for use in places where sparking would be dangerous, such as in wood working plants, textile mills, etc.

unavailable and consequently produces no revenue. The poor steam economy of underloaded engines is also a serious source of fuel wastage.

Careful investigations have shown that the power factor of industrial plants using induction motor drive with units of various sizes will average between 60 and 80 per cent. With plants supplying current to underloaded motors having inherently high lagging current values, a

Digitized by Google

combined factor as low as 50 per cent. may be expected. Since standard alternators are seldom designed to carry their rated kilowatt load at less than 80 per cent. power factor, the net available output is, therefore, considerably increased.

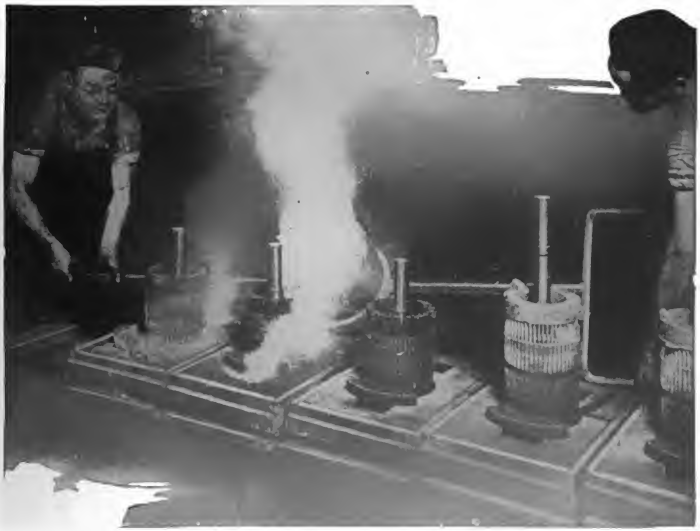


FIG. 1,915.—Method of casting end rings on squirrel cage armatures of Fairbanks-Morse induction motors. The metal being fused to the bars at a temperature in excess of 1,832 degrees Fahr. it is readily seen that the destructive effect of any subsequent heating is eliminated. While giving the most intimate contact at the joints, a multiplicity of joints is avoided as well as solder.

Speed and Torque of Motors.—The speed of an induction motor depends chiefly on the frequency of the circuit and runs within 5 per cent. of its rated speed; it will produce full torque if the line voltage do not vary more than 5 to 10 per cent.

At low voltage the speed will not be greatly reduced as in a direct current motor, but as the torque is low the motor is easily stopped when a light load is thrown on.

Digitized by Google

The current taken by an induction motor from a constant pressure line varies with the speed as in a direct current motor. When a load is thrown on, the speed is reduced correspondingly and as the self-induction or reactance is diminished, more current circulates in the squirrel cage winding, which in turn reacts on the field coils in a similar manner and more current flows in them from the line. In this manner the motor automatically takes current from the line proportional to the load and maintains a nearly constant speed.

The so-called constant speed motors require slight variations in speed to automatically take current from the line when the load varies.

Induction motors vary in speed from 5 to 10 per cent., while synchronous motors vary but a fraction of one per cent.

Single phase motors to render efficient service must be able, where requisite, to develop sufficient turning moment or torque to accelerate, from standstill, loads possessing large inertia or excessive static friction; for example, meat choppers and grinders, sugar or laundry centrifugals; heavy punch presses; group driven machines running from countershafts with possibly over taut belting, poor alignment, lubrication, etc.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LII

TRANSFORMERS

The developments in the field of electrical engineering which have rendered feasible the transmission of high pressure currents over long distances, together with the reliability and efficiency of modern generating units, have resulted in notable economies in the generation and distribution of electric current.

This has been accomplished largely by the use of distant water power or the centralization of the generating plants of a large territory in a single power station.

The transformer is one of the essential factors in effecting the economical distribution of electric energy, and may be defined as *an apparatus used for changing the voltage and current of an alternating circuit.* A transformer consists essentially of:

1. A primary winding;
2. A secondary winding;
3. An iron core.

Basic Principles.—If a current be passed through a coil of wire encircling a bar of soft iron the iron will become a magnet; when the current is discontinued the bar loses its magnetization.

Conversely: If a bar of iron carrying a coil of wire be magnetized in a direction at right angles to the plane of the coil a momentary electric pressure will be induced in the wire; if the current be reversed, another momentary pressure will be induced in the opposite direction in the coil.

Digitized by Google

These actions are fully explained in chaps. X and XI, and as they are perfectly familiar phenomena, a detailed explanation of the principles upon which they depend is not necessary here.

From the first two statements given above it is evident that if a bar of iron be provided with two coils of wire, one of which is supplied from a source of alternating current, as shown diagrammatically by fig. 1,916, at each impulse of the exciting current a pressure will be induced in the secondary coil, the direction of these impulses alternating like that of the exciting current.

Ques. What name is given to the coil through which current from the source flows?

Ans. *The primary winding.*

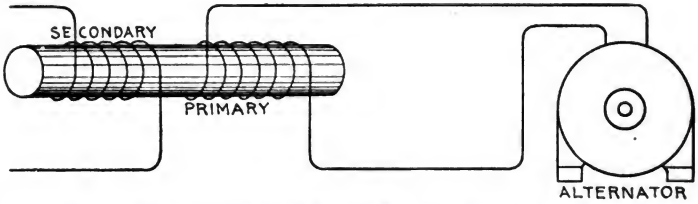


FIG. 1,916.—Diagram of elementary transformer with non-continuous core and connection with single phase alternator. The three essential parts are: primary winding, secondary winding, and an iron core.

Ques. What name is given to the coil in which a current is induced?

Ans. *The secondary winding.*

Similarly, the current from the source (alternator) is called the *primary current* and the induced current, the *secondary current.*

Ques. What is the objection to the elementary transformer shown in fig. 1,916?

Ans. The non-continuous core. With this type core, the flux emanating from the north pole of the bar has to return to

Digitized by Google

the south pole through the surrounding air; and as the reluctance of air is much greater than that of iron, the magnetism will be weak.

Ques. How is this overcome?

Ans. By the use of a continuous core as shown in fig. 1,917.

Ques. Is this the best arrangement, and why?

Ans. No. If the windings were put on as in fig. 1,917, the leakage of magnetic lines of force would be excessive, as indicated by the dotted lines. In such a case the lines which leak through air have no effect upon the secondary winding, and are therefore wasted.

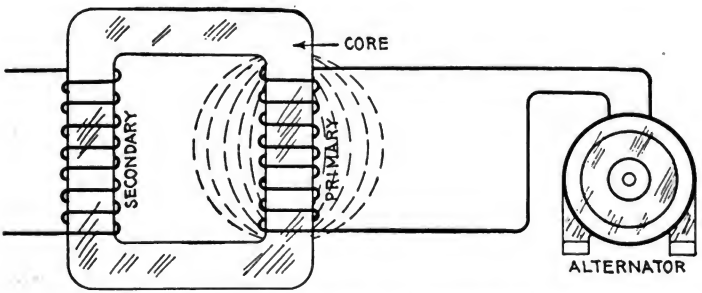


FIG. 1,917.—Diagram of elementary transformer with continuous core and connections with alternator. The dotted lines show the leakage of magnetic lines. To remedy this the arrangement shown in fig. 1,918 is used.

Ques. How is the magnetic leakage reduced to a minimum in commercial transformers?

Ans. In these, and even in ordinary induction coils (the operating principle of which is the same as that of transformers) the magnetic leakage is reduced to the lowest possible amount by arranging the coils one within the other, as shown in cross section in fig. 1,918.

Digitized by Google

The Induced Voltage.—The pressure induced in the secondary winding will depend on the *ratio* between the number of turns in the two windings. For example, a transformer with 500 turns of wire in its primary winding and 50 turns in its secondary winding would have a transformation ratio of 10 to 1, and if it were supplied with primary current at 1,000 volts, the secondary pressure at no load would be 100 volts.

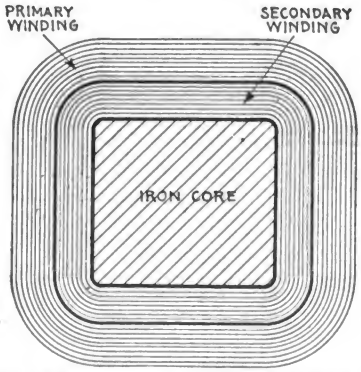


FIG. 1,918.—Cross section showing commercial arrangement of primary and secondary windings on core. One is superposed on the other. This arrangement compels practically all of the magnetic lines created by the primary winding to pass through the secondary winding.

EXAMPLE.—If ten amperes flow in the primary winding and the transformation ratio be 10, then $10 \times 10 = 100$ amperes will flow through the secondary winding.

Thus, a direct proportion exists between the pressures and turns in the two windings and an inverse proportion between the amperes and turns, that is :

primary voltage: *secondary voltage* = *primary turns*: *secondary turns*
primary current: *secondary current* = *secondary turns*: *primary turns*

From the above equations it is seen that the watts of the primary circuit equal the watts of the secondary circuit.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Are the above relations strictly true, and why?

Ans. No, they are only approximate, because of transformer losses.

In the above example, the total wattage in the primary circuit is $1{,}000 \times 10 = 10$ kw., and that in the secondary circuit is $100 \times 100 = 10$ kw. Hence, while both volts and amperes are widely different in the two circuits, the watts for each are the same in the ideal case, that is, assuming perfect transformer action or 100% efficiency. Now, the usual loss in commercial transformers is about 10%, so that the actual watts delivered in the secondary circuit is $(100 \times 100) \times 90\% = 9$ kw.

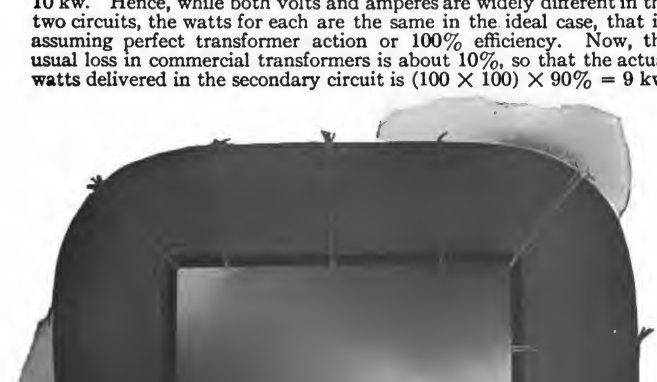


FIG. 1,919.—Wagner transformer coil formed, ready for taping. These are known as "pan cake" coils. They are wound with flat cotton covered copper strip. In heavy coils, several strips in parallel are used per turn in order to facilitate the winding and produce a more compact coil.

The No Load Current.—When the secondary winding of a transformer is open or disconnected from the secondary circuit no current will flow in the winding, but a very small current called the *no load current* will flow in the primary circuit.

Digitized by Google

The reason for this is as follows: The current flowing in the primary winding causes repeated reversals of magnetic flux through the iron core. These variations of flux induce pressures in both coils; that induced in the primary called the *reverse pressure* is opposite in direction



FIG. 1,920.—Wagner coils with insulation ready for core assembly. The flat coils, sometimes called pancake coils, are wound of flat, cotton covered, copper strip with ample insulation between layers. In heavy coils several flat strips in multiple are used per turn in order to facilitate the winding and produce a more compact coil. In many cases normal current flow per high tension coil is very low and could be carried with a very small cross sectional area of copper; however, flat strip is almost always used on account of the increased mechanical stability thus obtained.

and very nearly equal to the impressed pressure, that is, to the pressure applied to the primary winding. Accordingly the only force available to cause current to flow through the primary winding is the difference between the impressed pressure and reverse pressure, the *effective pressure*.

Digitized by Google

The Magnetizing Current.—The magnetizing current of a transformer is sometimes spoken of as that current which the primary winding takes from the mains when working at normal pressure. The *true magnetizing current* is only that component of this total no load current which is in quadrature with the supply pressure. The remaining component has to overcome the various iron losses, and is therefore an "in phase" component. The relation between these two components determines the power factor of the so called "magnetizing current."



FIGS. 1,921 and 1,922.—Assembled coils of Westinghouse 10 and 15 kva. transformers; views showing ventilating ducts.

The true magnetizing component is small if the transformer be well designed, and be worked at low flux density.

Action of Transformer with Load.—If the secondary winding of a transformer be connected to the secondary circuit by closing a switch so that current flows through the secondary winding, the transformer is said to be *loaded*.

The action of this secondary current is to oppose the magnetizing action of the slight current already flowing in the primary winding, thus decreasing the maximum value reached by the alternating magnetic flux in the core, thereby decreasing the induced pressure in each winding.

Digitized by Google

The amount of this decrease, however, is *very small*, inasmuch as a very small decrease of the induced pressure in the primary coil greatly increases the difference between the pressure applied to the primary coil and the opposing pressure induced in the primary coil, so that the primary current is greatly increased. In fact, *the increase of primary current due to the loading of the transformer is just great enough (or very nearly) to exactly balance the magnetizing action of the current in the*



FIG. 1,923.—Rear view of Fort Wayne distributing transformer, showing hanger irons for attaching to pole cross arm.

secondary coil; that is, the flux in the core must be maintained approximately constant by the primary current whatever value the secondary current may have.

When the load on a transformer is increased, the primary of the transformer automatically takes additional current and power from the supply mains in direct proportion to the load on the secondary.

When the load on the secondary is reduced, for example by turning off lamps, the power taken from the supply mains by the primary coil is automatically reduced in proportion to the decrease in the load. This automatic action of the transformer is due to the balanced magnetizing action of the primary and secondary currents.

Digitized by Google

Classification of Transformers.—As in the case of motors, the great variety of transformer makes it necessary that a classification, to be comprehensive, must be made from several points of view, as:

1. With respect to the transformation, as

   a. Step up transformers;
   b. Step down transformers.

2. With respect to the arrangement of the coils and magnetic circuit, as

   a. Core transformers;
   b. Shell transformers;
   c. Combined core and shell transformers.

3. With respect to the kind of circuit they are to be used on, as

   a. Single phase transformers;
   b. Polyphase transformers.

4. With respect to the method employed in cooling, as

   a. Dry transformers;
   b. Air cooled transformers { natural draught; forced draught, or air blast;
   c. Oil cooled transformers;
   d. Water cooled transformers.

5. With respect to the nature of their output, as

   a. Constant pressure transformers;
   b. Constant current transformers;
   c. Current transformers;
   d. Auto-transformers.

6. With respect to the kind of service, as

   a. Distributing;
   b. Power.

Digitized by Google

7. With respect to the circuit connection that the transformer is constructed for, as

a. Series transformers;
b. Shunt transformers.

Step Up Transformers.—This form of transformer is used to transform a low voltage current into a high voltage current. Such transformers are employed at the generating end of a transmission line to raise the voltage of the alternators to such

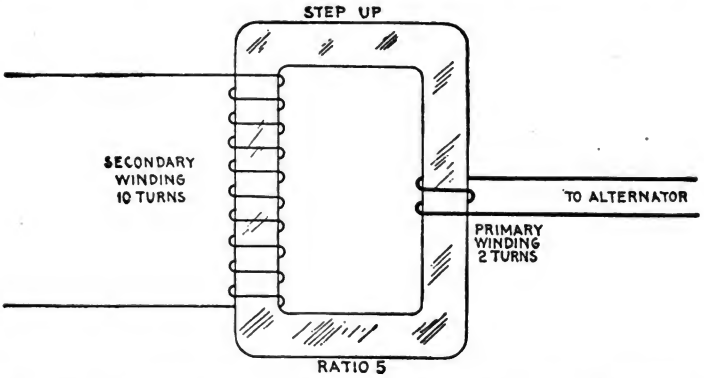


FIG. 1,924.—Diagram of elementary *step up* transformer. As shown the primary winding has two turns and secondary 10 turns, giving a ratio of voltage transformation of $10 \div 2 = 5$. Since only $^1/_5$ as much current flows in the secondary winding as in the primary, the latter requires heavier wire than the former.

value as will enable the electric power to be economically transmitted to a distant point.

Copper Economy with Step Up Transformers.—To comprehend fully the bearing of the matter, it must be remembered that the energy supplied per second is the product of two factors, the current and the pressure at which that current is supplied; the magnitudes of the two factors may vary, but the value of the power supplied depends only on the product of the two; for example, the energy furnished per second by a current of 10 amperes supplied at a pressure of 2,000 volts is

Digitized by Google

exactly the same in amount as that furnished per second by a current of 400 amperes supplied at a presure of 50 volts; in each case, the product is 20,000 watts.

Now the loss of energy that occurs in transmission through a well insulated wire depends also on two factors, the current and the resistance of the wire, and in a given wire is proportional to the square of the current. In the above example the current of 400 amperes, if transmitted through the same wire as the 10 amperes current, would, because it is forty times as great, waste sixteen hundred times as much energy in heating the wire. It follows that, for the same loss of energy, the 10 ampere current at 2,000 volts may be carried by a wire having only

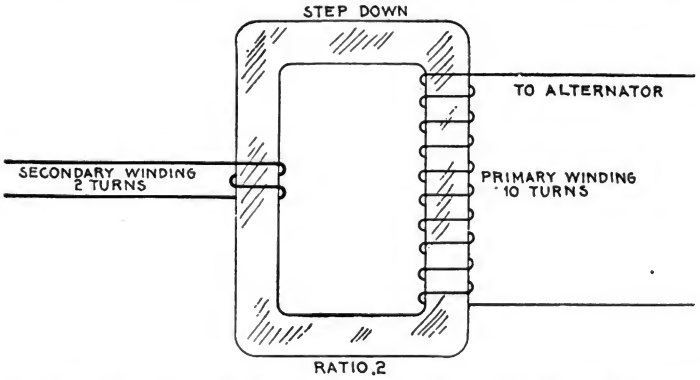


FIG. 1,925.—Diagram of elementary step down transformer. As shown the primary winding has 10 turns and the secondary 2, giving a ratio of voltage transformation of 2 ÷ 10 = .2. The current in the secondary being 5 times greater than in the primary will require a proportionately heavier wire.

$\frac{1}{1,600}$th of the sectional area of the wire used for the 400 ampere current at 50 volts.

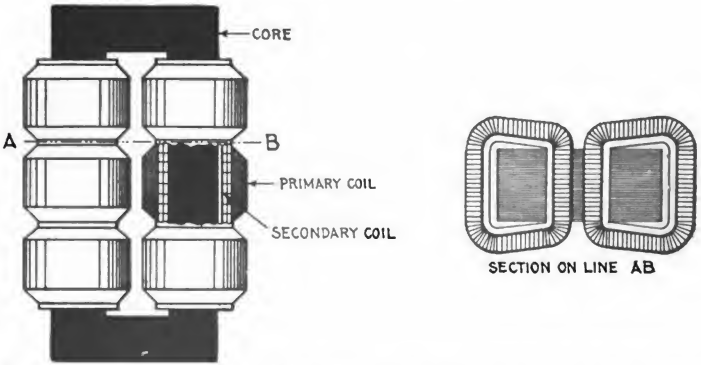
The cost of copper conductors for the distributing lines is therefore very greatly economized by employing high pressures for distribution of small currents.

Step Down Transformers.—When current is supplied to consumers for lighting purposes, and for the operation of motors, etc., considerations of safety as well as those of suitability,

Digitized by Google

require the delivery of the current at comparatively low pressures ranging from 100 to 250 volts for lamps, and from 100 to 600 volts for motors.

This involves that the high pressure current in the transmission lines must be transformed to low pressure current at the receiving or distributing points by *step down transformers*, an elementary transformer being shown in fig. 1,925.



FIGS. 1,926 and 1,927.—Core type transformer. It consists of a central core of laminated iron, around which the coils are wound. A usual form of core type transformer consists of a rectangular core, around the two long limbs of which the primary and secondary coils are wound, the low tension coil being placed next the core.

Transformers of this type have a large number of turns in the primary winding and a small number in the secondary, in ratio depending on the amount of pressure reduction required.

Core Transformers.—This type of transformer may be defined as one having an iron core, upon which the wire is wound in such a manner that the iron is enveloped within the coils, the outer surface of the coils being exposed to the air as shown in figs. 1,926 and 1,927.

Digitized by Google

Shell Transformers.—In the shell type of transformer, as shown in fig. 1,928, the core is in the form of a shell, being built around and through the coils. A shell transformer has, as a rule, fewer turns and a higher voltage per turn than the core type.

Ques. What is the comparison between core and shell transformers?

Ans. The relative advantages of the two types has been the subject of considerable discussion among manufacturers; the

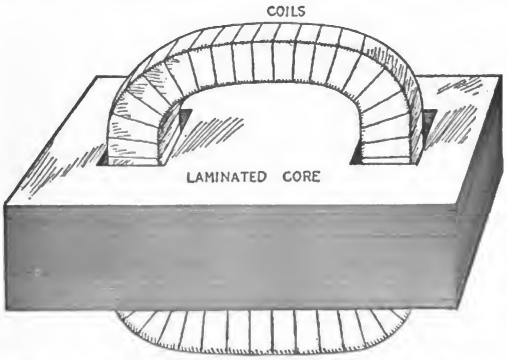


FIG. 1,928.—Shell type transformer. In construction the laminated core is built around and through the coils as shown. For large ratings this type has some advantages with respect to insulation, while for small ratings the core type is to be preferred in this respect. The shell arrangement of the core gives better cooling; with this arrangement minimum magnetic leakage is easily obtained.

companies who formerly built only shell type transformers, now build core types, while with other builders the opposite practice obtains.

Ques. Upon what does the choice between the two types chiefly depend?

Ans. Upon manufacturing convenience rather than operating characteristics.

Digitized by Google

The major insulation in a core type transformer consists of several large pieces of great mechanical strength, while in the shell type, there are required an extremely large number of relatively small pieces of insulating material, which necessitates careful workmanship to prevent defects in the finished transformer, when thin or fragile material is used.

Both core and shell transformers are built for all ratings; for small ratings the core type possesses certain advantages with reference to insulation, while for large ratings, the shell type possesses better cooling properties, and has less magnetic leakage than the core type.

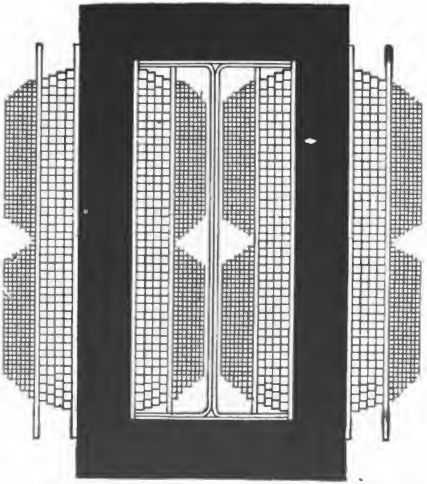


FIG. 1,929.—View illustrating the construction of cores and coils of Maloney transformers.

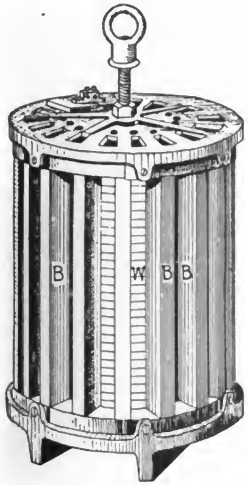


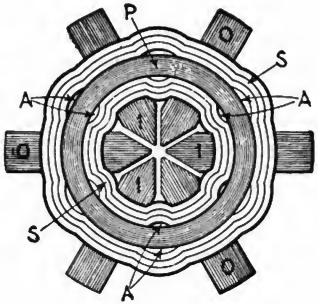
FIG. 1,930.—Maloney mica shield between primary and secondary coils, showing lapping feature which prevents the wrinkling and cracking of the mica.

Combined Core and Shell Transformers.—An improved type of transformer has been introduced which can be considered either as two superposed shell transformers with coils in common, or as a single core type transformer with divided magnetic circuit and having coils on only one leg. It is best considered however, as a combined core and shell transformer.

Digitized by Google

and for small sizes it possesses most of the advantages of both types. It can be constructed at less cost than can either a core or a shell transformer having the same operating characteristics and temperature limits.





FIGS. 1,931 and 1,932.—The Berry combined core and shell transformer. It consists of a number of inner and outer vertical and radial laminated iron blocks built up of the usual thin sheet iron, with the coils between. The magnetic circuit is completed at the top and bottom by other laminated blocks placed horizontally, and the whole is held together between top and bottom cast iron frame plates by a bolt passing right down the center. Fig. 1,931 gives a general view, W being the winding, and B, B, B, etc., the outer laminated blocks. The construction will be better understood from fig. 1,932, where it may be supposed that the top cap and laminated cross pieces have been removed. Here I,I,I and O,O,O are respectively the inner and outer radial vertical blocks, P the primary, and S, S the secondary; the latter being in two sections with the primary sandwiched between, as an extra precaution against shock. It will be evident that this form of transformer possesses excellent ventilation; and this is still further enhanced by opening out the winding at intervals to leave ventilating apertures, as at A, A, A. Fig. 1,932 shows only 6 sets of radial blocks, but the usual plan is to provide 24 or 36, according to the size of the transformer.

Fig. 1,932 shows a cross section of the first transformer of this type to be developed commercially, and known as an "iron clad" transformer; this construction has been used in England for some time. Fig. 1,933 shows the American practice.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How is economy of construction obtained in designing combined core and shell transformers?

Ans. The cross section of iron in the central leg of the core is made somewhat less than that external to the coils, in order to reduce the amount of copper used in the coils.

Single and Polyphase Transformers.—A single phase transformer may be defined as *one having only one set of primary and secondary terminals, and in which the fluxes in the one or more*

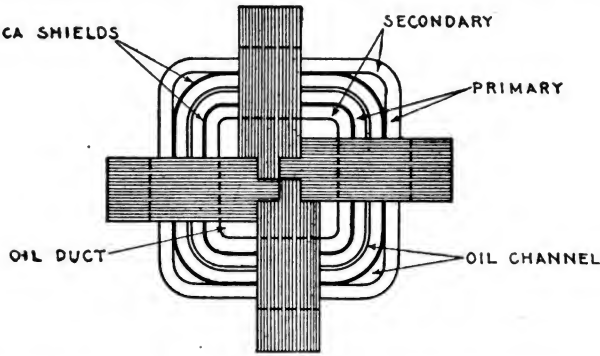


FIG. 1,933.—Plan of Core of General Electric combined core and shell transformer. The core used contains four magnetic circuits of equal reluctance, in multiple; each circuit consisting of a separate core. In this construction one leg of each circuit is built up of two different widths of punchings forming such a cross section that when the four circuits are assembled together they interlock to form a central leg, upon which the winding is placed. The four remaining legs consist of punchings of equal width. These occupy a position surrounding the coil at equal distances from the center, on the four sides; forming a channel between each leg and coil, thereby presenting large surfaces to the oil and allowing its free access to all parts of the winding. The punchings of each size transformer are all of the same length, assembled alternately, and forming two lap joints equally distributed in the four corners of the core, thereby giving a magnetic circuit of low reluctance.

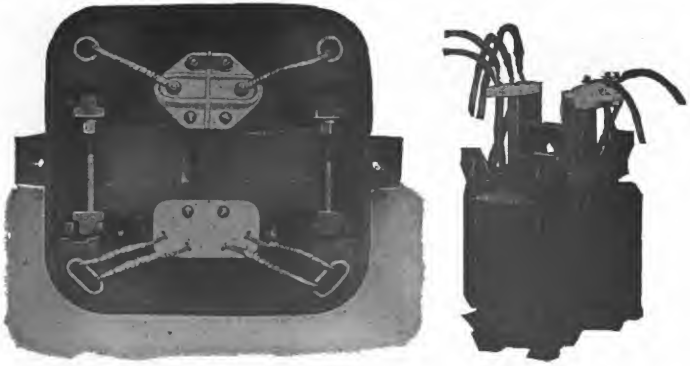
magnetic circuits are all in phase, as distinguished from a polyphase transformer, or combination in one unit of several one phase transformers with separate electric circuits but having certain magnetic circuits in common. In polyphase transformers

Digitized by Google

there are two or more magnetic circuits through the core, and the fluxes in the various circuits are displaced in phase.

Ques. Is it necessary to use a polyphase transformer to transform a polyphase current?

Ans. No, a separate single phase transformer may be used for each phase.

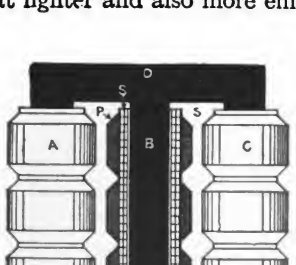


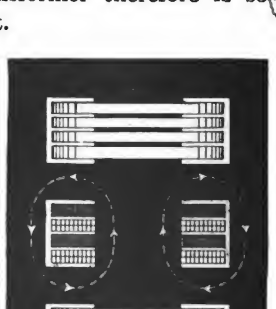
FIGS. 1,934 and 1,935.—Top view showing core and coils in place, and view of coils of Westinghouse distributing transformer. The coils are wound from round wire in the smaller sizes of transformers and from strap copper in the larger sizes. Strap wound coils allow a greater current carrying conductor section than coils wound from large round wire, as there is little waste space between the different turns of the conductor. The coils are arranged concentrically with the high tension winding between the two low tension coils, this arrangement giving the fine regulation found in these transformers. The low tension coils are wound in layers which extend across the whole length of the coil opening in the iron, while the high tension coils are wound in two parts and placed end to end. This construction reduces the normal voltage strains to a value which will not give trouble under any condition of service. The magnetic circuit is built up of laminated, alloy steel punchings, each layer of laminæ being reversed with reference to the preceding layer and all joints butted. This gives a continuous magnetic circuit of low reluctance, low iron loss and low exciting current. When assembled, the magnetic circuit consists of four separate parallel circuits encircling the coils and protecting the windings from mechanical injury. Separate high and low tension terminal blocks of glazed porcelain are mounted upon extensions of the upper end frames. All danger of confusing the leads or inadvertently making an electrical connection between the high and low tension sides of the transformer is thus averted. The high tension winding has four leads brought to the studs in the terminal block. Adjustable brass connectors or links between the studs provide for series or multiple connections between two points of the high tension winding. The position of the studs and the length of the links are so proportioned that wrong connections on the block are impossible. Barriers on the porcelain block separate the studs and prevent danger of arcing. Leads with means of preventing creeping of oil by capillary action are attached to these studs and brought out of the core through porcelain bushings.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Is there any choice between a polyphase transformer and separate single phase transformers for transforming a polyphase current?

Ans. Yes, the polyphase transformer is preferable, because less iron is required than would be with the several single phase transformers. The polyphase transformer therefore is somewhat lighter and also more efficient.





FIGS. 1,936 and 1,937.—Core and shell types of three phase transformer. In the core type, fig. 1,936, there are three cores A, B, and C, joined by the yokes D and D'. This forms a three phase magnetic circuit, since the instantaneous sum of the fluxes is zero. Each core is wound with a primary coil P, and a secondary coil S. As shown, the primary winding of each phase is divided into three coils to ensure better insulation. The primaries and secondaries may be connected *star* or *mesh*. The core B has a shorter return path than A and C, which causes the magnetizing current in that phase to be less than in the A and C phases. This has sometimes been obviated by placing the three cores at the corners of an equilateral triangle (as in figs. 1,939 and 1,940), but the extra trouble involved is not justified, as the unbalancing is a no load condition, and practically disappears when the transformer is loaded. The shell type, fig. 1,937, consists practically of three separate transformers in one unit. The flux paths are here separate, each pair of coils being threaded by its own flux, which does not, as in the core type, return through the other coils. This gives the shell type an advantage over the core type, for should one phase burn out, the other two may still be used, especially if the faulty coils be short circuited. The effect of such short circuiting is to prevent all but a very small flux from threading the faulty coil.

Ques. Name two varieties of polyphase transformer?

Ans. The core, and the shell types as shown in figs. 1,936 and 1,937.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How should a three phase transformer be operated with one phase damaged?

Ans. The damaged windings should be separated electrically from the other coils.

The pressure winding of the damaged phase should be short circuited upon itself and the corresponding low pressure winding should also be short circuited upon itself. The winding thus short circuited will choke down the flux passing through the portion of the core surrounded by them without producing in any portion of the winding a current greater than a small fraction of the current which would normally exist in such portion at full load.

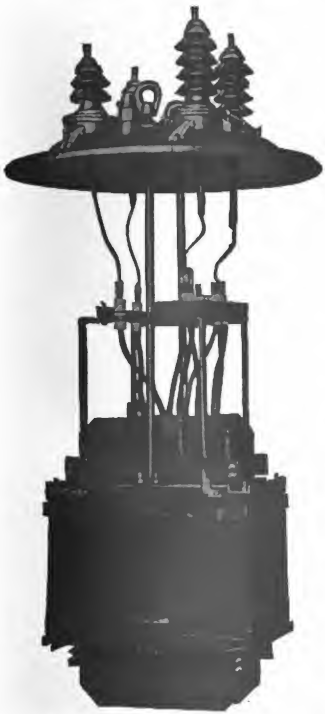


FIG. 1,938.—Interior of General Electric oil cooled 500 kva. 33,000 volt outdoor transformer showing lifting arrangement.

Transformer Losses.—As previously mentioned, the ratio between the applied primary voltage and the secondary terminal voltage of a transformer is not always equal to the ratio of primary to secondary turns of wire around the core.

The commercial transformer is not a perfect converter of energy, that is, the **input,** or watts applied to the primary circuit is always more than the **output** or watts delivered from the secondary winding.

This is due to the various losses which take place, and the

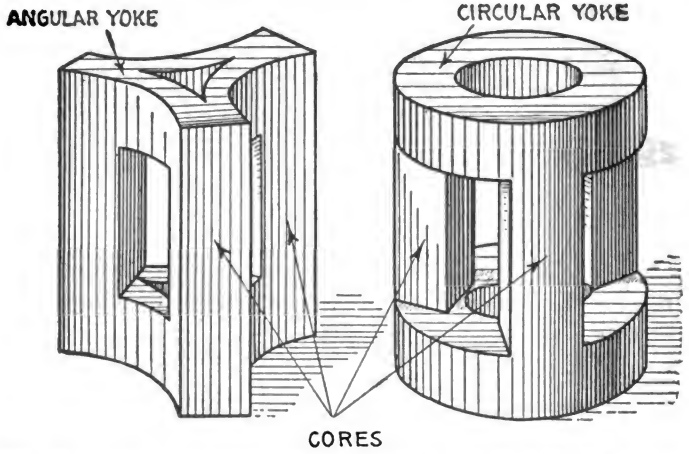
Digitized by Google

difference between the input and the output is equal to the sum of these losses. They are divided into two classes:

1. The **iron** or **core** losses;
2. The **copper** losses.

The iron or core losses are due to

1. Hysteresis;



FIGS. 1,939 and 1,940.—Triangular arrangements of cores of three phase transformer. Fig. 1,939, form with three cornered yokes at bottom and top of cores; fig. 1,940, form with circular yokes. While these designs give perfect symmetry for the three phases, there is some trouble in the mechanical arrangement of the yokes. If these be stamped out triangularly and inserted horizontally between the three cores, it is necessary to interpose a layer of insulation, otherwise there would be objectionable eddy currents formed in the stampings.

2. Eddy currents;
3. Magnetic leakage (negligibly small).

Those which are classed as copper losses are due to

1. Heating the conductors (the I^2R loss).
2. Eddy currents in conductors.

Digitized by Google

Hysteresis.—In the operation of a transformer the alternating current causes the core to undergo rapid reversals of magnetism. This requires an expenditure of energy which is converted into heat.

This loss of energy as before explained is due to the work required to change the position of the molecules of the iron,



FIG. 1,941.—View showing mechanical construction of coil and core of Moloney pole type ½ to 50 kw. transformer. Moloney standard transformers of these sizes are regularly wound for 1,100 to 2,200 primary volts. For 1,100 volts the primary coils are connected in parallel by means of connecting links; for 2,200 volts, they are connected in series. The porcelain primary terminal board is provided with two connecting links so that connections can be made for either 1,100 or 2,200 volts.

in reversing the magnetization. Extra power then must be taken from the line to make up for this loss, thus reducing the efficiency of the transformer.

Ques. Upon what does the hysteresis loss depend?

Ans. Upon the quality of the iron in the core, the magnetic density at which it is worked and the frequency.

Digitized by Google

Ques. With a given quality of iron how does the hysteresis loss vary?

Ans. It varies as the 1.6 power of the voltage with constant frequency.

Ques. In construction, what is done to obtain minimum hysteresis loss?

Ans. The softest iron obtainable is used for the core, and a low degree of magnetization is employed.

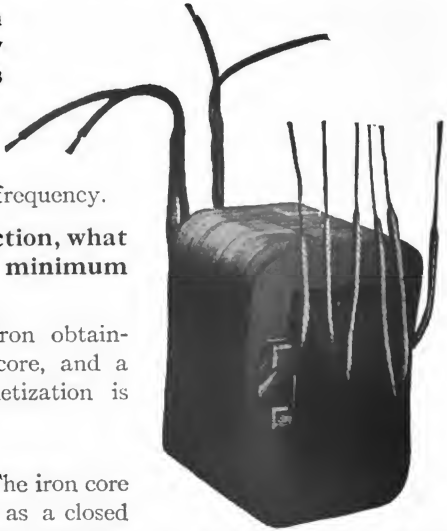


FIG. 1,942.—Fort Wayne transformer coils and core complete.

Eddy Currents.—The iron core of a transformer acts as a closed conductor in which small pressures of different values are induced in different parts by the alternating field, giving rise to eddy currents. Energy is thus consumed by these currents which is wasted in heating the iron, thus reducing the efficiency of the transformer.



FIG. 1,943.—Top view of Fort Wayne (type A) transformer cover removed, showing assembly of coils and core and disposition of leads.

Digitized by Google



Ques. How is this loss reduced to a minimum?

Ans. By the usual method of laminating the core.

The iron core is built up of very thin sheet iron or steel stampings, and these are insulated from each other by varnish and are laid face to face at right angles to the path that the eddy currents tend to follow, so that the currents would have to pass from sheet to sheet, through the insulation.

Ques. In practice, upon what does the thickness of the laminæ or stampings depend?

Ans. Upon the frequency.

The laminæ vary in thickness from about .014 to .025 inch, according as the frequency is respectively high or low.

FIG. 1,944.—General Electric 10 kva., (type H) transformer removed from tank. That part of the steel core composing the magnetic circuit outside of the winding is divided into four equal sections. Each section is located a sufficient distance from the winding so that all portions of the winding and core are equally exposed to the cooling action of the oil. On all except the very smallest sizes the winding is divided by channels and ducts through which a continual circulation of oil is maintained. The result is uniform temperature throughout the transformer, thus eliminating the detrimental effects of unequal expansion in the coils with consequent rubbing and abrasion of the insulation.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Does a transformer take any current when the secondary circuit is open?

Ans. Yes, a "no load" current passes through the primary.

Ques. Why?

Ans. The energy thus supplied balances the core losses.

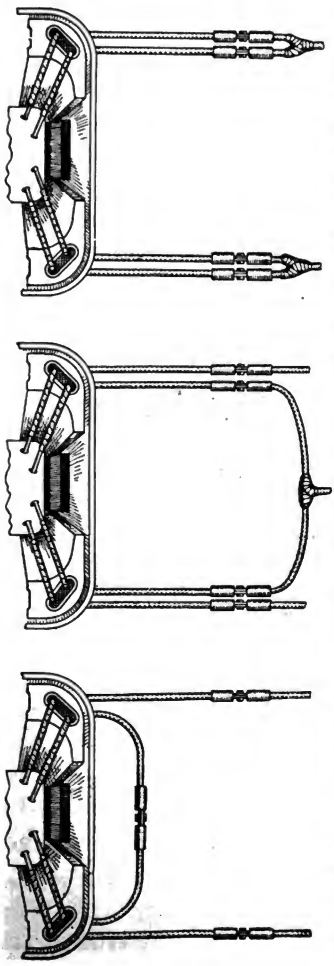


FIG. 1,945.—Cover construction of Wagner 350 kva., oil filled 1,100-2,200 volt transformer. In transformers with corrugated cases, the base and top ring are cast to the corrugated iron sheets.

Ques. Are the iron or copper losses the more important, and why?

Ans. The iron losses, because these are going on as long as the primary pressure is maintained, and the copper losses take place only while energy is being delivered from the secondary.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,946 to 1,948.—Methods of connecting the low tension sides of Westinghouse transformers using the connectors illustrated in figs. 1,949 to 1,953.

Strictly speaking, on *no load* (that is when the secondary circuit is open) a slight copper loss takes place in the primary coil but because of its smallness is not mentioned. It is, to be exact, included in the expression "iron losses," as the precise meaning of this term signifies *not only the hysteresis and eddy current losses but the copper loss in the primary coil when the secondary is open.*

The importance of the iron losses is apparent in noting that in electric lighting the lights are in use only a small fraction of the 24 hours, but the iron losses continue all the time, thus the greater part of each day energy must be supplied to each transformer by the power company to meet the losses, during which time no money is received from the customers.

Some companies make a minimum charge per month whether any current is used or not to offset the no load transformer losses and rent of meter.

Ques. How may the iron losses be reduced to a minimum?

Ans. By having short magnetic paths of large area and using iron or steel of high permeability. The design and construction must keep the eddy currents as low as possible.

Digitized by Google

As before stated the iron losses take place continually, and since most transformers are loaded only a small fraction of a day it is very important that the iron losses should be reduced to a minimum.

With a large number of transformers on a line, the magnetizing current that is wasted, is considerable.

During May, 1910, the U. S. Bureau of Standards issued a circular showing that each watt saving in core losses was a saving of 88 cents, which is evident economy in the use of high grade transformers.

Copper Losses.—Since the primary and secondary windings of a transformer have resistance, some of the energy supplied will be lost by heating the copper. The amount of this loss is proportional to square of the current, and is usually spoken of as the I^2R loss.



FIGS. 1,949 to 1,953.—Westinghouse low tension transformer connectors for connecting the low tension leads to the feeder wires. The transformers of the smaller capacities have knuckle joint connectors and those of the larger sizes have interleaved connectors. These connectors form a mechanically strong joint of high current carrying capacity. Since the high tension leads are connected directly to the cut out or fuse blocks, connectors are not required on these leads. The use of these connectors allows a transformer to be removed and another of the same or a different capacity substituted usually without soldering or unsoldering a joint. The connectors also facilitate changes in the low tension connections.

Ques. Define the copper losses.

Ans. The copper losses are the sum of the I^2R losses of both the primary and secondary windings, and the eddy current loss in the conductors.

Ques. Is the eddy current loss in the conductors large?

Ans. No, it is very small and may be disregarded, so that the sum of the I^2R losses of primary and secondary can be taken as the total copper loss for practical purposes.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What effect has the power factor on the copper losses?

Ans. Since the copper loss depends upon the current in the primary and secondary windings, it requires a larger current when the power factor is low than when high, hence the copper losses increase with a lowering of the power factor.

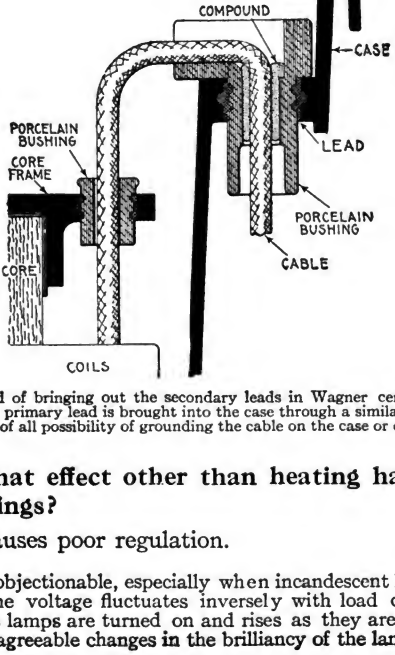


FIG. 1,954.—Method of bringing out the secondary leads in Wagner central station transformers. Each primary lead is brought into the case through a similar bushing. Observe the elimination of all possibility of grounding the cable on the case or core.

Ques. What effect other than heating has resistance in the windings?

Ans. It causes poor regulation.

This is objectionable, especially when incandescent lights are in use, because the voltage fluctuates inversely with load changes, that is, it drops as lamps are turned on and rises as they are turned off, producing disagreeable changes in the brilliancy of the lamps.

Digitized by Google

Cooling of Transformers.—Owing to the fact that a transformer is a stationary piece of apparatus, not receiving ventilation from moving parts, its efficient cooling becomes a very strong feature of the design, especially in the case of large high pressure transformers. The effective cooling is rendered more difficult because transformers are invariably enclosed in more or less air tight cases, except in very dry situations, where a perforated metal covering may be permitted.



FIGS. 1,955 and 1,956.—Westinghouse transformer terminal blocks for high and low tension conductors.

The final degree to which the temperature rises after continuous working for some hours, depends on the total losses in iron and copper, on the total radiating surface, and on the facilities afforded for cooling.

There are various methods of cooling transformers, the cooling mediums employed being

1. Air;
2. Oil;
3. Water.

The means adopted for getting rid of the heat which is inevitably developed in a transformer by the waste energy is one of the important considerations with respect to its design.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is the behaviour of a transformer with respect to heating when operated continuously at full load?

Ans. The temperature gradually rises until at the end of some hours it becomes constant.

The difference between the constant temperature and that of the secondary atmosphere is called the temperature rise at full load. *Its amount constitutes a most important feature in the commercial value of the transformer.*



FIGS. 1,957 to 1,960.—Porcelain bushing for Westinghouse transformers.

Ques. Why is a high rise of temperature objectionable?

Ans. It causes rapid deterioration of the insulation, increased hysteresis losses, and greater fire risk.

Dry Transformers.—This classification is used to distinguish transformers using air as a cooling medium from those which employ a liquid such as water or oil to effect the cooling.

Air Cooled Transformers.—This name is given to all transformers which are cooled by currents of air without regard to the manner in which the air is circulated. There are two methods of circulating the air, as by

1. Natural draught;
2. Forced draught, or blast.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Describe a natural draught air cooled transformer.

Ans. In this type, the case containing the windings is open at the top and bottom. The column of air in the case expands as its temperature rises, becoming lighter than the cold air on the outside and is consequently displaced by the latter, resulting in a circulation of air through the case. The process is identical with furnace draught.



FIGS. 1,961 to 1,963.—Fuse blocks for Westinghouse transformers. The fuses furnished with the transformers are mounted in a weather proof porcelain fuse box of special design. The stationary contacts are deeply recessed in the porcelain and are well separated from each other. The contacts are so constructed that the plug is held securely in place by giving it a partial turn after inserting it. When the plug is in position, the fuse is in sight and its condition can be noted which eliminates all danger of pulling the fuse while same is still intact and the transformer is under load.

Ques. Describe a forced draught or air blast transformer.

Ans. The case is closed at the bottom and open at the top. A current of air is forced through from bottom to top as shown in fig. 1,964 by a fan.

Ques. How are the coils best adapted to air cooling?

Ans. They are built up high and thin, and assembled with spaces between them, for the circulation of the air.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What are the requirements with respect to the air supply in forced draught transformers?

Ans. Air blast transformers require a large volume of air at a comparatively low pressue. This varies from one-half to one ounce per square inch. The larger transformers require greater pressure to overcome the resistance of longer air ducts.

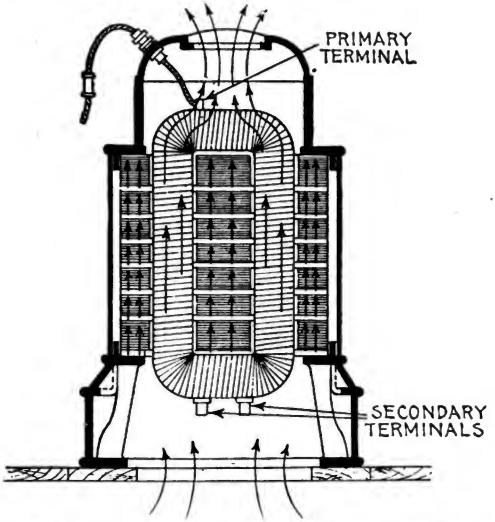


FIG. 1,964.—Forced draught or "air blast" transformer. As is indicated by the classification, this type of transformer is cooled by forcing a current of air through ducts, provided between the coils and between sectionalized portions of the core. The cold air is forced through the interior of the core containing the coils by a blower, the air passing vertically through the coils and out through the top. Part of the air is sometimes diverted horizontally through the ventilating ducts provided in the core, passing off at one side of the transformer. The amount of air going through the coils, or through the core, may be controlled independently by providing dampers in the passages.

Ques. How much air is used ordinarily for cooling per kw. of load?

Ans. About 150 cu. ft. of air per minute.

Digitized by Google

In forced draught transformers, the air pressure maintained by the blower varies from ½ to 1½ oz. per square inch. Forced draught or air blast transformers are seldom built in small sizes or for voltages higher than about 35,000 volts.

Oil Cooled Transformers.—In this type of transformer the coils and core are immersed in oil and provided with ducts to



FIG. 1965.—Looking down into a Wagner central station transformer, showing the connection board, which provides facility for varying the ratio of transformation and also for interchanging the primaries.

allow the oil to circulate by connection and thus serve as a medium to transmit the heat to the case, from which it passes by radiation.

Ques. Explain in detail the circulation of the oil.

Ans. The oil, heated by contact with the exposed surfaces of the core and coils, rises to the surface, flows outward and

Digitized by Google

descends along the sides of the transformer case, from the outer surface of which the heat is radiated into the air.

Ques. How may the efficiency of this method of cooling be increased?

Ans. By providing the case with external ribs or fins, or by "fluting" so as to increase the external cooling surface.





FIG. 1966.—Section through Westinghouse ½ kilovolt ampere type S transformer.
FIG. 1967.—Section through Westinghouse 50 kilovolt ampere type S transformer showing large oil ducts.

Ques. In what types of transformer is this mode of oil cooling used?

Ans. Lighting transformers.

In such transformers, the large volume of oil absorbs considerable heat, so that the rise of temperature is retarded. Hence, for moderate periods

Digitized by Google

of operation, say 3 or 4 hours, the average lighting period, the maximum temperature would not be reached.

Ques. In what other capacities except that of cooling agent, does the oil act?

Ans. It is a good insulator, preserves the insulation from oxidation, increasing the breakdown resistance of the insulation, and generally restores the insulation in case of puncture.



FIG. 1,968.—Wagner 300 kva, 4,400 volt three phase oil cooled transformer. In this type of transformer the case is filled with oil and fluted so as to increase the cooling surface, an oil drain valve is screwed to a wrought iron nipple cast into the base, the duct to which is in such a position as to make it possible not only to drain all of the oil from the transformer, but when desirable, to draw off a small quantity from the bottom. Should any moisture be in the oil it is therefore drawn off first.

Ques. What is the special objection to oil?

Ans. Danger of fire.

Ques. What kind of oil is used in transformers?

Ans. Mineral oil.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What are the requirements of a good grade of transformer oil?

Ans. It should show very little evaporation at 212° Fahr., and should not give off gases at such a rate as to produce an explosive mixture with the air at a temperate below 356°. It should not contain moisture, acid, alkali or sulphur compounds.



FIG. 1,969.—Section through Fort Wayne (type A) transformer showing interior of case, core conductors, and insulation, also division of laminæ.

The presence of moisture can be detected by thrusting a red hot nail in the oil; if the oil "crackle," water is present. Moisture may be removed by raising the temperature slightly above the boiling point, 212° Fahr., but the time consumed (several days) is excessive.

Digitized by Google

Water Cooled Transformers.—A water cooled transformer is one in which water is the cooling agent, and, in most cases, oil is the medium by which heat is transferred from the coils to the water. In construction, pipes or a jacketed casing is provided through which the cooling water is passed by forced circulation, as shown in figs. 1,970 and 1,971.

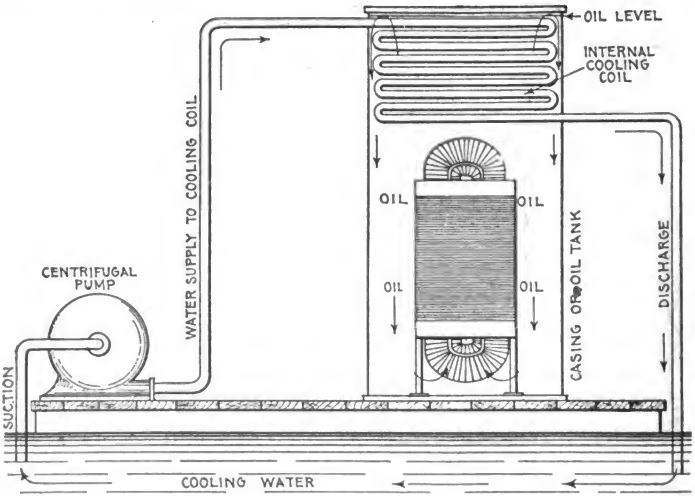


FIG. 1,970.—Water cooled transformer with internal cooling coil, that is, with cooling coil within the transformer case. In this type, the cooling coil, through which the circulating water passes, is placed in the top of the case or tank, the latter is filled with oil so that the coil is submerged. The oil acts simply as a medium to transfer the heat generated by the transformer to the water circulating through cooling coil. In operation a continual circulation of the oil takes place, as indicated by the arrows, due to the alternate heating and cooling it receives as it flows past the transformer coils and cooling coil respectively.

In some cases tubular conductors are provided for the circulation of the water.

Water cooled transformers may be divided into two classes, as those having:

Digitized by Google

1. Internal cooling coils;
2. External cooling coils.

Ques. Describe the first named type.

Ans. Inside the transformer case near the top is placed a coil of wrought iron pipe, through which the cooling water is

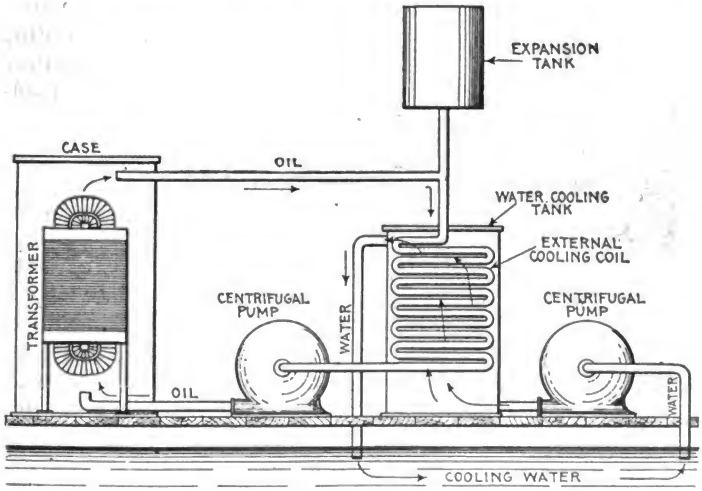


FIG. 1,971.—Water cooled transformer with external cooling coil. In this arrangement the cooling coil is placed in a separate tank as shown. Here forced circulation is employed for both the heat transfer medium (oil) and the cooling agent (water), two pumps being necessary. The cool oil enters the transformer case at the lowest point and absorbing heat from the transformer coils it passes off through the top connection leading to the cooling coil and expansion tank. Since the transformer tank is closed, an expansion tank is provided to allow for expansion of the oil due to heating. The water circulation is arranged as illustrated.

pumped. The case is filled with oil, which by *thermo-circulation* flows upward through the coils, transferring the heat absorbed from the coils to the water; on cooling it becomes more dense (heavier) and descends along the inside surface of the casing.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How much circulating water is required?

Ans. It depends upon the difference between the initial and discharge temperatures of the circulating water.

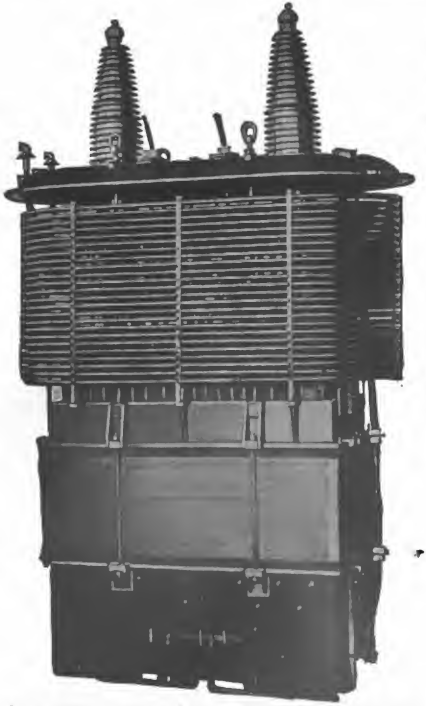


FIG. 1,972.—Interior of General Electric water cooled 140,000 volt transformer showing cooling coil.

Ques. In water cooled transformers how much cooling surface is required for an internal cooling coil?

Ans. The surface of the cooling coil should be from .5 to 1.3 sq. in. per watt of total transformer loss, depending upon the amount of heat which the external surface of the transformer case will dissipate.

For a water temperature rise of 43° Fahr., 1.32 lbs. of water per minute is required per kw. of load.

Transformer Insulation.—This subject has not, until the last few years, been given the same special attention that many other electrical problems have received, although the development

Digitized by Google

of the transformer from its original form, consisting of an iron core enclosed by coils of wire, to its present degree of refinement and economy of material, has been comparatively rapid.

In transformer construction it is obviously very important that the insulation be of the best quality to prevent burn outs and interruptions of service.

Ques. What is the "major" insulation?

Ans. The insulation placed between the core and secondary (low pressure) coils, and between the primary and secondary coils.



FIG. 1,973.—Assembled coils of General Electric water cooled 500 kva., 66,000 volt transformer.

It consists usually of mica tubes, sometimes applied as sheets held in place by the windings, when no ventilating ducts are provided, or moulded to correct form and held between sheets of tough insulating material where ducts are provided for air or oil circulation.

Ques. Describe the "minor" insulation.

Ans. It is the insulation placed between adjacent turns of the coils.

Since the difference of pressure is small between the adjacent turns the insulation need not be very thick. It usually consists of a double

Digitized by Google

thickness of cotton wrapped around each conductor. For round conductors, the ordinary double covered magnet wire is satisfactory.

Ques. What is the most efficient insulating material for transformers?

Ans. Mica.



FIG. 1,974.—Three Westinghouse 20 kva, outdoor transformers, for irrigation service. These are mounted on a drag so that they may be readily transported from place to place. 33,000 volts high tension; 2,200 and 440 volts low tension, 50 cycles. These outdoor transformers are of the oil immersed, self-cooling type and have been developed to meet the requirements for transformers of capacities greater or of voltages higher than are usually found in distribution work. They are in reality distributing transformers for high voltage, outdoor installations, single or three phase service, for voltages up to 110,000. Where the magnitude of the load does not warrant an expensive installation, transformers of the outdoor type are particularly applicable. The cost of a building and outlet bushings which is often the item of greatest expense is eliminated where outdoor type transformers are installed.

It has a high dielective strength, is fireproof, and is the most desirable insulator where there are no sharp corners.

Digitized by Google

Oil Insulated Transformers.—High voltage transformers are insulated with oil, as it is very important to maintain careful insulation not only between the coils, but also between the coils and the core. In the case of high voltage transformers, any accidental static discharge, such as that due to lighting, which might destroy one of the air insulated type, might be successfully withstood by one insulated with oil, for if the oil insulation be damaged it will mend itself at once.

By providing good circulation for the oil, the transformer can get rid of the heat produced in it readily and operate at a low temperature, which not only increases its life but cuts down the electric resistance of the copper conductors and therefore the $I^2 R$ loss.

Efficiency of Transformers.—The efficiency of transformers is *the ratio of the electric power delivered at the secondary terminals to the electric power absorbed at the primary terminals.*

Accordingly, the output must equal the input minus the losses. If the iron and copper losses at a given load be known, their values and consequently the efficiency at other loads may be readily calculated.

EXAMPLE.—If a 10 kilowatt constant pressure transformer at full load and temperature have a copper loss of .16 kilowatt, or 1.6 per cent., and the iron loss be the same, then its

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{output}}{\text{input}} = \frac{10}{10 + .16 + .16} \times 100 = 96.9 \text{ per cent.}$$

At three-quarters load the output will be 7.5 kilowatts; and as the iron loss is practically constant at all loads and the copper loss is proportional to the square of the load, the

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{output}}{\text{input}} = \frac{7.5}{7.5 + .16 + .09} \times 100 = 96.8 \text{ per cent.}$$

Digitized by Google

The matter of efficiency is important, especially in the case of large transformers, as a low efficiency not only means a large waste of power in the form of heat, but also a great increase in the difficulties encountered in keeping the apparatus cool. The efficiency curve shown in fig. 1,975, serves to indicate, however, how slight a margin actually remains for improvement in this particular in the design and construction of large transformers.

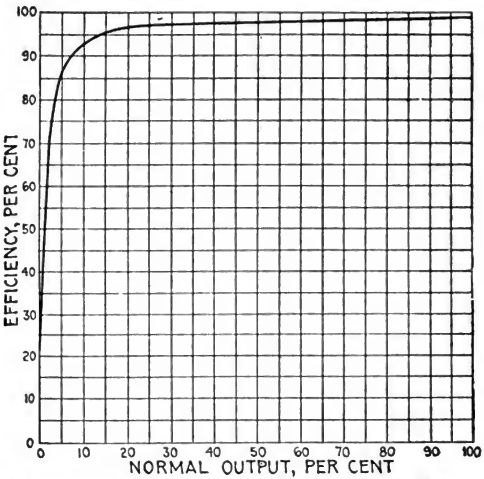


FIG. 1,975.—Efficiency curve of Westinghouse 375 kw., transformer. Pressure 500 to 15,000 volts; frequency 60. Efficiencies at different loads: full load efficiency, 98%; ¾ full load efficiency, 98%; ½ full load efficiency, 97.6%; ¼ full load efficiency 96.1%; regulation non-inductive load, 1.4%; load having .9 power factor, 3.3%.

The efficiency of transformers is, in general, higher than that of other electrical machines; even in quite small sizes it reaches over 90 per cent., and in the largest, is frequently as high as 98.5 per cent.

To measure the efficiency of a transformer directly, by measuring input and output, does not constitute a satisfactory method when the efficiency is so high. A very accurate result can be obtained, however, by measuring separately, by wattmeter, the core and copper losses.

The core loss is measured by placing a wattmeter in circuit when the transformer is on circuit at no load and normal frequency.

Digitized by Google

The copper loss is measured by placing a wattmeter in circuit with the primary when the secondary is short circuited, and when enough pressure is applied to cause full load current to flow.

If it be desired to separate the load losses from the true I^2R loss, the resistances can be measured, and the I^2R loss calculated and subtracted from the wattmeter reading. The losses being known, the efficiency at any load is readily found by taking the core loss as constant and the copper loss as varying proportionally to the square of the load. Thus,

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{output}}{\text{output} + \text{losses}} \times 100$$

All Day Efficiency of Transformers.—This denotes the ratio of the total watt hour output of a transformer to the total watt hour input taken over a working day. To compute this efficiency it is necessary to know the load curve of the transformer over a day. Suppose that this is equivalent to 5 hours at full load, and 19 hours at no load. Then, if W_1 be the core loss in watts, W_2 the copper loss at rated load, and W the rated output,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{output} &= 5 \times W, \\ \text{losses} &= 5\,(W_1 + W_2) + 19\,W_1, \\ \text{input} &= 5\,(W + W_1 + W_2) + 19\,W_1, \end{aligned}$$

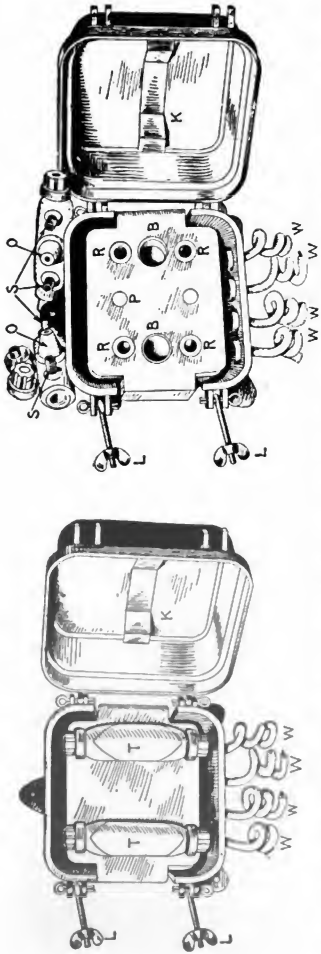
and the all day efficiency is equal to

$$\frac{5\,W \times 100}{5\,(W + W_1 + W_2) + 19\,W_1} \text{ per cent.}$$

Commercial or all day efficiency is a most important point in a good transformer. The principal factor in securing a high all day efficiency is to keep the core loss as low as possible. The core loss is constant—it continues while current is supplied to the primary, while copper loss takes place only when the secondary is delivering energy.

In general, if a transformer is to be operated at light loads the greater part of the day, it is much more economical to use one designed for a small iron loss than for a small full load copper loss.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,976 and 1,977.—Westinghouse double pole fuse box; views showing box open with tubes in place, and with tubes removed.

Transformer Fuse Blocks.—These may be of either the single pole or double pole type. Fig. 1,976 shows a double pole fuse box opened, and fig. 1,977, the fuse box opened and the tubes removed. Of the four wires, W, W, W, W, entering the box from beneath, two are from the primary mains, and two lead to the primary coil of the transformer. These wires terminate in metallic receptacles R, R, R, R, in the porcelain plate P, fig. 1,977, which are bridged over in pairs by fuse wires placed inside porcelain tubes T, T, as shown in fig. 1,976. These tubes are air tight except for a small outlet O in each, which fit into the receptacles B, B, in the porcelain plate and open out at the back of the block, as shown in fig. 1,977.

The fuse wires are connected between metallic spring tubes S, S, S, S, which fit into the receptacles R, R, R, R.

If a sudden load or a short circuit occur in the transformer, the intense heat,

Digitized by Google

accompanying the melting or blowing of the fuse, causes a rapid expansion of the air inside the tube, so that a strong blast of air rushes through the outlet O of the tube and immediately extinguishes the arc.

By this arrangement, sustained arcing is prevented, as the action of the tube causes the arc to extinguish itself automatically when the current is interrupted.

The porcelain tubes are held in position by the spring K, and the primary of the transformer becomes entirely disconnected from the circuit when the tubes are lifted out.

This form of construction enables the lineman to detach the tubes from the fuse box, and insert the fuse at his convenience. Furthermore,

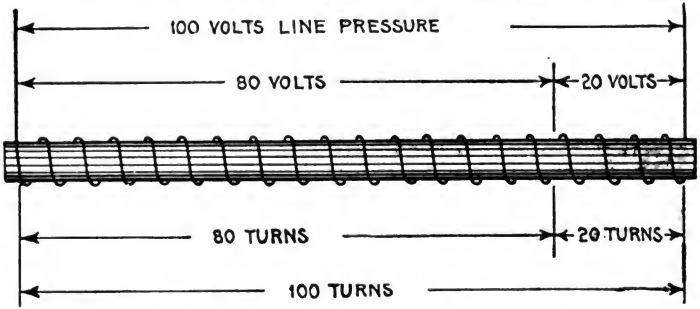


FIG. 1,978.—Diagram illustrating connections and principles of auto-transformers as explained in the accompanying text.

when inserting fuse in a short circuited line, he does not run the risk of being hurt, as the heated vapor of the exploding fuse can escape through the outlet provided for that purpose, and in a predetermined direction.

The method of attaching the lid not only permits of quick access to the interior of the box, but enables the lineman to tighten the joints by means of the thumb screws L, L, so as to keep the box waterproof.

Auto-transformers.—In this class of transformer, there is only one winding which serves for both primary and secondary. On account of its simplicity it is made cheaply.

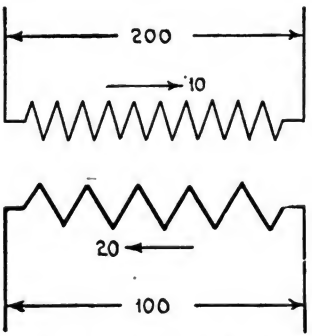
Auto-transformers are used where the ratio of transformation is small, as a considerable saving in copper and iron can be effected, and the whole transformer reduced in size as compared with one having separate windings.

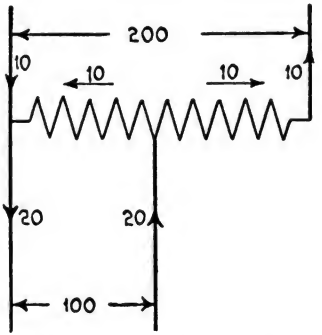
Digitized by Google

Fig. 1,978 illustrates the electrical connections and the relations between the volts and number of turns.

By using the end wire and tapping in on turn No. 20 a current at 20 volts pressure is readily obtained which may be used for starting up motors requiring a large starting current and yet not draw heavily on the line.

Since the primary is connected directly to the secondary it would be dangerous to use an auto-transformer on high pressure circuits. This type of transformer has only a limited use, usually as compensator for motor starting boxes.





FIGS. 1,979 and 1,980.—Two winding transformer and single winding or auto-transformer. Fig. 1,979 shows a 200:100 volt transformer having a 10 amp. primary and a 20 amp. secondary, the currents being in opposite directions. If these currents be superposed by using one winding only, the auto-transformer shown in fig. 1,980 is obtained where the winding carries 10 amp. only and requires only one-half the copper (assuming the same mean length of turn). If R be the ratio of an auto-transformer, the relative size of it compared with a transformer of the same ratio and output is as $\frac{R-1}{R}$: 1. For example, a 10 kw. transformer of 400 volts primary and 300 volts secondary could be replaced by an auto-transformer of $10 \times \frac{1.33-1}{1.33} = 2.5$ kw.; or, in other words, the amount of material used in a 2½ kw. transformer could be used to wind an auto-transformer of 400 : 300 ratio and 10 kw. output.

Constant Current Transformers for Series Arc Lighting.—The principle of the constant current transformer as used for series arc lighting is readily understood by reference

Digitized by Google

to the elementary diagram shown in fig. 1,981. A constant alternating current is supplied to the stationary primary coil which induces a current in the movable secondary coil. The pressure induced in the coil will depend on the number of lines of flux which pass through it and by changing its position in the magnetic field over the primary a variable e.m.f. can be produced and a constant current maintained in the lighting circuit when the lamps are turned on or off, or if the resistance of the circuit be lowered by the consumption of the carbons.

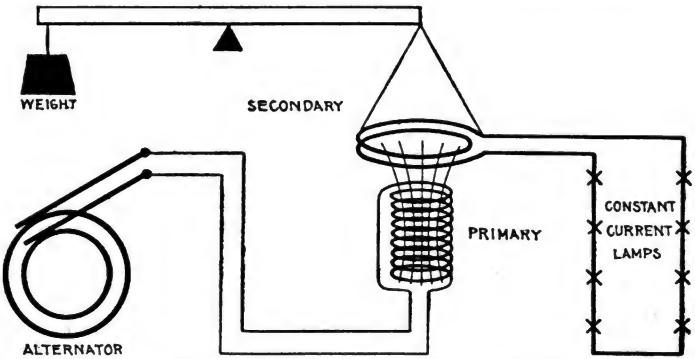


FIG. 1,981.—Elementary diagram illustrating the principles of constant current transformer as used for series arc lighting.

Since the induced currents in the secondary are repelled by the primary there is a tendency for the secondary coil to jump out of the primary field, and in case of a very large current due to a short circuit in the lamp circuit, the secondary current is quickly reduced to normal by the rapid movement of the coil upward.

By adjusting the counterweight for a given number of amperes required by the arc, the current will be maintained constant by the movement of the secondary coil.

Digitized by Google

The magnetic field produced by the primary must be kept the same by a constant current from the alternator, therefore, when the lamp load is increased the primary voltage increases similar to that of an ordinary series wound direct current dynamo. In other words the alternator and regulating transformer supply a constant current and variable voltage.

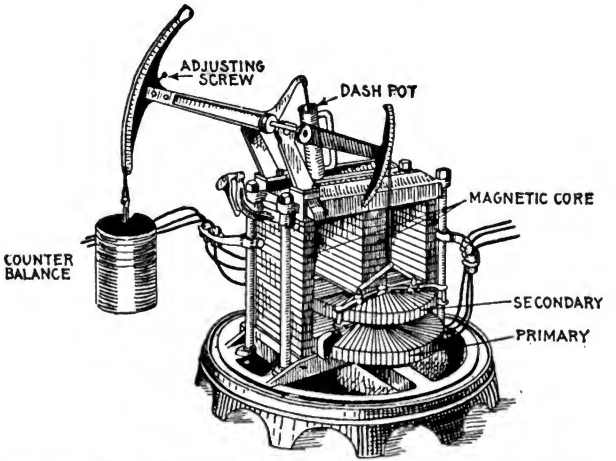


FIG. 1,982.—Mechanism of General Electric air cooled constant current transformer. It operates on the principle explained in the accompanying text and is built to supply 25 to 100 arc lamps at 6.6 to 7.5 amperes. The transformers are interchangeable and will operate on 60 or 125 cycles. The relative positions of the two coils may be changed in order to regulate the strength of the current more closely, by shifting the position of the arc carrying the counterbalance by means of the adjusting screw on it. A dash pot filled with special oil prevents sudden movements of the secondary coil and keeps the current through the lamps nearly constant, when they are being cut in or out of the circuit. In starting up a constant current transformer, it is necessary to separate the two coils as far as possible and then close the primary circuit switch and allow the two coils to come together. If the primary circuit be thrown directly on the generator the heavy rush of current which will follow due to the two coils being too close together might injure the lamps.

Constant current incandescent lighting systems for use in small towns also use this method for automatically regulating the current.

Digitized by Google

Regulation.—This term applies to the means adopted either to obtain constancy of pressure or current. In the transformer, regulation is *inherent*, that is, the apparatus automatically effects its own regulation. The regulation of a transformer means, *the change of voltage due to change of load on the secondary*; it may be defined more precisely as: *the percentage increase in the secondary voltage as the load is decreased from its normal value*

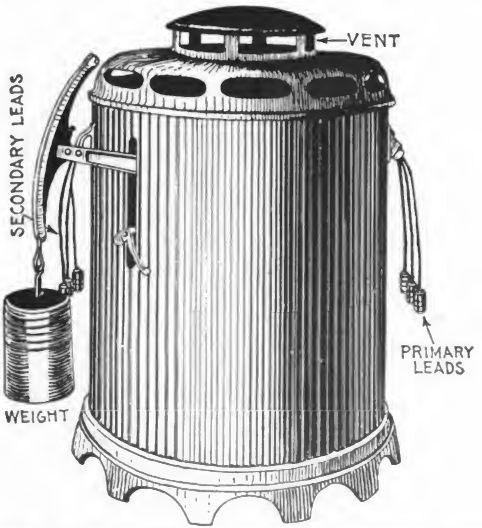
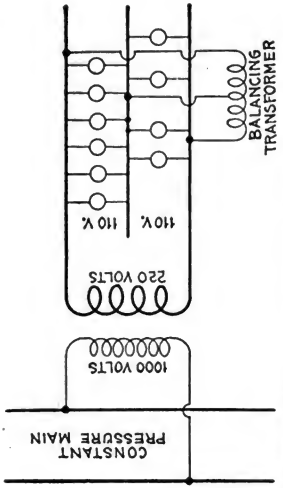


FIG. 1,983.—General Electric air cooled constant current transformer. View showing external appearance with case on.

to zero. Thus, observation should be made of the secondary voltage, at full load and at no load, the primary pressure being held constant at the normal value.

The regulation is said to be "good" or "close," when this change is small. In the design of a transformer, good regulation and low iron losses are in opposition to one another when the best results are desired in

Digitized by Google



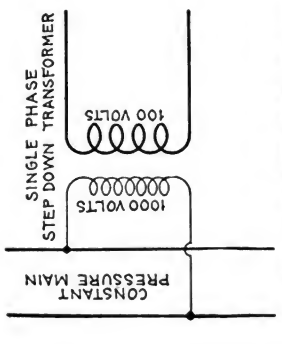


FIG. 1,984.—Single phase transformer connection with constant pressure main.
FIG. 1,985.—Usual method of single phase transformer connections for residence lighting with three wire secondaries. A balancing transformer is connected to the three wire circuit near the center of distribution as shown.

both. A well designed transformer, however, should give good results, both as to regulation and iron losses, the relative value depending upon the class of work it has to do, and size.

Transformer Connections.—The alternating current has the advantage over direct current, in the ease with which the pressure and current can be changed by different connections of transformers.

On single phase circuits the transformer connections can be varied to change current and pressure, and in addition on polyphase circuits the phases can also be changed to almost any form.

Single Phase Connections.—The method of connecting ordinary distributing transformers to constant pressure mains is shown by the elementary diagram, fig. 1,984, where a transformer of 10 to 1 ratio is indicated with its primary winding connected to a 1,000 volt main, and a secondary winding to deliver 100 volts.

Digitized by Google

Fig. 1,986 shows a transformer with each winding divided into two sections. Each primary section is wound for 1,000 volts, and each secondary section for 50 volts. By connecting the entire primary winding in series, the transformer may be supplied from a 2,000 volt main, as indicated, and if the secondary winding be also connected all in series, as shown, the no load voltage will be 100 between the secondary terminals.

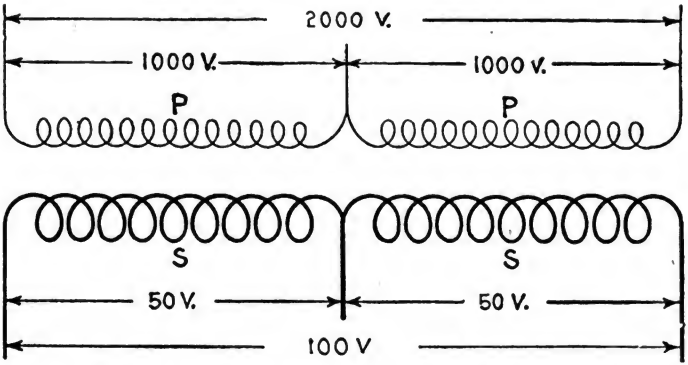


FIG. 1,986.—Diagram of single phase transformer having primary and secondary windings in two sections, showing voltages per section with series connections.

The sections of the primary winding may be connected in parallel to a 1,000 volt main, and 100 volts obtained from the secondary, or the primary and secondary windings may be connected each with its two sections in parallel, and transformations made from 1,000 to 50 volts as represented in fig. 1,987.

This is a very common method of construction for small transformers, which are provided with convenient terminal blocks for combining the sections of each winding to suit the requirements of the case. When the two sections of either winding are connected in parallel as shown in fig. 1,987, *care must be taken to connect* **corresponding ends** *of the two sections together.*

Digitized by Google

Combining Transformers.—Two or more transformers built to operate at the same pressure and frequency may be connected together in a variety of ways; in fact, the primary and secondary terminals may each be considered exactly as the terminals of direct current dynamos, with certain restrictions.

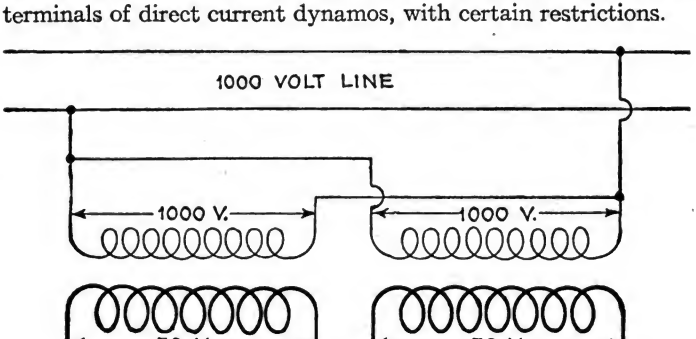


FIG. 1,987.—Diagram of single phase transformer with primary and secondary windings of two sections each, showing voltages per section with parallel connection.

Ques. What are the two principal precautions which must be observed in combining transformer terminals?

Ans. The terminals must have the same polarity at a given instant, and the transformers should have practically identical characteristics.

The latter condition is not absolutely essential, but it is emphatically preferable. For example, if a transformer, which has 2 per cent. regulation, be connected in parallel, as indicated in fig. 1,988, with one which has 3 per cent. regulation, at no load the transformers will give exactly the same voltage at the secondary terminals, but at full load one will have a secondary pressure of, say, 98 volts, while the other has 97 volts. The result is that the transformer giving only 97 volts will be subject

Digitized by Google

to a reverse pressure of one volt from its mate. This will not cause excessive current to flow backward through the secondary winding of the low voltage transformer, but it will disturb the phase relations and lower the power factor and efficiency of the combination. In such a case it is much better to work the secondary circuits of the two transformers separately.

In case the transformers have practically the same characteristics it is necessary, as stated above, to make sure that the secondary terminals connected together have the same polarity at a given instant; it is not necessary to find out definitely what the polarity is, merely that it is the same for both terminals. This can be easily done as shown in fig. 1,989.

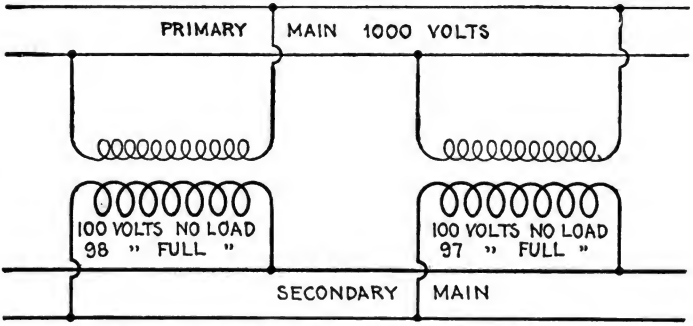


FIG. 1,988.—Diagram showing unlike single phase transformers in parallel.

Ques. What may be said with respect to operating transformer secondaries in parallel?

Ans. It is seldom advantageous. Occasionally it may be necessary as a temporary expedient, but where the load is such as to require a greater capacity than that of a transformer already installed, it is much better to replace it by a large transformer than to supplement it by an additional transformer of its own size.

Ques. How are the secondaries arranged in modern transformers and why?

Ans. The secondary windings are divided into at least two sections so that they may be connected either in series or parallel.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Explain how secondary connections are made for different voltages.

Ans. If, for instance, the secondary pressure of a transformer having two sections be 100 volts with the terminals in parallel, as in fig. 1,990, then connecting them in series will give 200 volts at the free secondary terminals, as indicated in fig. 1,991.

Ques. What precaution should be taken in connecting secondary sections in parallel in core type if the two sections be wound on different limbs of the core?

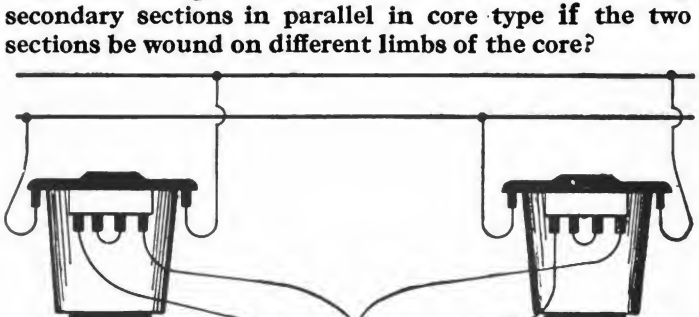
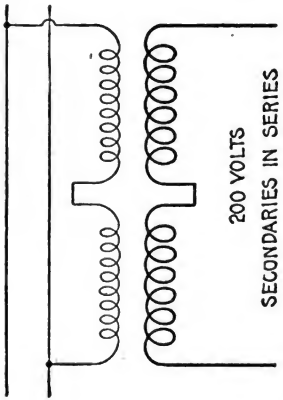


FIG. 1,989.—Method of comparing instantaneous polarity. Two of the terminals are connected as shown by a small strip of fuse wire, and then touching the other two terminals together. If the fuse blow, then the connections must be reversed; if it do not, then they may be made permanent.

Ans. It will be advisable to make the connections ample and permanent, so that there will not be any liability to a difference between the current flowing in one secondary winding and that flowing through the other.

Two Phase Connections.—In the case of two phase distribution each circuit may be treated as entirely independent of the other so far as the transformers are concerned. Two

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 1,990 and 1,991.—Methods of altering the secondary connections of a transformer having two sections in the secondary to obtain a different voltage. Fig. 1,990 shows the two sections in parallel giving say 100 volts; fig. 1,991 shows the two sections in series giving 200 volts.

transformers are used, one being connected to one primary phase and supplying one secondary phase, the other being connected to the other primary phase and supplying the other secondary phase as indicated in fig. 1,996, exactly as though each primary and secondary phase were an ordinary single phase system, independent of the other phase.

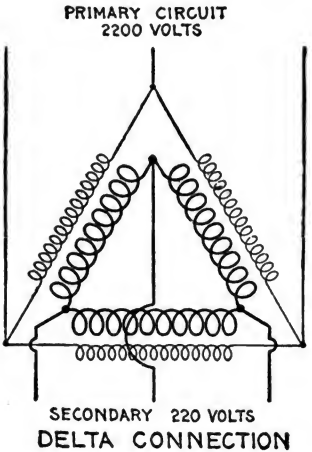
Ques. Is the above method usually employed?

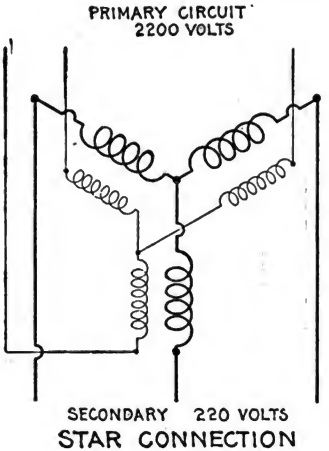
Ans. No, the method shown in fig. 1,997 is generally used.

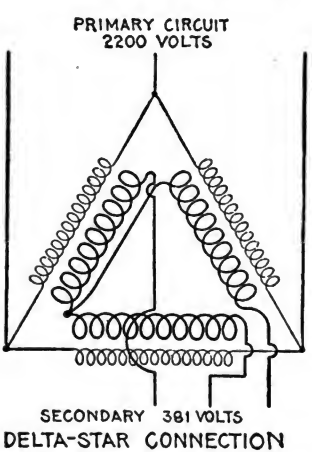
Three Phase Connections.—There is not so much freedom in making three phase transformer connections, as with single or two phase, because the three phases are inseparably interlinked. However, the system gives rise to several methods of transformer connection, which are known as:

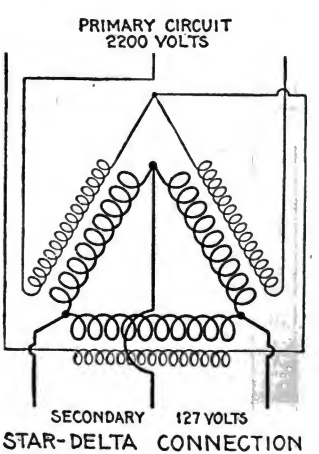
1. Star;
2. Delta;
3. Star-delta;
4. Delta-star.

Digitized by Google









FIGS. 1,992 to 1,995.—Three phase transformer connections. Fig. 1,992 **delta** connection; fig. 1,993 **star** connection; fig. 1,994 **delta-star** connection; fig. 1,995 **star-delta** connection.

Digitized by Google

Delta Connection.—In the delta connection both primaries and secondaries are connected in delta grouping, as in fig. 1,992.

Star Connection.—This method consists in connecting both the primaries and secondaries in star grouping, as in fig. 1,993.

Delta-star Connection.—In this method the primaries are connected in delta grouping and the secondaries in star grouping, as in fig. 1,994.

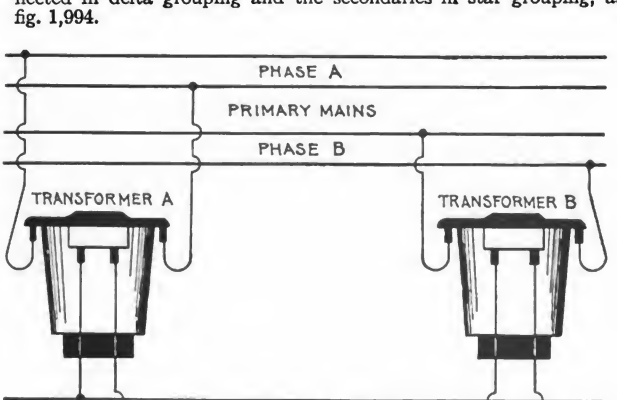


FIG. 1,996.—Two phase transformer connections. Two single phase transformers are used and connections made just as though each phase were an ordinary single phase system.

Star-delta Connection.—This consists in connecting the primaries in star grouping, and the secondaries in delta grouping, as in fig. 1,995.

Ques. What advantage has the star connection over the delta connection?

Ans. Each star transformer is wound for only 58% of the line voltage. In high voltage transmission, this admits of much smaller transformers being built for high pressure than possible with the delta connection.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What advantages are obtained with the delta connection?

Ans. When three transformers are delta connected, one may be removed without interrupting the performance of the circuit, the two remaining transformers in a manner acting in series to carry the load of the missing transformer.

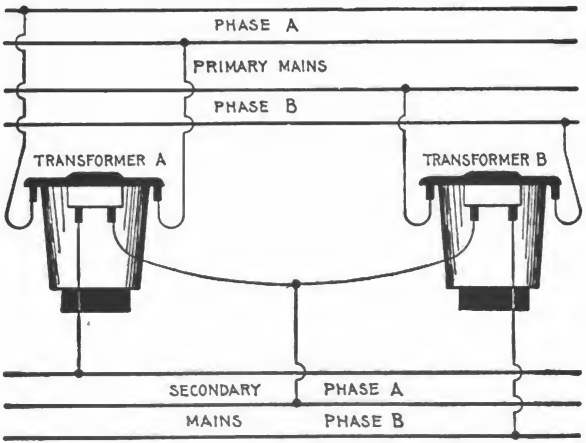


FIG. 1,997.—Two phase transformer connections, with secondaries arranged for three wire distribution, the primaries being independently connected to the two phases. In the three wire circuit, the middle or neutral wire is made about one-half larger than each of the two outer wires. In fig. 1,996 it makes no difference which secondary terminal of a transformer is connected to a given secondary wire, so long as no transformers are used in parallel. For example, referring to the diagram, the left hand secondary terminal of transformer, A, could just as well be connected to the lower wire of the secondary phase, A, and its right hand terminal connected to the upper wire, the only requirement being that the two pairs of mains shall not be "mixed"; that is, transformer, A, must not be connected with one secondary terminal to phase, A, and the other to phase, B. In the case shown by fig. 1,997, there is not quite so much freedom in making connections. One secondary terminal of each transformer must be connected to one of the outer wires and the other two terminals must be both connected to the larger middle wire of the secondary system. It makes no difference, however, which two secondary terminals are joined and connected to the middle wire so long as the other terminal of each transformer is connected to an outer wire of the secondary system.

The desire to guard against a shut down due to the disabling of one transformer has led to the extensive use of the delta connection, especially for the secondaries or low pressure side.

Digitized by Google

It should be noted that if one transformer be disabled, the efficiency of the other two will be greatly reduced. To operate a damaged three phase transformer, the damaged windings must be separated electrically from the other coils, the damaged primary and secondary being respectively short circuited upon themselves.

Ques. What kinds of transformers are used for three phase current?

Ans. Either a three phase transformer, or a separate single phase transformer for each phase.

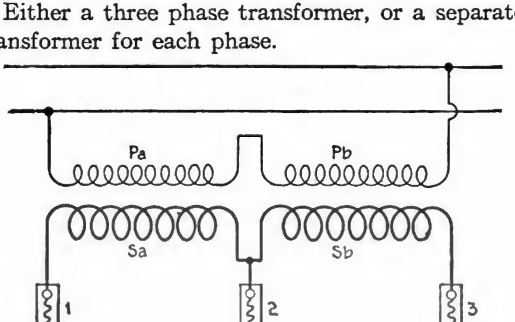
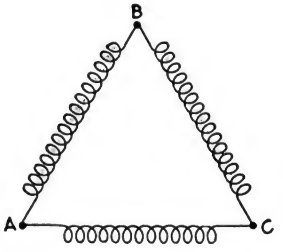
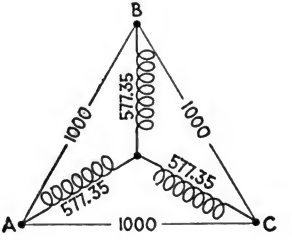
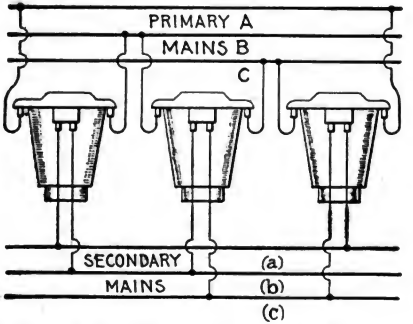


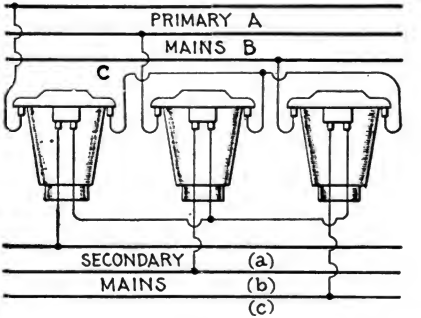
FIG. 1,998.—Three wire connections for transformer having two secondary sections on different legs of the core. If the secondary terminals be connected up to a three wire distribution, as here shown diagrammatically, it is advisable to make the fuse, 2, in the middle wire, considerably smaller than necessary to pass the normal load in either side of the circuit, because, should the fuse, 1, be blown, the secondary circuit through the section, Sa, will be open, and the corresponding half of the primary winding, Pa, will have a much higher impedance than the half of the primary winding, Pb, the inductance of which is so nearly neutralized by the load on the secondary winding, Sb. The result will be that the voltage of the primary section, Pa, will be very much greater than that of the section, Pb, and as the sections are in series the current must be the same through both halves of the winding; the drop or difference of pressure, therefore, between the terminals of Pa will be much higher than that between the terminals of Pb, consequently, the secondary voltage of Sb will be greatly lowered and the service impaired. As the primary winding, Pa, is designed to take only one-half of the total voltage, the unbalancing referred to will subject it to a considerably higher pressure than the normal value; consequently, the magnetic density in that leg of the transformer core will be much higher than normal, and the transformer will heat disastrously. If the fuse, 2, in the middle wire be made, say, one-half the capacity of each of the other fuses, this condition will be relieved by the blowing of this fuse, and as the lamps in the live circuit would not be anywhere near candle power if the circuit remained intact, the blowing of the middle fuse will not be any disadvantage to the user of the lamps. Some makers avoid the contingency just described by dividing each secondary coil into two sections and connecting a section on one leg in series with a section on the other leg of the core, so that current applied to either pair of the secondary terminals will circulate about both legs of the core.

Digitized by Google









FIGS. 1,999 to 2,002.—Three phase delta, and star connections using three transformers. There are two ways of connecting up the primaries and secondaries, one known as the "delta" connection, and illustrated diagrammatically by fig. 1,999, and the other known as the "star" connection, and illustrated by fig. 2,001. In both diagrams the line wires are lettered, A, B and C. Fig. 2,000 shows the primaries and secondaries connected up delta fashion, corresponding to fig. 1,999, and fig. 2,002 shows them connected up star fashion, corresponding to fig. 2,001. In both of the latter sketches the secondary

Digitized by Google

wires are lettered to correspond with the respective primary wires. When the primaries are connected up delta fashion, the voltage between the terminals of each primary winding is the same as the voltage between the corresponding two wires of the primary circuit, and the same is true of the secondary transformer terminals and circuit wires. The current, however, flowing through the transformer winding is less than the current in the line wire, for the reason that the current from any one line wire divides between the windings of two transformers. For example, in figs. 1,999 and 2,000, part of the current from the line wire, A, will flow from A to B through the left hand transformer, and part from A to C through the right hand transformer; if the current in the line wire, A, be 100 amperes, the current in each transformer winding will be 57.735 amperes. When transformers are connected up star fashion, as in figs. 2,001 and 2,002, the current in each transformer winding is the same as that in the line wire to which it is connected, but the voltage between the terminals of each transformer winding is 57.735 per cent. of the voltage from wire to wire on the circuit. For example, if the primary voltage from A to B is 1,000 volts, the voltage at the terminals of the left hand transformer (from A to J) will be only 577.35 volts, and the same is true of each of the other transformers if the system is balanced. These statements apply, of course, to both primary and secondary windings, from which it will become evident that if the three transformers of a three phase circuit be connected up star fashion at the primaries, and delta fashion at the secondaries, the secondary voltage will be lower than if both sides are connected up star fashion. For example, if the transformers be wound for a ratio of 10 to 1, and are connected up with both primaries and secondaries alike, no matter whether it be delta fashion or star fashion, the secondary voltage will be one-tenth of the primary voltage; but if the primaries be connected up star fashion on a 1,000 volt circuit, and the secondaries be connected up delta fashion, the secondary voltage will be only 57.735 volts, instead of 100 volts. The explanation of the difference between the voltage per coil in a delta system and that in a star system is that in the former each winding is connected directly across from wire to wire, whereas in the star system, two windings are in series between each pair of line wires. The voltage of each winding is not reduced to one-half, however, because the pressures are out of phase with each other, being 120° apart; consequently, instead of having 500 volts at the terminals of each coil in fig. 2,001 the voltage is 577.35. The same explanation applies to the current values in a delta system. The current phase between A and B, in fig. 1,999, is 120 removed from A to C through the left hand transformer, and part from A to C through the right hand transformer, as in figs. 2,001 and 2,002, the current in each transformer winding will be 57.735 amperes. The voltage between the terminals of each transformer winding will be 57.735 per cent. of the voltage from wire to wire on the circuit. For example, if the primary voltage from A to B is 1,000 volts, the voltage at the terminals of the left hand transformer (from A to J) will be only 577.35 volts, and the same is true of each of the other transformers if the system is balanced. These statements apply, of course, to both primary and secondary windings, from which it will become evident that if the three transformers of a three phase circuit be connected up star fashion at the primaries, and delta fashion at the secondaries, the secondary voltage will be lower than if both sides are connected up star fashion. For example, if the transformers be wound for a ratio of 10 to 1, and are connected up with both primaries and secondaries alike, no matter whether it be delta fashion or star fashion, the secondary voltage will be one-tenth of the primary voltage; but if the primaries be connected up star fashion on a 1,000 volt circuit, and the secondaries be connected up delta fashion, the secondary voltage will be only 57.735 volts, instead of 100 volts. The explanation of the difference between the voltage per coil in a delta system and that in a star system is that in the former each winding is connected directly across from wire to wire, whereas in the star system, two windings are in series between each pair of line wires. The voltage of each winding is not reduced to one-half, however, because the pressures are out of phase with each other, being 120° apart; consequently, instead of having 500 volts at the terminals of each coil in fig. 2,001 the voltage is 577.35. The same explanation applies to the current values in a delta system. The current phase between A and B, in fig. 1,999, is 120 removed from each wire; or, to state it the opposite way, the current in each winding is 57.735% of the current in the wire, A. It will be well for the reader to remember that in all cases of forces; currents differing in phase, and connected in parallel, combine according to the same law.

Ques. What points are to be considered in choosing between three phase and single phase transformers for three phase current transformation?

Ans. No specific rule can be given regarding the selection of single phase or three phase transformers since both designs are equally reliable; local conditions will generally determine which type is preferable.

The following general remarks may, however, be helpful:

Single phase transformers are preferable where only one transformer group is installed and where the expense of a spare transformer would not be warranted. In such installations the burn out of one phase of a three phase unit would cause considerable inconvenience for the reason that the whole transformer would have to be disconnected from the circuit before repairs could be made.

If single phase transformers be used and connected in delta on both primary and secondary,

Digitized by Google

the damaged transformer can be cut out with a minimum amount of trouble and the other two transformers can be operated at normal temperature open delta at 58 per cent. of the normal capacity of the group of three transformers, until the third unit can be replaced.

With a three phase shell type transformer, if both the primary and secondary be delta connected, trouble in one phase will not prevent the use of the other two phases in open delta. By short circuiting both primary and secondary of the defective phase, and cutting it out of

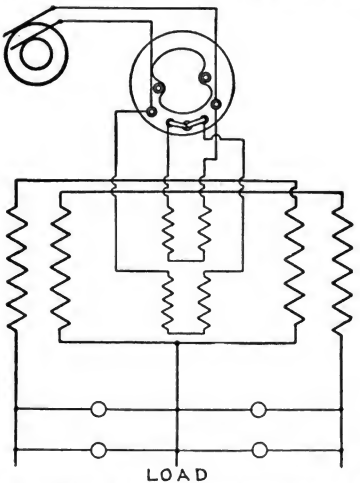


FIG. 2,003.—Diagram showing three wire secondary connections General Electric (type H) transformer. As will be seen, the method adopted consists of distributing equally, on each side of the primary coil, both halves of the secondary winding, so that each secondary throughout its length is closely adjacent to the entire primary winding. In order to insure the exact equality of resistance and reactance in the two secondary windings necessary to obtain perfect regulation of the two halves, the inside portion of the secondary winding on one side of the primary coil is connected in series with the outside portion of that on the other side. As a result, the drop of voltage in either side of the secondary under any ordinary conditions of unbalanced load, does not exceed the listed regulation drop. This particular arrangement is used because it is the simplest and best method for this construction.

circuit the magnetic flux in that section is entirely neutralized. This cannot be done, however, with any but delta connected shell type transformers.

Where a large number of three phase transformers can be used, it is generally advisable to install three phase units, the following advantages being in their favor as compared with single phase units:

Digitized by Google

1. Require less floor space than three single phase units;
2. Weigh less than the single phase units;
3. Simpler connections, as only three primary and three secondary leads are generally brought out;
4. Transformer presents a symmetrical and compact appearance.

Ques. What is the character of the construction of three phase transformers?

Ans. The three phase transformer is practically similar to that of the single phase, except that somewhat heavier and larger parts are required for the core structure.

COMPARISON OF AIR BLAST, WATER COOLED, AND OIL COOLED TRANSFORMERS

Air blast type	Water cooled type	Oil cooled type
	1. COST	
A. First cost Necessarily more expensive than the water cooled type of similar rating.	Least expensive of all types.	Necessarily more expensive than the air blast and water cooled type of similar rating.
B. The installation is extremely simple. Moisture that may have collected on the surfaces during transportation or storage should be thoroughly dried out.	Being heavier than the air blast type, these transformers, as a rule, require heavier apparatus for installing. Both transformer and tank should be thoroughly dried out before being filled with oil. The oil is usually supplied in 50 gal. hermetically sealed steel barrels to minimize possibility of absorbing moisture during transportation.	Being heavier than the air blast and water cooled type, these transformers require heavier apparatus for installing. Both transformer and tank should be thoroughly dried out before being filled with oil.

Digitized by Google

FIGS. 2,004 to 2,011.—Connections of standard transformers. All stock transformers are wound for some standard transformation ratio, such as 10 to 1, but various leads are brought out by means of which ratios of 5, 10 and 20 to 1 may be obtained for one transformer. The figures show the voltage combinations possible with a standard transformer.

Digitized by Google

C. Auxiliary apparatus A duct, or chamber, of considerable size is required under the transformers in order to conduct the cooling air to them. A blower outfit for supplying air is required.	In most cases, cooling water may be obtained with sufficient natural head. However, there are frequent cases in which it can be obtained only by the use of pumps. A system of piping for the cooling water and oil drainage is required, the cost of which depends, of course, on the station layout.	Do not require cooling water or blower.
D. Maintenance An occasional cleaning, for which a supply of compressed air at about 20 lb. pressure is recommended. The blower outfit requires no more care than any other similar apparatus.	A water pumping outfit would possibly require a trifle more attention than a blower outfit in which there are no valves or piping.	No air or water circulation to demand attention.

2. FLOOR SPACE

Always requires space for cooling apparatus.	Extra space only required when auxiliary pumping apparatus is necessary.	Only require space for the transformer as no extra apparatus is necessary.

3. LOCATION

As the transformers are open at the top they should not be located where there is much dust or dirt nor where water from any source is liable to fall on them. The blower should be so situated as to obtain clean dry air of a temperature not greater than 77° Fahr.	Transformers are completely enclosed but location should be such that no water will fall on leads or bushings. Location of auxiliary apparatus will depend on the station layout.	Transformers are completely enclosed but location should be such that no water will fall on leads or bushings. The building should be well ventilated. There is no auxiliary apparatus.

Digitized by Google

4. GENERAL APPEARANCE

Terminal leads may be located in the base and the air chamber may be used for conducting and distributing the connecting wiring. The absence of overhead wiring aids in simplifying the appearance of the station.	Leads are brought out of the top of the transformers. Water cooling pipes are connected at the top in most cases.	Leads are brought out of the top of the transformers.

5. OPERATION

Equal reliability in all three types.

While full load efficiencies are practically equal in the three designs, it is necessary to change the proportion of iron and copper losses somewhat as the copper loss of the air blast transformer is a smaller part of its total loss than of the water cooled and oil cooled types. As a result, the regulation of the air blast transformer is a trifle better.

6. GENERAL

The above information regarding selection of type is not applicable to air blast transformers for circuits materially in excess of 33,000 volts.

On account of the great thickness of the solid insulation needed and the consequent difficulty in radiating heat from the copper, it is impracticable to design the air blast type for more than this voltage. The oil immersed designs are therefore recommended for transformers above 33,000 volts.

Both oil cooled and water cooled types are available for all voltages, being restricted in this respect only by the limitations of transmission facilities.

Ques. How are transformers connected for four wire three phase distribution?

Ans. When the secondaries of three transformers are star

NOTE.—No special foundations are necessary for any type of transformer other than a good, even floor, having sufficient strength to support the weight.

Digitized by Google

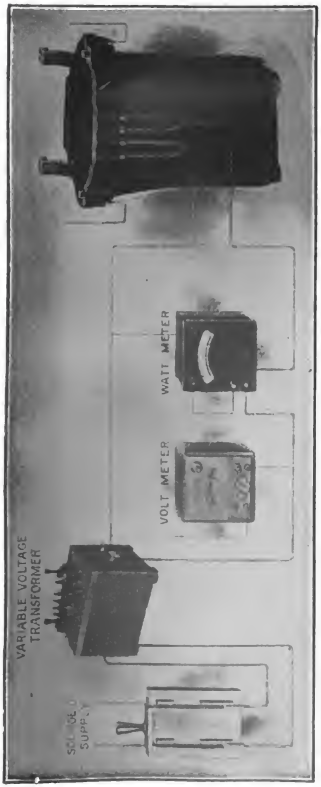


FIG. 2,012.—Method of determining core loss. Connect voltmeter and wattmeter as shown in the illustration to the low tension side of the transformer. By means of a variable voltage transformer bring the applied voltage to the point for which the transformer is designed. The wattmeter indicates directly the core loss, which includes a very small loss due to the current in the copper. **Cautions.**—1. Make sure of the voltage and frequency. The manufacturers' tabulated statements refer to a definite voltage and frequency and these have a decided influence upon the core loss. 2. The high tension circuit must remain open during the test.

connected, a fourth wire may be run from the neutral point, thus obtaining the four wire system.

The voltage between any main wire and the neutral will be 57 per cent. of the voltage between any two main wires. For general distribution this system is desirable, requiring less copper and greater flexibility than other systems.

Three phase 200 volt motors may be supplied from the main wires and 115 volt lamps connected between each of the three main wires and the neutral; if the lamp load be very nearly balanced the current flowing in the neutral wire will be very small, as in the case of the ordinary three wire direct current system.

How to Test Transformers.—The troubles incident to gas or water service have their parallels in electric power distribution.

Companies engaged

Digitized by Google

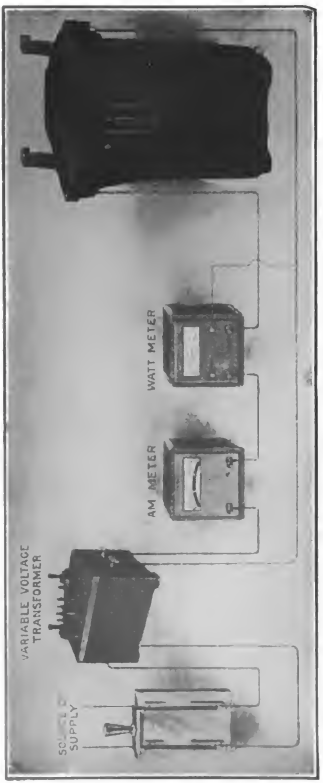


FIG. 2,013.—Method of determining copper loss. Connect ammeter and wattmeter to high tension side of transformer short circuit secondary leads, as shown in illustration, and by means of a variable voltage, adjust current to the full load value for which the transformer is intended. The wattmeter reading shows the copper loss at full load. The full load primary current of any transformer is found from the following equation

$$\textit{full load current} = \frac{\textit{full load watts}}{\textit{primary volts}}$$

EXAMPLE: To find proper full load current on a five kw. 2,200 volt transformer, divide 5,000 watts by 2,200 volts, the full load current will then be 2.27 amperes. A slight variation in primary current greatly increases or decreases the copper loss.

Remarks.—Copper loss increases with temperature because the resistance of the metal rises. Do not overload the current coil of the wattmeter. For greater accuracy the I^2R drop of potential method should be used.

in the former, credit a large percentage of their losses to leaky valves and defective mains. The remedy may involve heavy expense and the loss is often tolerated as the lesser of two evils.

In electric power distribution the transformer takes in part the place of the valve and pipe system. An inferior or defective transformer usually treats both the central station and its customers badly, being in this respect more impartial than the gas or water pipe which may annoy but one of the interested parties at a time.

Like a neglected or defective gas fixture a transformer can menace life, failing, however, to give

Digitized by Google

FIG. 2,014.—Diagram of connections for regulation test. Connect transformer under test to high tension supply circuit. A second transformer with same or other known change ratio is also to be connected up, as illustrated. By means of a double pole double throw switch, the voltmeter can be made to read the pressure on the secondary of either transformer. Supposing the same change ratio it is evident that if both remain unloaded the voltmeter will indicate the same pressure at the terminals. Suppose increasing lamp load up to the limit of the transformer capacity, will be attended by a drop in pressure at the terminals. This drop can be read as the difference of the voltmeter indications, and when expressed in per cent. of secondary voltage stands for "regulation." **Remarks:** The auxiliary transformer is necessary in order to make sure of the high tension line voltage. A large transformer under test may cause primary drop in taking power. This must be set down against it in testing regulation. The second transformer gives notice of such drop, whatever be the cause. Figs. 2,012 to 2,014 used by courtesy of the Moloney Electric Co.

the warning the former gives, and with a more hidden threat on account of its location.

Apart from this, corresponding to an exasperated customer who complains at home and to his friends of dim lamps, blackened lamps, you will find in the power station the manager, who, also worried and in no better humor, contemplates the difference in meter readings at the end of the line.

His business does not increase and would not increase even if he could lower the rates, which he cannot do because of these meter readings.

He may be confident of his engines and generators, and that his line is up and all right, but he very seldom knows what the transformers are doing on top of

Digitized by Google



FIG. 2,015.—Wagner central station core type transformer repair unit consisting of one half set of primary and secondary windings together with the section of the iron core upon which the coils are wound.

the poles. Perhaps he feels that this waste is so slight that it makes no material difference. This can be readily ascertained by means of a set of testing instruments.

Perhaps the transformers were purchased because of their attractive prices and never tested.

Water, plumbing, gas and steam fittings are subjected to test. Why not transformers? Even more so because transformers take constant toll from the company installing them, while gas and water fittings, once passed, are off the contractor's hands.

The busy manager has little time for complicated treatises and monographs on electrical measurements and even handbooks confront him with forbidding formulæ. Accordingly the methods of transformer testing, which are very simple, are illustrated in the accompanying cuts. Managers of electric power and lighting companies should study them carefully.

Digitized by Google

An ammeter, voltmeter and wattmeter are required to make the tests. Losses are small in **good** transformers and hence the instruments **should be accurate.** For the same reason instruments should be chosen of the proper capacity to give their best readings. If there be any doubt about the testing instruments being correct, they should be calibrated before being

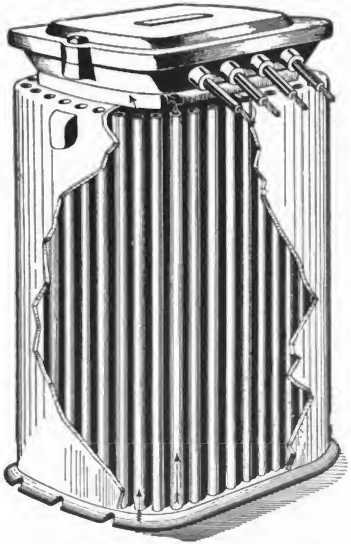


FIG. 2,016.—Moloney tubular air draft oil filled transformer. The case is made of cast iron, with large steel tubes passing from the bottom through the top. In operation the air in the tubes becomes hot and expands; a draft is thus produced which carries away considerable heat.

used. The testing circuits should be properly fused for the protection of the instruments. It is hardly logical, but a very common practice is to mistrust meters and to watch them closely, while the transformers are guilty of theft unchallenged, and keep busily at it on a large scale.

Digitized by Google

Transformer Operation with Grounded Secondary.—The operation of a transformer with a grounded secondary has been approved by the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, and by the National Board of Fire Underwriters.

This method of operation effectually prevents a high voltage occurring upon the low tension wires in case of a breakdown or other electrical connections occurring between the primary and secondary windings.



FIG. 2,017.—Moloney pressure transformer adapted for switchboard work in connection with voltmeters, wattmeters, etc., in sizes from 25 to 500 watts.

In case of a breakdown without the secondary grounded, any one touching a part of the low tension system, such as a lamp socket, might receive the full high pressure voltage. With the low tension grounded, the fuse in the high tension circuit will blow and the fault be discovered upon replacing it.

Digitized by Google

Transformer Capacity for Motors.—The voltage regulation of a well designed transformer is within 3 per cent. of its rated voltage on a non-inductive load such as incandescent lamps, but when motors are connected to the circuit their self-induction causes a loss of 5 per cent. or more, and if the load be fluctuating, it is better to use independent transformers for the motor, which will prevent considerable fluctuations in the incandescent lamps. Arc lamps do not show slight voltage changes as much as incandescent lamps. The proper rating of transformers for two phase and three phase induction motors is given in table on the next page.

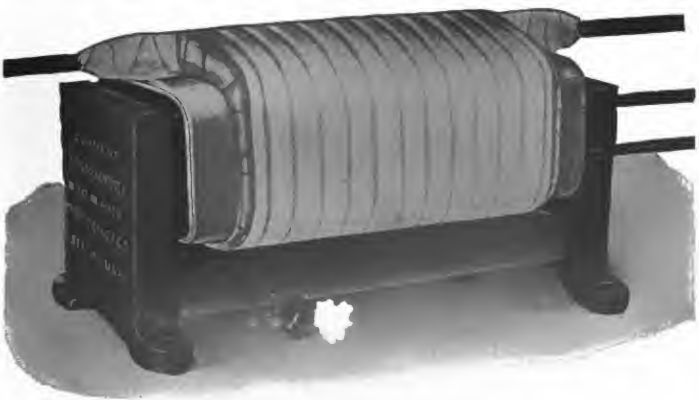


FIG. 2,018.—Moloney current transformer switchboard or indoor type. It is used ordinarily for insulating an ammeter, a current relay, the current coil of a watt meter or watt hour meter from a high tension circuit, for reducing the line current to a value suitable for these instruments.

A three phase induction motor may be operated from three single phase transformers or one three phase transformer. While the one three phase transformer greatly reduces the space and simplifies the wiring, the use of three single phase transformers

Digitized by Google

is more flexible and, in case one transformer burns out, the connection can be readily changed so that two transformers will operate the motor at reduced load until the burned out transformer is replaced or repaired.

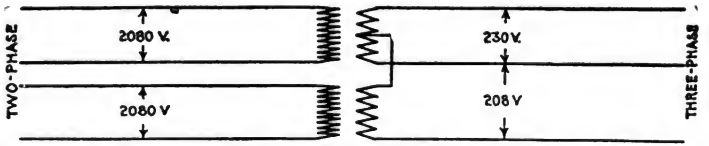


FIG. 2,019.—Diagram showing a method of operating a three phase motor on a two phase circuit, using a transformer having a tap made in the middle of the secondary winding, so as to get the necessary additional phase. While this does not give a true balanced three phase secondary, it is close enough for motor work. In the above arrangement, the main transformer supplies 54 per cent. of the current and the other with the split winding 46 per cent.

It is well to allow one kilowatt per horse power of the motor in selecting the size for the transformers, excepting in the small sizes when a little larger kilowatt rating is found to be the most desirable.

Transformers for Two and Three Phase Motors

Delivered voltage of circuit	Single phase transformer voltages			
	110 volt motor		220 volt motor	
	Primary	Secondary	Primary	Secondary
1,100	1,100	122	1,100	244
2,200	2,200	122	2,200	244

Very small transformers should not be used, even when the motor is large compared to the work it has to do, as the heavy starting current may burn them out.

The following tables give the proper sizes of transformer for three types of induction motor and the approximate current taken by three phase induction motors at 220 volts.

Digitized by Google

Capacities of Transformers for Induction Motors

Size of motor horse power	Kilowatts per transformer		
	Two single phase transformers	Three single phase transformers	One three phase transformer
1	0.6	0.6	
2	1.5	1.0	2.0
3	2.0	1.5	3.0
5	3.0	2.0	5.0
7	4.0	3.0	7.5
10	5.0	4.0	10.0
15	7.5	5.0	15.0
20	10.0	7.5	20.0
30	15.0	10.0	30.0
50	25.0	15.0	50.0
75	40.0	25.0	75.0
100	50.0	30.0	100.0

Current taken by Three Phase Induction Motors at 220 Volts

Horse power of motor	Approximate full load current	Horse power of motor	Approximate full load current
1	3.2	20	50.
2	6.0	30	75.
3	9.0	50	125.
5	14.0	75	185.
10	27.0	100	250.
15	40.0	150	370.

Transformer Connections for Motors.—Fig. 2,020 shows the connection of a three phase so called delta connected transformer with the three primaries connected to the lines leading from the alternator and the three secondaries leading to the motor.

The connections for a three phase motor using two transformers is shown in fig. 2,021 and is identical with the previous

Digitized by Google

arrangement, except that one transformer is left out and the other two made correspondingly larger.

The copper required in any three wire three phase circuit for a given power and loss is 75 per cent. that necessary with the two wire single phase or four wire two phase system having the same voltage between lines.

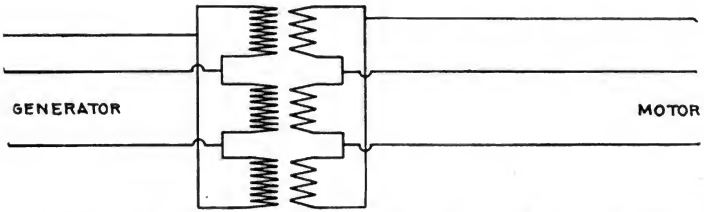


FIG. 2,020.—Three phase motor transtormer connections; the so-called Delta connected transformers.

The connections of three transformers for a low tension system of distribution by the four wire three phase system are shown in fig. 2,022. The three transformers have their primaries joined in delta connection and the secondaries in "Y" con-

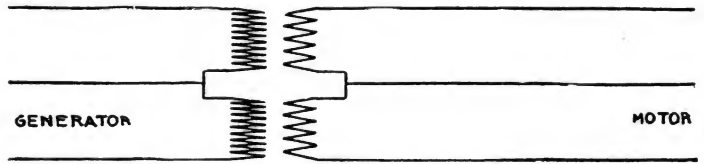


FIG. 2,021.—Three phase motor connections using two transformers.

nection. The three upper lines of the secondary are the three main three phase lines, and the lowest line is the common neutral.

The voltage across the main conductors is 200 volts, while that between either of them and the neutral is 115 volts; 200 volt motors should be joined to the mains while 115 volt lamps are connected between the mains and neutral. The arrangement is similar to the

Digitized by Google

Edison three wire system and the neutral carries current only when the lamp load is unbalanced.

The voltage between the mains should be used in calculating the size of wires, and the size of the neutral wire should be made in proportion to each of the main conductors that the lighting load is to the total load.

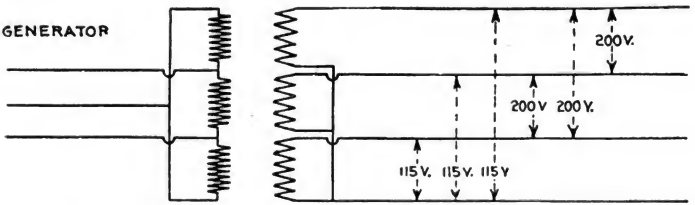


FIG. 2,022.—Delta-star connection of three transformers for low pressure, three phase, four wire system.

When lights only are used the neutral should be the same as the main conductors. The copper required in such a system for a given power and loss is about 33.3 per cent. as compared with a two wire single phase system or a four wire two phase system using the same voltage.

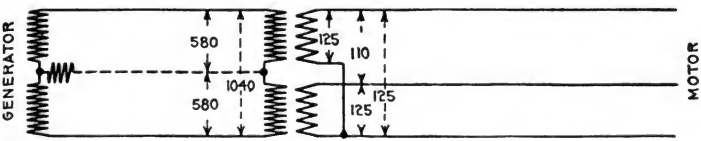


FIG. 2,023.—Diagram of transformer connections for motors on the monocyclic system.

Monocyclic Motor System.—Motors on the monocyclic system are operated from two transformers connected as shown in fig. 2,023. In the monocyclic system the single phase current is used to supply the lighting load and two wires only are necessary, but if a self-starting induction motor be required, a third or *teaser wire* is brought to the motor and two transformers used.

Digitized by Google

The teaser wire supplies the quarter phase current required to start the motor, which afterwards runs as a single phase synchronous motor and little or no current flows through the teaser circuit as long as the motor keeps in synchronism; in case it fall behind, the teaser current tends to bring it up to speed instead of the motor stopping, as would be the case of a single phase motor.

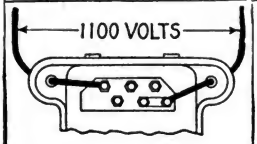
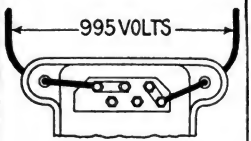
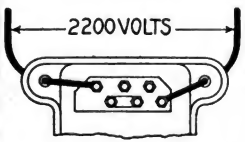
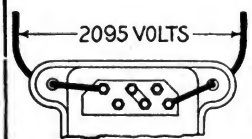
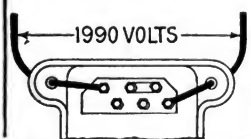


FIG. 2,024.—Moloney flaming auto type arc lamp transformer for 110 volts primary to 55 volts secondary. A hook in bottom of case provides means for suspension of lamp. The transformer may be operated on circuits from 100 to 120 volts primary, 50 to 60 volts secondary. The secondary capacity is 8 to 12 amperes.

The voltage of the transformers should be tested by means of a voltmeter or two incandescent lamps joined in series, before starting up the motor, to see if the proper transformer connections have been made and prevent an excessive flow of current.

If one of the transformers be reversed the voltage will be almost doubled; in fact, it is a good plan to check up all the transformer connections with the voltmeter or lamps which will often save a burn out.

Digitized by Google

Arrangement of links on the connecting board	Primary coils will be connected in	For circuit voltage normal at	Ratio of transformation at no load	
			with secondary coils in multiple	with secondary coils in series.
	Multiple	1,100	10 : 1	5 : 1
	Multiple	1,100	9.05 : 1	4.52 : 1
	Series	2,200	20 : 1	10 : 1
	Series	2,200	19.05 : 1	9.5 : 1
	Series	2,200	18.1 : 1	9.05 : 1

FIGS. 2,025 to 2,029.—Diagrams of Wagner transformer connection board, and table showing various arrangements of the terminal links, corresponding transformation ratios, and suitable primary voltages.

Digitized by Google

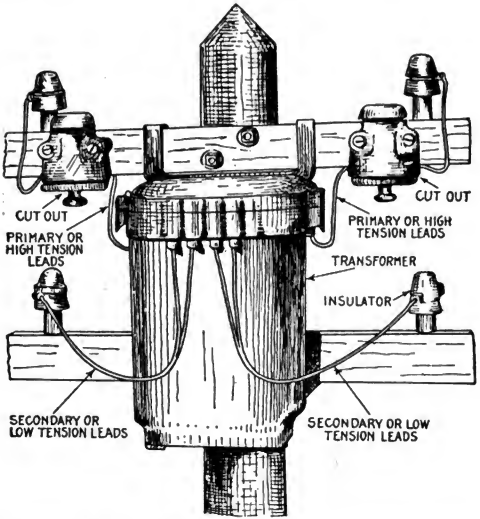


FIG. 2,030.—Installation of a transformer on pole; view showing method of attachment and disposition of the primary and secondary leads, cutouts, etc.

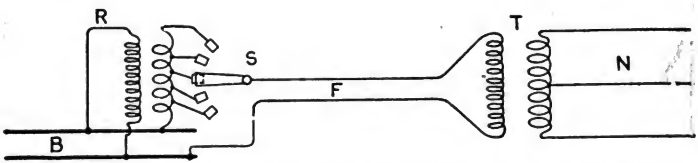


FIG. 2,031.—Diagram of static booster or regulating transformer. It is used for regulating the pressure on feeders. In the figure, B are the station bus bars, R the regulable transformer, F the two wire feeders, and T a distant transformer feeding into the low pressure three wire distributing network N. The two ends of the primary, and one end of the secondary of R, are connected to the bus bars as shown. The other end of the secondary, as well as a number of intermediate points, are joined up to a multiple way switch S, to which one of the feeder conductors is attached, the other feeder main being connected to the opposite bus bar. As will be evident from the figure, by manipulating S extra volts may be added to the bus bar pressure at will, and the drop along F compensated for. R is a step transformer, the total secondary difference of pressure being comparatively small. The above device possesses rather serious drawbacks, in that the switch S has to carry the main current, and that the supply would be stopped if the switch got out of order. Kapp improved on the arrangement by putting the switch in the pirmary circuit.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LIII

CONVERTERS

The alternating current must change to a direct current in many cases as in railroad work because the induction motor is not so satisfactory as the direct current series motor and the alternating current series motor is slow in coming into general use.

In all kinds of electrolytic work, transformation must be made, and in many cities where the direct current system was started, it is still continued for local distribution, but the large main stations generating alternating currents and frequently located some distance away from the center of distribution have replaced a number of small central stations.

Transformation may be made by any of the following methods:

1. Rotary converters;
2. Motor generator sets;
3. *Mercury vapor rectifiers;
4. *Electrolytic rectifiers.

Strictly speaking, *a converter is a revolving apparatus for converting alternating current into direct current or vice versa;* it is usually called a rotary converter and is to be distinguished from the other methods mentioned above.

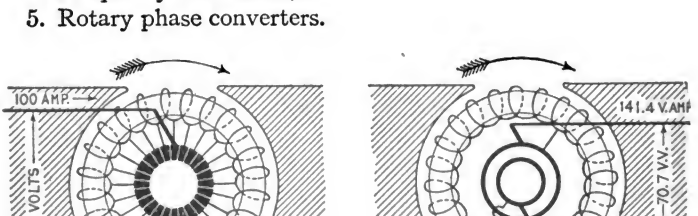
Broadly, however, a converter may be considered as *any species of apparatus for changing electrical energy from one form into another.*

*NOTE.—Rectifiers are explained in detail in Chapter LIV.

Digitized by Google

According to the standardization rules of the A. I. E. E. converters may be classified as:

1. Direct current converters;
2. Synchronous converters;
3. Motor converters;
4. Frequency converters;
5. Rotary phase converters.



FIGS. 2,032 and 2,033.—Gramme ring dynamo and alternator armatures illustrating converter operation. The current generated by the dynamo is assumed to be 100 amperes. Now, suppose, an armature similar to fig. 2,032 to be revolving in a similar field, but let its windings be connected at two diametrically opposite points to two slip rings on the axis, as in fig. 2,032. If driven by power, it will generate an alternating current. As the maximum voltage between the points that are connected to the slip rings will be 100 volts, and the virtual volts (as measured by a voltmeter) between the rings will be 70.7 ($= 100 \div \sqrt{2}$), if the power applied in turning this armature is to be 10 kilowatts, and if the circuit be non-inductive, the output in virtual amperes will be $10{,}000 \div 70.7 = 141.4$. If the resistances of each of the armatures be negligibly small, and if there be no frictional or other losses, the power given out by the armature which serves as motor will just suffice to drive the armature which serves as generator. If both armatures be mounted on the same shaft and placed in equal fields, the combination is a **motor dynamo.** In actual machines the various losses are met by an increase of current to the motor. Since the armatures are identical, and as the similarly placed windings are passed through identical magnetic fields, one winding with proper connections to the slip rings and commutator will do for both. In this case only one field is needed; such a machine is called a **converter.**

A direct current converter converts from a direct current to a direct current.

A synchronous converter (commonly called a *rotary converter*) converts from an alternating current to a direct current.

A motor converter is a combination of an induction motor with a synchronous converter, the secondary of the former feeding the armature of the latter with current at some frequency other than the impressed frequency; that is, it is a synchronous converter in combination with an induction motor.

Digitized by Google

A Frequency Converter (preferably called a *frequency changer*) converts alternating current at one frequency into alternating current of another frequency, with or without a change in the number of phases or voltages.

A Rotary Phase Converter changes alternating current of one or more phases into alternating current of a different number of phases, but of the same frequency.

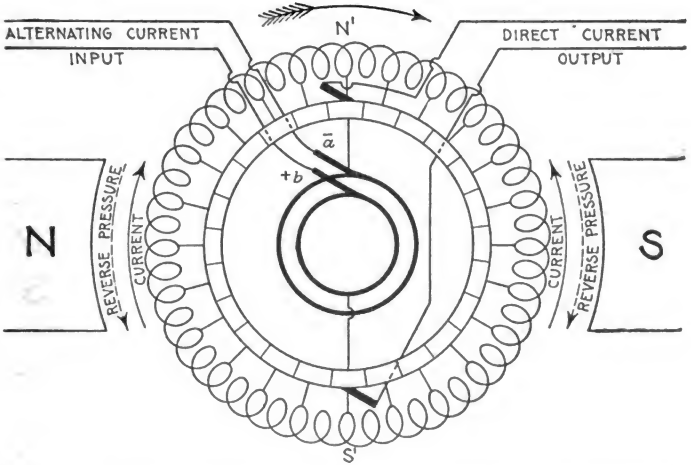


FIG. 2,034.—Diagram of ring wound single phase rotary converter. It is a combination of a synchronous motor and a dynamo. The winding is connected to the commutators in the usual way, and divided into two halves by leads connecting segments 180° apart to collector rings. A bipolar field is shown for simplicity; in practice the field is multipolar and energized by direct current.

Rotary Converters.—The synchronous or rotary converter consists of a synchronous motor and a direct current generator combined in one machine. It resembles a direct current generator with an unusually large commutator and an auxiliary set of collector rings.

Digitized by Google

Ques. In general, how does a rotary converter operate?

Ans. On the collector ring side it operates as a synchronous motor, while on the commutator side, as a dynamo.

Its design in certain respects is a compromise between alternating current and direct current practice most noticeably with respect to the number of poles and speed.

Ques. Upon what does the speed depend?

Ans. Since the input side consists of a synchronous motor,

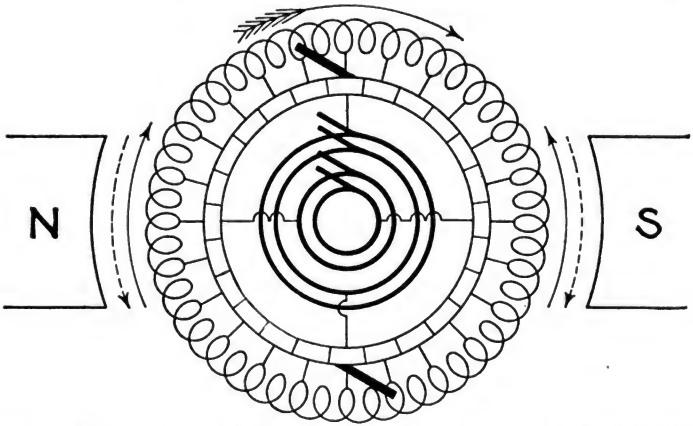


FIG. 2,035.—Diagram of two phase rotary converter. This is identical with the single phase machine with the exception that another pair of collector rings are added, and connected to points on the winding at right angles to the first, giving four brushes on the alternating side for the two phase current. The pressure will be the same for each phase as in the single phase rotary. Neglecting losses the current for each phase will be equal to the direct current $\times 1 \div \sqrt{2}$ = direct current $\times .707$.

the speed is governed by the frequency of the alternating current supplied, and the number of poles.

Fig. 2,034 is a diagram of a ring wound rotary converter. This style winding is shown to simplify the explanation. In practice drum wound armatures are used, the operation, however, is the same.

Digitized by Google

With this simple machine the following principles can be demonstrated:

1. If the coil be rotated, alternating currents can be taken from the collector rings and it is called an alternator.

2. By connecting up the wires from the commutator segments, a direct current will flow in the external circuit making a dynamo.

3. Two separate currents can be taken from the armature, one supplying alternating current and the other direct current; such a machine is called a *double current generator.*

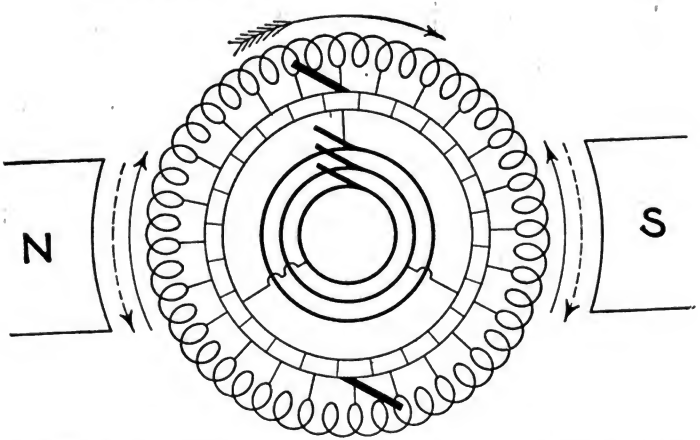
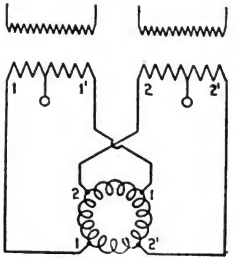


FIG. 2,036.—Diagram of three phase rotary converter. In this type, the winding is tapped at three points 120° distant from each other, and leads connected with the corresponding commutator segments.

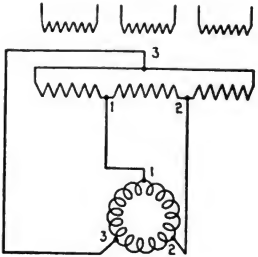
4. If a direct current be sent in the armature coil through the commutator, the coil will begin to rotate as in a motor and an alternating current can be taken out of the collector rings. Such an arrangement is called an *inverted rotary converter.*

5. If the machine be brought up to synchronous speed by external means and then supplied with alternating current at the collector rings, then if the direction of the current through the armature coil and the pole piece have the proper magnetic relation, the coil will continue to rotate in synchronism with the current. A direct current can be taken from the commutator, and when used thus, the machine is called simply a *rotary converter.*

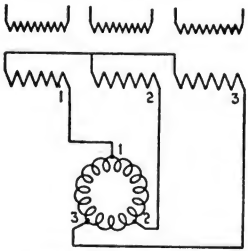
Digitized by Google



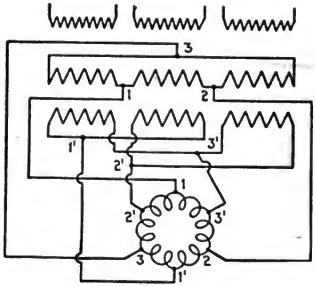
TWO PHASE



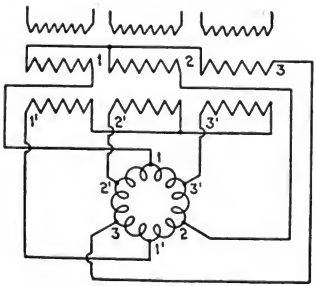
THREE PHASE Δ



THREE PHASE Y



SIX PHASE Δ



SIX PHASE Y

FIGS. 2,037 to 2,041. — Various rotary converter and transformer connections. Fig. 2,037 two phase connections; fig. 2,038 three phase delta connections; fig. 2,039 three phase Y or star connections; fig. 2,040 six phase delta connections; fig. 2,041 six phase Y connections.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is the relation between the impressed alternating pressure and the direct pressure at the commutator?

Ans. The ratio between the impressed alternating pressure and the direct current pressure given out is theoretically constant, therefore, the direct pressure will always be as 1 to .707 for single phase converters or if the pressure of the machine used above indicate 100 volts at the direct current end, it will indicate 70.7 volts at the alternating current side of the circuit.

Ques. Name two different classes of converter.

Ans. Single phase and polyphase.

Ques. What is the advantage of polyphase converters?

Ans. In the majority of cases two or three phase converters are used on account of economy of copper in the transmission line.

Ques. How is the armature of a polyphase converter connected?

Ans. Similar to that of an alternator with either delta or Y connections.

Figs. 2,037 to 2,041 show various converter connections between the collector rings and commutator.

Fig. 2,037 indicates how the armature is tapped for two phase connections.

Fig. 2,038 shows three phase delta connections, and fig. 2,039 the three phase Y or star connections.

Six phase delta and Y connections are frequently used as shown in fig. 2,040 and fig. 2,041, both of which require two secondary coils in the transformer, one set of which is reversed, so as to supply the current in the proper direction.

Ques. With respect to the wave, what is the relation between the direct and alternating pressures?

Ans. The direct current voltage will be equal to the crest of the pressure wave while the alternating voltage will depend

Digitized by Google

Table of
Alternating Current and Voltage in Terms of Direct Current

(According to Steinmetz)

	DIRECT CURRENT	SINGLE PHASE	TWO PHASE	THREE PHASE	SIX PHASE	TWELVE PHASE	n PHASE
VOLTS BETWEEN COLLECTOR RING AND NEUTRAL POINT	1	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}=.354$	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}=.354$	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}=.354$	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}=.354$	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}=.354$	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}=.354$
VOLTS BETWEEN ADJACENT COLLECTOR RINGS	1	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}=.707$	$\frac{1}{2}=.5$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{2}}=.612$	$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}=.354$	.183	$\frac{\sin\frac{\pi}{n}}{\sqrt{2}}$
AMPERES PER LINE	1	$\sqrt{2}=1.414$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}=.707$	$\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}=.943$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}=.472$	.236	$\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{n}$
AMPERES BETWEEN ADJACENT LINES	1	$\sqrt{2}=1.414$	$\frac{1}{2}=.5$	$\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3\sqrt{3}}=.545$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}=.472$	.455	$\frac{\sqrt{2}\sin\frac{\pi}{n}}{n}$

Digitized by Google

on the virtual value of the maximum voltage of the wave according to the connections employed.

In a single phase rotary, the value of the direct pressure is 1 to .707, therefore a rotary which must supply 600 volts direct current must be supplied by $600 \times .707 = 424$ volts alternating current. For three phase rotaries the ratio is 1 to .612, or in order to produce 600 volts direct current, $600 \times .612 = 367$ volts on the alternating current side of the rotary is required.

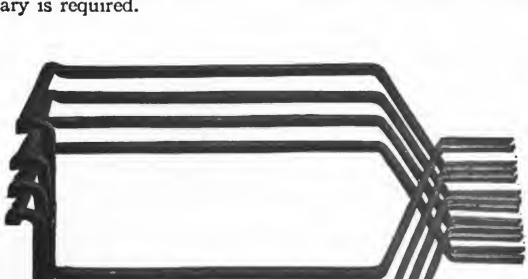


FIG. 2,042.—Westinghouse rotary converter armature coils. These are wound from bar copper and are interchangeable. The armature coils are heavily insulated to withstand the tests specified in the standardization rules of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers

Fig. 2,034 shows a complete diagram of the electrical connections. A single phase rotary is illustrated so as to simplify the wiring.

The table of Steinmetz on page 1,464 gives the values of the alternating volts and amperes in units of direct current.

Ques. How is the voltage of a rotary varied on the direct current side?

Ans. Pressure or potential regulators are put in the high tension alternating current circuit and may be regulated by small motors operated from the main switchboard or operated by hand.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is the advantage of unity power factor for rotary converters?

Ans. It prevents overheating when the rotary is delivering its full load in watts.

Ques. What greatly influences the power factor of the high tension line?

Ans. The strength of the magnetic field.



FIG. 2,043.—Westinghouse rotary converter armature spider. It is made of cast iron or cast steel. The dovetail grooves are machined in the feet or ends of the arms and in these slots the laminations forming the armature coil engage.

Ques. Does variation of the field strength materially affect the voltage?

Ans. No.

Since variation of the field strength does not materially affect the voltage, by adjusting the resistance in series with the magnetic circuit, the strength of the field can be changed and the power factor kept 1 or nearly 1 as different loads are thrown on and off the rotary.

Ques. What is the effect of a field too strong or too weak?

Ans. If too strong, a leading current is produced, and if too

Digitized by Google

weak, the current lags, both of which reduce the power factor and are objectionable.

Usually there is a power factor meter connected up in the main generating station and one also in the rotary substation, and it is the duty of the attendant at the substation to maintain the proper power factor.

Ques. What is the ordinary range of sizes of rotaries?

Ans. From 3 kw. to 3,000 kw.



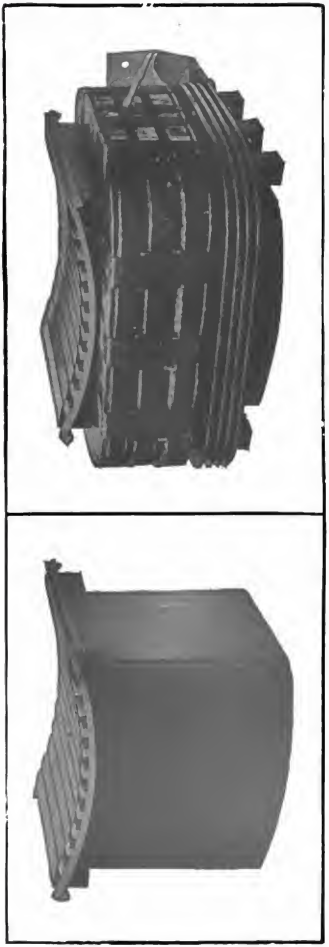
FIG. 2,044.—Equalizer connections of Westinghouse rotary converter. The armature coils are cross connected at points of equal voltage and taps are led out from the winding at suitable points to the slip rings. This construction insures a uniform armature saturation below each pole piece and eliminates one cause of sparking at the commutator.

Ques. What is the general construction of a rotary converter.

Ans. It is built similar to a dynamo with the addition of suitable collector rings connected to the armature windings at points having the proper phase relations.

Standard rotary converters have been developed for 25 and 60 cycles. The standard railway machines are compound wound, the series field being designed for a compounding of 600 volts at no load and full load when supplied from a source of constant pressure with not more than 10 per cent. resistance drop and with 20 to 30 per cent. reactance in the circuit. The large size machines are usually wound for six phase operat

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 2,045 and 2,046.—Westinghouse pole construction for converters. Fig. 2,045, pole without windings; fig 2,046, pole with windings. Poles are built up of sheet steel laminations held together with rivets. Projections on the inner ends of the poles form seats for the field coils and hold them in position. Copper dampers set in slots in the pole faces insure stable operation. Rotary converters for railway service are almost invariably compound wound. The series windings are formed of bare copper strap. The shunt windings are of insulated copper strap or wire. Spaces between coil turns and sections are provided for ventilation.

Compounding of Rotary Converters.—Compounding is desirable where the load is variable, such as is the case with interurban railway systems. The purpose of the compounding is to compensate automatically for the drop due to line, transformer, and converter impedance.

On account of the low power factor caused by over compounding, and the fact that substations are customarily connected to the trolley at its nearest point without feeder resistance, over compounding is not recommended. An adjustable shunt to the series field is provided with each machine.

Shunt wound converters are satisfactory for substations in

Digitized by Google

large cities and similar installations where due to the larger number of car units demanding power, the load is more nearly constant.

Ratio of Conversion.—The relation between the alternating and direct current voltages varies slightly in different machines,



FIG. 2.047.—Westinghouse rotary converter brush rigging showing method of bracing the brushes. The brushes are supported by a rigid cast iron rocker ring which fits accurately in the frame. A handwheel worm and screw arrangement for shifting the brushes is provided. Cast iron arms bolted to, but insulated from the rings, carry the rods on which the brush holders are mounted. Brush holders are of brass cast in one piece, of the sliding type and have braided copper shunts. Brush tension is adjustable.

due to differences in design. The best operating conditions exist when the desired direct current voltage is obtained with unity power factor at the converter terminals when loaded.

Digitized by Google

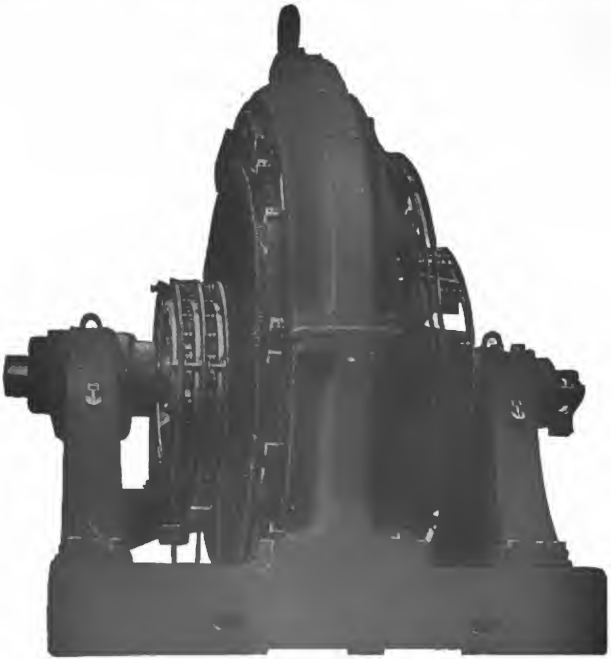


FIG. 2,048.—Westinghouse commutating pole rotary converter. The construction details are substantially the same as for the railway converter, with exception of the commutating poles. The application of commutating pole converters is particularly desirable where special requirements such as great overload capacity or large capacity and low voltage enable them to show to the greatest advantage. Commutating poles as applied to rotary converters fulfill the same functions as in the more familiar applications to dynamos and motors. That is, the commutating pole insures sparkless commutation from no load to heavy overloads with a fixed brush position. Brush shifting devices are not furnished on commutating pole converters. Commutating pole rotary converters for railway service are normally arranged for automatic compounding which is effected by the proper combination of series excitation and inductance between the generator and the rotary converter. This inductance is normally included in the transformer but in special cases may be partly in a transformer and partly in a separate reactance. It is possible to produce by this means a slight increase in the direct current voltage provided the voltage drop in the alternating current line be not excessive. Usually it is so arranged that the compounding that can be obtained is just sufficient to overcome the alternating current line voltage drop. The standard Westinghouse method of starting is alternating current self-starting. With this method of self-starting, the brushes of a commutating pole rotary converter must be lifted from the commutator during the starting operation to prevent sparking. A mechanical device, as shown in fig. 2,050, is provided which accomplishes this. With direct current or motor starting a brush lifting device is not necessary.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Upon what does the ratio of conversion depend?

Ans. Upon the number of phases and method of connecting the windings.

For single phase or two phase machines it is 1 to .7; for three phase, 1 to .612, or six phase, 1 to .7 or 1 to .613 depending upon the kind of connection used for the transformer.

For example, a two phase rotary receiving alternating current at 426 volts will deliver direct current at 600 volts, while a three phase rotary receiving alternating current at 367 volts will deliver direct current at 600 volts.



FIG. 2,049.—Commutating pole of Westinghouse commutating pole rotary converter. The commutating poles are similar in general construction to the main poles. The coils are of bare copper strap wound on edge. Ventilating spaces are provided between the pole and coil and between turns. The copper winding is bare except for a few turns at each end. Insulating bolts retain the turns in their proper position.

Ques. What difficulty would be encountered if other ratios of conversion than those given above were required?

Ans. An armature with a single winding could not be used.

It would be necessary to use a machine with two distinct armature windings or else a motor generator set.

Ques. What change in voltage is necessary between a converter and the alternator which furnishes the current?

Ans. The voltage must be reduced to the proper value by a step down transformer.

Digitized by Google

Voltage Regulation.—As the ratio of the alternating to the direct current voltage of a converter is practically constant, means must be provided to compensate for voltage variation due to changes of load in order to maintain the direct current pressure constant.

There are several methods of doing this, as by:

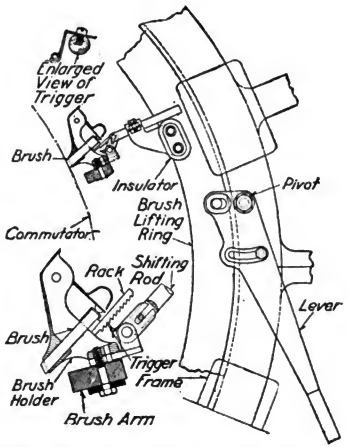
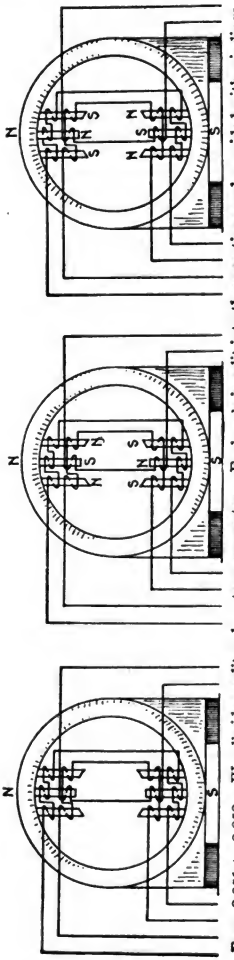


FIG. 2,050.—Westinghouse brush lifting device for commutating pole rotary converter. A rack is attached to each brush as shown. Into this rack the spring hinged lifting hook of the raising device engages only when the lifting lever is shifted toward the raised position. The lifting arrangement is independent of the brushes during normal running, so it can in no way affect the operation of the machine. Each brush is merely raised and lowered within its own holder so the brush position or commutation is not altered.

1. Shifting the brushes (objectionable);
2. Split pole method;
3. Regulating pole method;
4. Reactance method;
5. "Multi-tap" transformer method.
6. Synchronous regulator.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 2,051 to 2,053.—Woodbridge split pole rotary converter. Each pole is split into three sections and provided with windings as indicated in fig. 2,051. When excited as in fig. 2,052, the commutator voltage is at its highest value; when excited as in fig. 2,053, the commutator voltage is low. The change in commutator voltage for constant collector ring voltage is in virtue of the property of rotary converters that the ratio of these two voltages is a function of the width of the pole arc.

Shifting the Brushes.—Were it not for the difficulties encountered, this would be a most convenient method of voltage regulation, since by this procedure the direct current voltage may be varied from maximum to zero. It is, however, not practical because of the excessive sparking produced when the brushes are shifted out of the neutral plane.

Split Pole Method.—In order to overcome the difficulty encountered in shifting the brushes the split pole method was devised by Woodbridge in which each field pole is split into two or three parts.

The effect of this is the same as shifting the brushes except that no sparking results.

The other part is arranged so that its excitation may be varied, thus shifting the resultant plane of the field with respect to the direct current brushes.

One of these parts is permanently excited and it produces near its edge the fringe of field necessary for sparkless commutation.

Digitized by Google

Regulating Pole Method.—As applied to the rotary converter regulating poles fulfill the same functions as commutating or interpoles (see page 385) on motors and dynamos, that is, they insure sparkless commutation from no load to heavy overloads with a fixed brush position.

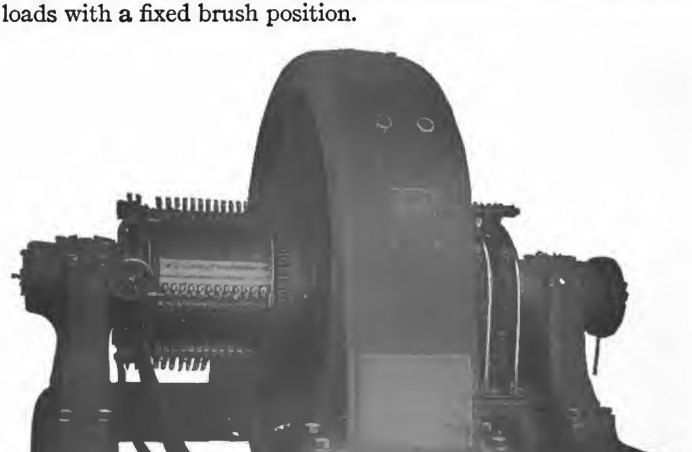


FIG. 2,054.—General Electric regulating pole rotary converter. The field structure is divided into two parts, a main pole and a regulating pole. The ratio between the voltages on the direct current and alternating current sides may be readily varied by varying the excitation of the regulating poles, the only auxiliary apparatus required being a field rheostat for controlling the exciting current. Where automatic regulation is required, machines may be provided with compound windings, or automatic field regulators may be used responsive to either voltage or current. These converters are adapted for a variety of purposes where a variable conversion ratio is required, either to maintain constant D. C. voltage with varying A. C. voltage or to vary the D. C. voltage as required. Converters may be operated inverted where it is required to furnish constant or variable A. C. voltage from a D. C. source. Where converter and inverted converter operation are desired, an opposite direction of rotation is required for the inverted operation. Converters of this type are built in capacities from 300 kw. up to 3,000 kw., and constructed to give a voltage range between 240 and 300 volts, to cover the usual lighting circuit requirements. In design, they are similar to standard rotary converters, with the exception that the regulating poles are located next to the main pole pieces and a slightly different form of pole piece bridge is used for the main poles, in order to allow the auxiliary poles to be readily removed or assembled.

Digitized by Google

The regulating poles are used in order to vary the ratio between the alternating current collector rings and the direct current side without the use of auxiliary apparatus such as induction regulators or dial switches which involve complicated connections and many additional wires. The regulating poles are arranged with suitable connection so that the current through them can be raised, lowered or reversed.



FIG. 2,055.—Detail of Westinghouse commutating pole rotary converter brush, showing rack. The brush lifting mechanism and its operation is explained in fig. 2,050.

The characteristics of the regulating pole converter being novel, a detailed explanation of the principles involved is given to facilitate a clear understanding of its operation.

Consider a machine with a field structure as shown in fig. 2,056 resembling in appearance a machine with commutating poles, but with the brushes so set that one of the regulating poles adds its flux to that of one main pole, cutting the inductors between two direct current brushes. The regulating pole is shown with a width equal to 20 per cent. of that of the main pole.

To obtain definite figures, it will be assumed that the machine at normal speed, with the main poles excited to normal density, but with no excitation on the regulating poles, gives 250 volts direct current pressure. Then with each regulating pole excited to the same density

Digitized by Google

as the main poles, and with a polarity corresponding to that of the main pole in the same section between brushes, the direct current pressure will rise to 300 volts at the same speed, since the total flux cutting the inductors in one direction between brushes has been increased 20 per cent.

If, on the other hand, the excitation of the regulating poles be reversed and increased to the same density as that of the main poles, the direct current pressure will fall to 200 volts, since in this case the regulating poles give a reverse pressure, that is, a pressure opposing that generated by the main poles.

Now, if the machine be equipped with collector rings, that is, if it

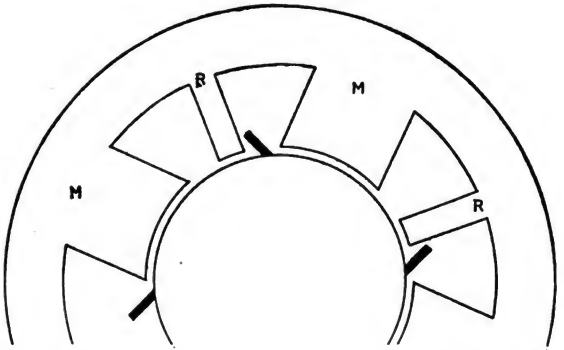


FIG. 2,056.—Diagram of field of regulating pole converter illustrating principles explained in the accompanying text.

be a converter, this method of varying the direct current voltage from 200 to 300 volts does not give nearly as great a variation of the alternating current voltage; in fact, the latter voltage will be the same when delivering 200 volts as when delivering 300 volts direct current pressure, if the field excitation be the same.

This may be seen by reference to fig. 2,057, which is a diagram of the alternating current voltage developed in the armature windings by the two sets of poles.

The horizontal line OA represents the alternating current voltage

NOTE.—In the Burnham split pole rotary converter, each pole is divided into only two sections, one larger than the other. A main shunt winding is arranged on the large sections, and a winding for providing the voltage regulation is placed on the other section. When the current is sent through this latter winding in one direction the voltage is raised, when in the other direction the voltage is lowered.

Digitized by Google

generated by the main poles, alone, with the regulating poles unexcited, that is, when delivering 250 volts direct current pressure.

For a six phase converter OA measures about 180 volts diametrically, that is, between electrically opposite collector rings.

If now the regulating poles be excited to full strength, to bring the direct current pressure up to 300 volts, the alternating current voltage generated by the regulating poles will be 90 degrees out of phase with that generated by the main poles (since they are placed midway between the main poles), and will be about 40 volts as shown by the line AB.

The resultant alternating current volts across the collector rings will be represented by the line OB with a value equal to 184.

Again, if the regulating poles be reversed at full strength, to cut the direct current pressure down to 200 volts, the alternating current voltage

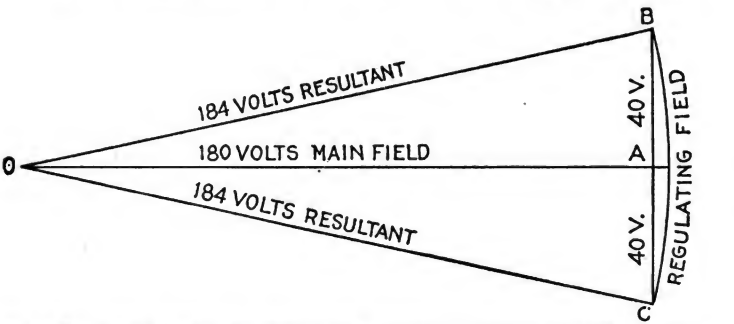


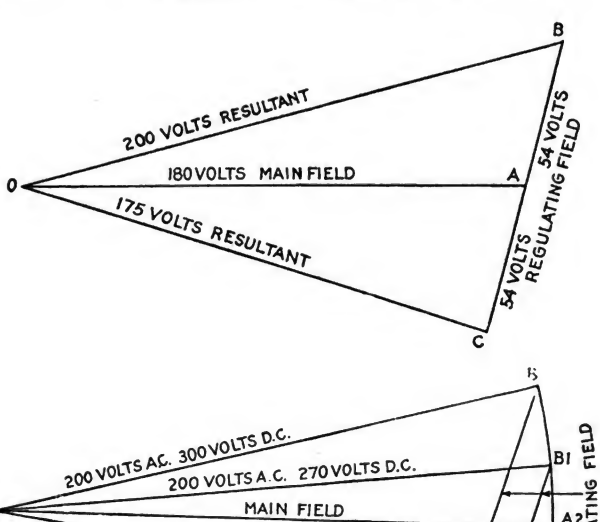
FIG. 2,057.—Voltage diagram for regulating pole converter illustrating principles explained in the accompanying text.

of the main and regulating poles will be OA and AC respectively, giving the resultant OC equal to OB with a value of 184 volts. Accordingly, the direct current pressure may be either 200 or 300 volts with the same alternating current pressure, and if the main field be kept constant, the direct current pressure may range between 200 or 300 volts, while the alternating current pressure varies only between 180 and 184 volts.

The alternating current pressure can be kept constant through the full range of direct current voltage by changing the main field so as always to give an equal and opposite flux change to that of the regulating field. A constant total flux may thus be obtained equal to the radius of the arc BC, fig. 2,057. In this case the line OA, representing the main field strength, will equal OB when the regulating field is not excited, and 250 volts can only be obtained at this adjustment.

This method of operation gives unity power factor with a constant impressed pressure of 184 volts alternating current with a range of direct current voltage from 200 to 300 volts.

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 2,058 and 2,059.—Diagrams illustrating the effect on the alternating current voltage due to varying the regulating field strength (of a machine proportioned according to fig. 2,060), from a density equal to that in the main poles to the same density reversed, the main field strength remaining constant. The D. C. voltage in this case varies from 30 per cent. above that produced by the main field alone to 30 per cent. below, or from 325 to 175 volts, while the A. C. voltage varies only from 200 to 175 volts. To keep the A. C. voltage constant with such a machine the main field must be strengthened as the regulating field is weakened or reversed to reduce the D. C. voltage. This strengthening increases the core loss particularly on low direct current voltages, which however, are rarely required, hence a machine proportioned as in fig. 2,060, would not be operated through so wide a range as 175 to 325 volts. Assume that the range is 240 to 300 volts, and that at the highest voltage, both main and regulating fields have the same density, presenting to the armature practically one continuous pole face of uniform flux intensity. The diagram of A. C. component voltages to give constant A. C. resultant voltage across the rings for the case, is shown in fig. 2,059. At 300 volts D. C., the main field produces an A. C. voltage OA, and the regulating field, a voltage AB, with a resultant OB, equal to about 200 volts A. C. At 270 volts D. C., the main field produces an A. C. voltage OA, and a regulating field voltage AB, giving a resultant A. C. voltage OB, equal to 200 volts. Similarly, at 240 volts D. C., the main field produces an A. C. voltage OA, and the regulating field (now reversed) produces the reverse voltage AB, giving the resultant OB again equal to 200 volts. It will be noted that, theoretically the main field strength must be increased about 15 per cent. above its value at 300 volts D. C. in order to keep the D. C. voltage at 250 volts.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Where should the regulating poles be located for best results?

Ans. A better construction is obtained by placing them closer to the corresponding main pole, as in fig. 2,060, than when spaced midway between the main poles as in fig. 2,056.

Ques. When the regulating poles are spaced as in fig. 2,060, what is the effect on the direct current voltage?

Ans. The effect is the same as for the midway position (fig. 2,056) except for magnetic leakage from the main poles to

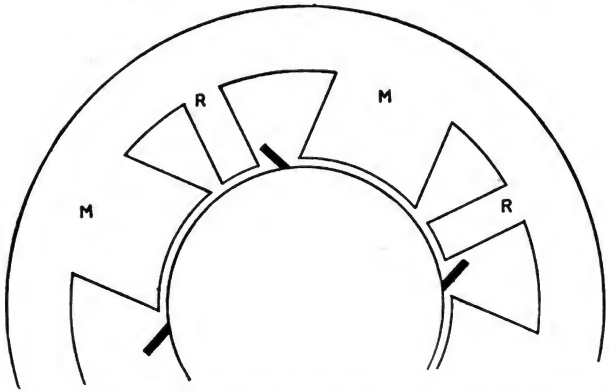


FIG. 2,060.—Diagram illustrating placement of regulating poles. In practice machines are not built as indicated diagrammatically in fig. 2,056, that is, with regulating poles spaced midway between the main poles, because a better construction is obtained by placing the regulating pole closer to the corresponding main pole, as shown above.

the regulating poles when the latter is opposed to the former, that is, when the direct current voltage is being depressed.

Ques. What is the effect on the alternating current voltage?

Ans. It is somewhat altered as explained in figs. 2,058 and 2,059.

Digitized by Google

Reactance Method.—This consists in inserting inductance in the supply circuit and running the load current through a few turns around the field cores. This method is sometimes called *compounding*, and as it is automatic it is generally used where there is a rapidly fluctuating load.

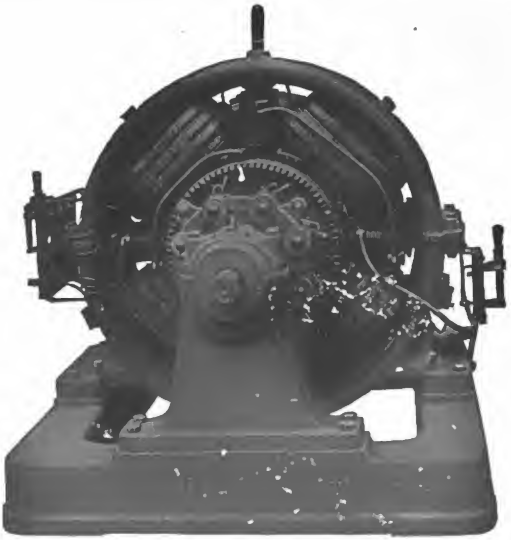


FIG. 2,061.—Westinghouse 300 kw., 1,500 volt, three phase, 25 cycle, commutating pole rotary converter. The illustration shows clearly the commutating, and main poles and the relative sizes, also arrangement of the terminal connections.

If a lagging current be passed through an inductance, the collector ring voltage will be lowered, but will be raised in case of a leading current. The degree of excitation governs the change in the phase of the current to the converter, the excitation, in turn, being regulated by the load current. Accordingly

Digitized by Google

with series inductance, the effect of the series coils on the field of the converter is quite similar to that of the compounding of the ordinary railway dynamo.

Multi-tap Transformer Method.—The employment of a variable ratio step down transformer for voltage regulation is a non-automatic method of control and, accordingly, is not desirable except in cases where the load is fairly constant over considerable periods of time. It requires no special explanation.



FIG. 2,062.—Mechanical oscillator and speed limit device of Westinghouse commutating pole rotary converter. It automatically prevents the armature of the converter remaining in one position and thus not allowing brushes to wear grooves in both commutator and collector rings. The oscillator is a self-contained device carried at one end of the shaft. The operating parts consist of a hardened steel ball and a steel plate with a circular ball race, backed by a spring. The machine is so installed with a slight inclination toward the end carrying the oscillator. As the armature revolves the ball is carried upward and owing to the convergence of the steel race and shaft face, the spring is compressed. The reaction of the spring forces the armature away from its natural position and allows the ball to drop back to the lowest point of the race.

Synchronous Booster Method.—This consists of combining with the converter a revolving armature alternator having the same number of poles.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How is the winding of the booster alternator armature connected?

Ans. It is connected in series with the input circuits on the converter.

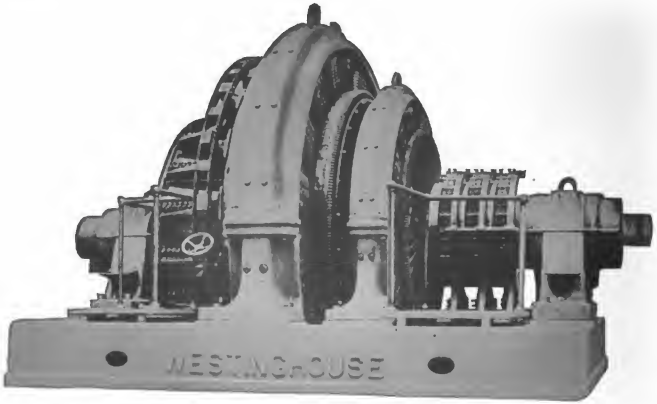


FIG. 2,063.—Westinghouse 2,000 kw., 270 volt, direct current, 6 phase, 167 R.P.M., synchronous booster rotary converter, having a voltage range from 230 to 310 volts. It consists of a standard rotary converter in combination with a revolving armature alternator mounted on the same shaft with the rotary converter and having the same number of poles. By varying the field excitation of the alternator, the alternating current voltage impressed on the rotary converter can be increased or decreased as desired. The direct current voltage delivered by the converter is thereby varied accordingly. The principle of operation of the booster converter is therefore very simple and easily understood. It is simply a combination of two standard pieces of electrical apparatus, accordingly there are incorporated in it no details of construction essentially different from those encountered in standard rotary converters and alternators. The only novelty is in their combination. The frames may be supported either from the rotary converter frame, as in the small units, or from the bed plate, as in the larger ones. A synchronous booster converter can be built, if necessary, with a vertical shaft to satisfy special floor space and head room requirements.

Ques. How are the field windings connected?

Ans. They are either fed with current regulated by means of a motor operated field circuit rheostat, or joined in series with the commutator leads of the converter.

Digitized by Google



FIG. 2,064.—Armature of Westinghouse synchronous booster converter. Heavy cast yokes form the frames. They are proportioned to rigidly support the laminated steel field poles. The poles are fastened to the frame with through bolts. A lifting hook is provided on all frames. The bed plates are in one piece for the smaller machines but two piece bed plates are used for the larger ones. The bearings are ring oiling and have babbitt wearing surfaces that are renewable.



FIG. 2,065.—Westinghouse field frames and bearings for synchronous booster rotary converter. The frames consist of heavy cast yokes. The poles are fastened to the frames with through bolts. The bed plate is in one piece for the small machines and in two pieces for the large ones.

Digitized by Google

Ques. For what service is the synchronous booster method desirable?

Ans. For any application where a relatively wide variation in direct current voltage is necessary.

It is particularly desirable for serving incandescent lighting systems where considerable voltage variation is required for the compensation of drop in long feeders, for operation in parallel with storage batteries and for electrolytic work where extreme variations in voltage are required by changes in the resistance of the electrolytic cells.

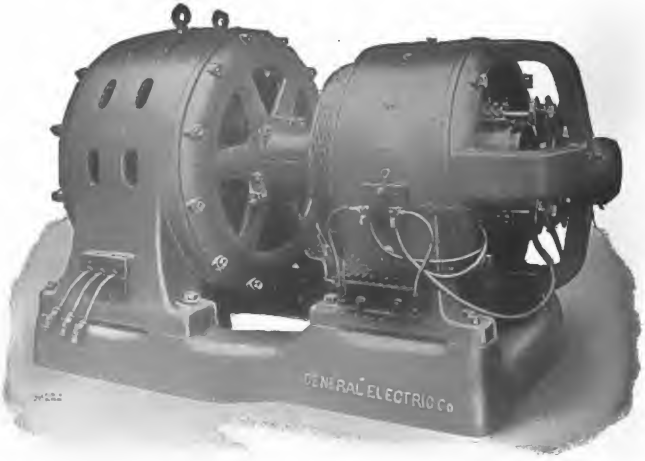


FIG. 2,066.—General Electric motor generator set consisting of 2,300 volt synchronous motor and 550 volt dynamo.

Motor Generator Sets.—The ordinary rotary converter is the most economical machine for converting alternating currents into direct currents, and where slight variations in the direct current voltage is necessary, they are mostly used on account of their high efficiency, and because they are compact.

Digitized by Google



FIG. 2,067.—General Electric motor generator set consisting of 230 volt induction motor and 125 volt dynamo.

In many central stations where they supply a great variety of apparatus, the motor generator sets are employed as the generator is independent of the alternating current line voltage and any degree of voltage regulation can be performed.

Motor Generator Combinations.—The following combinations of motor generators are made and used to suit local conditions:

Synchronous motor	dynamo
Induction motor	dynamo
Direct current motor	dynamo
Direct current motor	alternator
Synchronous motor	alternator
Induction motor	alternator

Digitized by Google

Standard practice has adopted high tension alternating current for transmission systems, but direct current distribution

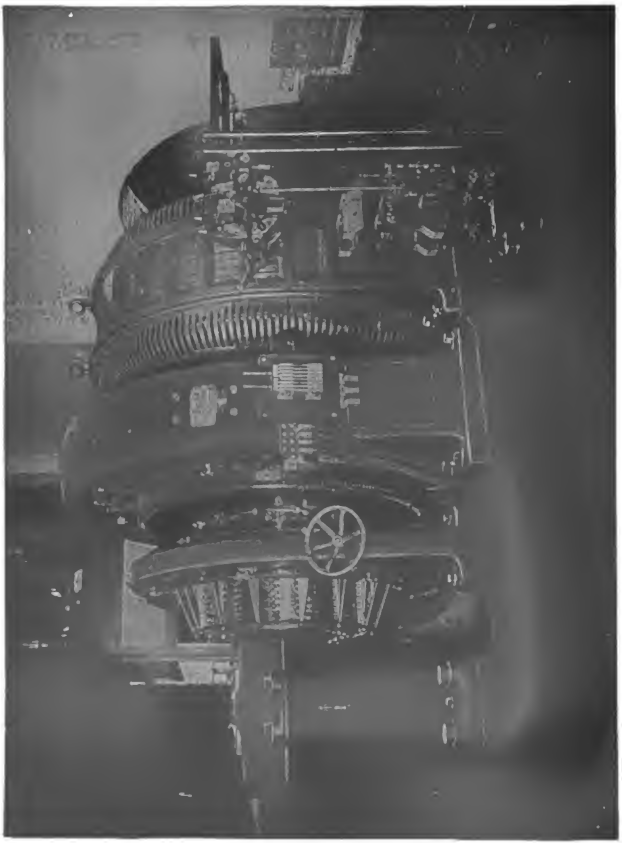


FIG. 2,008.—General Electric motor-generator set, as installed for the Cleveland Electric Illuminating Company, Cleveland, Ohio. It consists of 11,431 volt motor and 275 volt generator. Speed, 360 revolutions per minute.

Digitized by Google

is very frequently used. This is particularly true where alternating current apparatus has been introduced in old direct current lighting systems.

The synchronous motor or the induction motor connected to a generator stands next in importance to the rotary converter because it is easy to operate and the pressure may be changed by a rheostat placed in the field circuit of the generator.

The line wires carrying full voltage can usually be connected direct to the motor and thus do away with the necessary step-down transformer required by the rotary.

Ques. What is the behavior of a rotary converter when hunting?

Ans. It is liable to flash over at the direct current brushes, which is common in high frequency converters where there are a great number of poles and the brushes are necessarily spaced close together around the commutator.

Ques. Is this fault so pronounced with motor generator sets?

Ans. The motor generator operating on a high frequency circuit, the generator can be designed with a few poles and the brushes set far apart which will greatly reduce the chance of flashing over.

A synchronous motor will drive a generator at a constant speed during changes in load on it, and by having a field regulating resistance it can be used to improve the power factor of the system.

When an induction motor is used its speed drops off slowly as the load comes on the generator, and it is necessary to regulate the voltage of the generator by means of a field rheostat, or compound wound machines may be used.

While an induction motor requires no separate excitation of the field magnets like the synchronous motor, its effect on the power factor of the system is undesirable.

Digitized by Google

Although it is seldom necessary to convert direct current to alternating, such an arrangement of a direct current motor driving an alternator is often justified in place of an inverted rotary converter, as in this case the alternating current voltage can be changed independent of the direct current voltage.

The racing of an inverted rotary under a heavy inductive load or short circuit does not take place in motor generator set mentioned above.



FIG. 2,069.—General Electric frequency changer set, consisting of a 11,000 volt synchronous motor with direct connected exciter and a 2,300 volt alternator.

Frequency Changing Sets.—A frequency of 25 cycles is generally used on railway work and in large cities using the Edison three wire system, and as a 25 cycle current is not desirable for electric lighting it is necessary to change it to 60 cycles by means of a frequency changer shown in fig. 2,069 for distribution in the outlying districts.

Digitized by Google

The two machines in this combination are of the same construction, only the synchronous motor would have eight poles and have the 25 cycle current passing through it, while the generator would have 20 poles and produce 62½ cycles per second at 300 revolutions per minute. By supplying the motor with 24 cycles, the generator would produce 60 cycles.

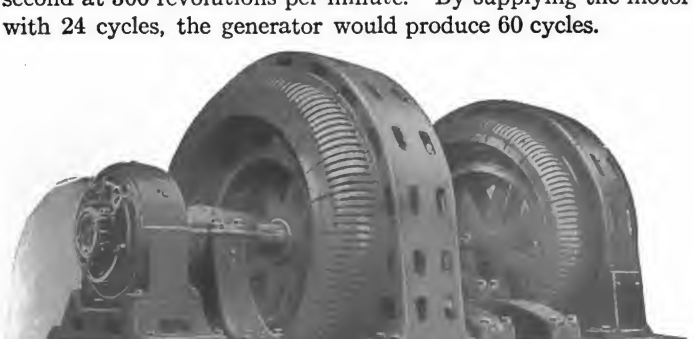


FIG. 2,070.—General Electric four unit frequency changer set consisting of a 11,000 volt synchronous motor, 13,200 volt alternator, 250 volt exciter, and 440 volt starting induction motor. Where parallel operation is required between synchronous motor driven frequency changers, a mechanical adjustment is necessary between the fields or armatures of the alternator and motor to obtain equal division of the load. The adjustment can be obtained by shifting the keyway, or by special cradle construction. In the latter method, one machine is bolted to a cradle fastened to the base. By taking out the bolts, the frame can be turned around through a small angle relatively to the cradle and therefore to the armature frame of the other machine, when the bolts can be replaced.

It will be seen from the figure that the separate exciter is fastened on the base plate and has its armature directly connected to the shaft.

Parallel Operation of Frequency Changers.—It is very difficult to construct two or more frequency changers and join them to synchronous motors so that the current wave of one

Digitized by Google

machine will be in phase with the other, since the speed of the motor will depend on the frequency of the line and be independent of the load thrown on it.

When alternators are run in parallel, if one machine lag behind, the other carries the load with the result that the lightly loaded machine will speed up and get in step with the other, or

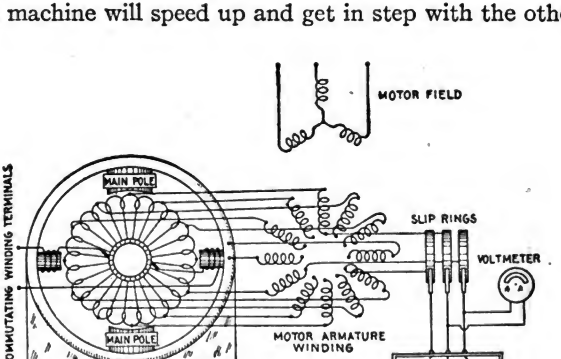


FIG. 2,071.—Diagram of "Cascade" motor generator set or motor converter, as it is called in England where it is used extensively for electric railway work. In the diagram of motor armature winding, some of the connections are omitted for simplicity. The windings are Y connected, and as they are fed by wires joined to the slip rings at the right and center, the rest of the power passes to the converter windings back to rotor winding and out to the slip rings so that part of the power enters the rotor and part through the converter.

in other words a synchronizing current will flow between the two alternators and tend to keep them in proper relation with respect to phase and load.

Cascade Converter.—This piece of apparatus was introduced by Arnold and La Cour. Briefly, it consists of a combination of an induction motor having a wound armature and

Digitized by Google

a dynamo, the armatures being placed on the same shaft. The windings are joined in cascade, that is, in series with those of the armature of the induction motor. The line supplies three phase currents at high voltage direct to the field of the induction

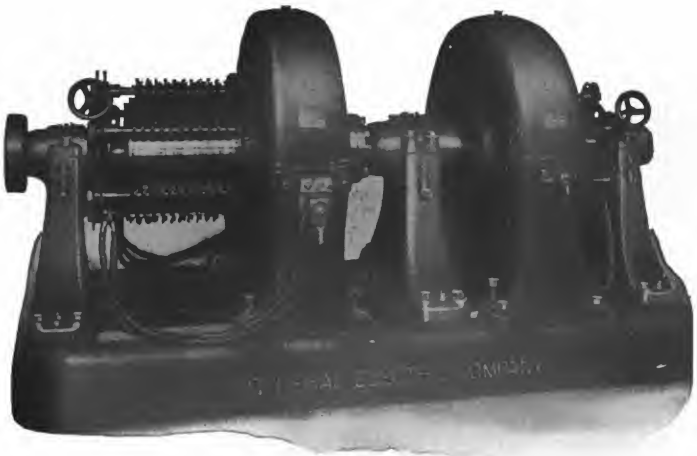


FIG. 2,072.—General Electric shunt wound booster set. Sets of this class are used in railway stations to raise the pressure of the feeders extending to distant points of the system, for storage battery charging and regulation, and in connection with the Edison three wire lighting system. The design of the various sets is closely dependent upon their application. Booster sets are constructed in either series or shunt wound types and they may be arranged for either automatic or hand regulation, depending on the nature of the service required. Where there are a number of lighting feeders connected and run at full load for only a short time each day it will generally be economical to install boosters rather than to invest in additional feeder copper. It is important, however, to consider each case where the question of installing a booster arises, as a separate problem, and to determine if the value of the power lost represents an amount lower than the interest charge on the extra copper necessary to deliver the same voltage without the use of a booster.

motor and drives it, generating in it currents at a lower voltage depending on the ratio of the windings.

Part of the current thus generated in the armature passes into the armature of the dynamo and is *converted* by the

Digitized by Google

commutator into direct current as in a rotary converter, but is also increased by the current induced in the winding of the dynamo armature.



FIG. 2,073.—General Electric 9.5 kw. 1,000 R.P.M. balancer set. This is a form of direct current compensator, the units of which it is composed may be alternately motor or generator, and the secondary circuit is interconnected with the primary. Balancer sets are widely used to provide the neutral of Edison three wire lighting systems. They are also installed for power service in connection with the use of 250 volt motors on a 500 volt service or 125 volt motors on a 250 volt service. Although the balancer set may be manufactured for more than one intermediate voltage, the General Electric Company recommends the three wire system as it is simpler. The motors may be more equally divided and the reserve margin of the motor is more conservative for that class of work requiring increase in torque with decrease in speed. The voltage of the system being given, the capacity of a three wire balancer set is fixed by the maximum current the neutral wire is required to carry. This figure is a more definite specification of capacity than a statement in per cent. of unbalanced load. As designed for power work and generally for lighting service, the brushes of each machine are set at the neutral point in order to get the best results for operating alternately either as a generator or motor. Where the changes of balance are so gradual as to permit of hand adjustment if desired, a considerable increase in output is obtainable.

Ques. At what speed does the machine run?

Ans. Assuming equal numbers of pole, the armatures rotate at a speed corresponding to one half the circuit frequency.

Digitized by Google

FIGS. 2,074 and 2,075.—General Electric charging sets. Fig. 2,074 set consists of dynamo and direct current motor; fig. 2,075 set consists of a dynamo and alternating current motor. Fig. 2,074 set is equipped with 125 volt, shunt wound dynamo and 230 or 550 volt motor and range in capacity from .125 kw. to 13 kw., the speed varying from 2,250 R.P.M. in the .125 kw. set to 925 R.P.M. in the 13 kw. set with 230 volt motor. Both motor and dynamo have the same type and size of frame; these are bolted together and form a compact and symmetrical outfit, no base being necessary. Sets of the type shown in fig. 2,075 range in capacity from .2 kw. to 10 kw. and are equipped with 125 volt shunt wound dynamo and 110, 220, 440 or 550 volt two or three phase motors. If desired they can be furnished with single phase motors wound for 110 or 220 volts. The speed of this type is 1,800 R.P.M. When a motor generator set is used to charge only one battery, the insertion of a resistance between the charging dynamo and the battery is not necessary, inasmuch as all adjustments of voltage can be made by varying the field strength of the dynamo and, therefore, there are no large losses due to resistance since the loss in the dynamo field rheostat is very small. When a motor generator set is used to charge two or more batteries of different capacities, or voltages, or which are in different conditions of charge, it is necessary to insert a resistance in series with each battery, in order that the current may be properly adjusted for each particular battery.

Thus if the motor have six poles and the frequency be 50, the rotary field revolves at $50 \times 60 \div 3 = 1{,}000$ R.P.M., and the motor will revolve at one-half that speed or $1{,}000 \div 2 = 500$ R.P.M.

Since the connections are so arranged that these currents tend to set up in the armature a revolving field, rotating at half speed in a sense opposite to that in which the shaft is rotating at half speed, it follows that by the superposition of this revolving field upon the revolutions of the machine, the magnetic effect is equivalent to a rotation of the armature at whole speed so that it operates in synchronism, as does the armature of a rotary converter.

Half the electric input into the motor part is, therefore, turned into mechanical energy to drive the shaft, the other half acts inductively on the armature winding, generating currents therein.

Digitized by Google

As to the dynamo part it is half generator, receiving mechanical power by transmission along the shaft to furnish half its output, and it is half converter, turning the currents received from the armature into direct current delivered at the brushes.

Ques. What action takes place in the motor armature winding?

Ans. Since it runs at one-half synchronous speed, it generates alternating current of half the supply current frequency, delivering these to the armature of the dynamo.

Ques. What claim is made for this type of apparatus?

Ans. The cost is said to be less than a motor generator set, and it is claimed to be self-synchronizing and to require no special starting gear, also to be 2.5 per cent. more efficient than a motor generator.

Ques. How is the machine started from the high pressure side?

Ans. The field winding is connected directly to the high pressure leads. The three slip ring brushes are connected with external resistances which are used while starting, the external resistances being gradually cut out of the circuit as the machine comes up to speed (the same as with an ordinary slip ring motor).

Ques. How does a cascade converter compare with a synchronous converter?

Ans. It is about equally expensive as the synchronous converter with its necessary bank of transformers, but is about one per cent. less efficient. It is claimed to be more desirable for frequencies above 40 on account of the improved commutation at the low frequency used in the dynamo member. For lower frequencies the synchronous converter is preferable.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LIV

RECTIFIERS

The purpose of a rectifier is to change alternating current into a uni-directional or pulsating current. There are several classes of apparatus to which the term rectifier may be applied, as

1. Mechanical rectifiers;
2. Electrolytic rectifiers;
3. Mercury vapor rectifiers, or, mercury arc rectifiers;
4. Electro-magnetic rectifiers.

Mechanical Rectifiers.—By definition, a mechanical rectifier is a form of commutator operating in synchronism with the generator and commutating or rectifying the negative waves of the alternating current as shown graphically in figs. 2,076 and 2,078. The essential features of construction are shown in fig. 2,079.

Ques. Mention some application of a mechanical rectifier.

Ans. It is used on a compositely excited alternator as illustrated on page 1,192.

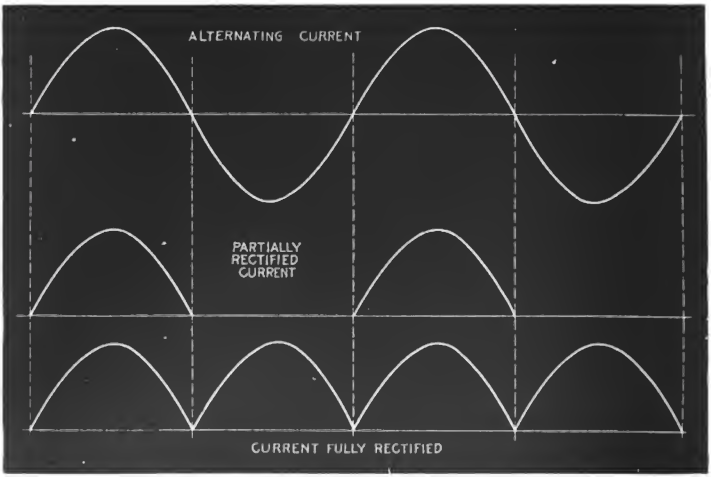
Electrolytic Rectifiers.—If two metals be placed in an electrolyte and then subjected to a definite difference of pressure, *they will* (under certain conditions) *offer greater resistance to the*

Digitized by Google

passage of a current in one direction, than in the other direction. On account of this so called valve effect, electrolytic rectifiers are sometimes called "valves."

Ques. What metal is generally used for the cathode?

Ans. Aluminum.



FIGS. 2,076 to 2,078.—Diagrams showing alternating currents, and partial and complete rectification.

Ques. What is generally used for the other electrode?

Ans. Lead or polished steel.

Metals of low atomic weight exhibit the valve effect at high differences of pressure, and heavier metals at low differences of pressure.

Ques. Describe the "Nodon valve."

Ans. The cathode is of aluminum or aluminum alloy, and the

Digitized by Google

other electrode, which has considerably more surface, is the containing vessel. The electrolyte is a neutral solution of ammonia phosphate.

Ques. Describe its action.

Ans. It is due to the formation of a **film** of normal hydroxide of aluminum, over the surface of the aluminum electrode. This

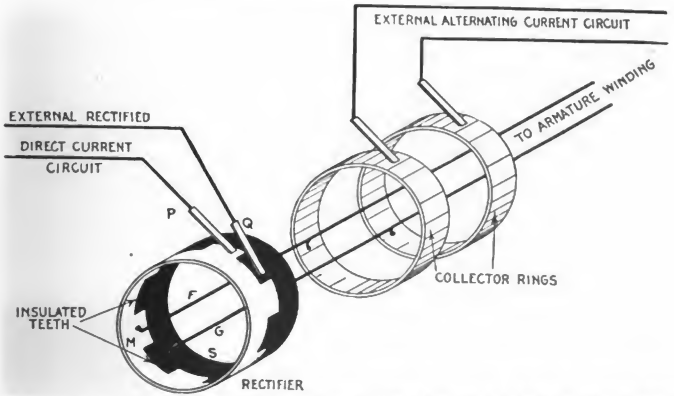


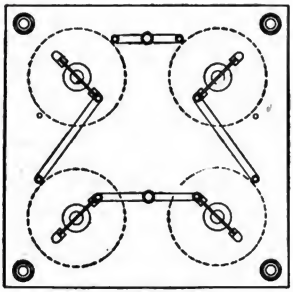
FIG. 2,079.—Mechanical rectifier. The rectifier consists of two castings M and S with teeth which fit together as shown, being insulated so they do not come in contact with each other. Every alternate tooth, being of the same casting, is connected together, the same as though joined by a conducting wire. There are as many teeth as there are poles. The part M of the rectifier is connected to one of the collector rings by F, and the part S to the other ring by G.

film presents a very high resistance to the current when flowing in one direction but very little resistance, when flowing in the reverse direction.

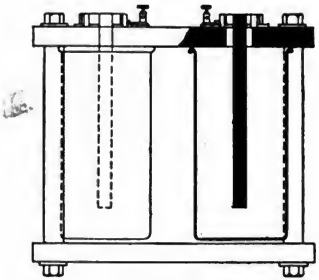
Ques. What is the effect when a Nodon cell is supplied with alternating current?

Ans. Half of the wave will be suppressed and an intermittently pulsating current will result as shown in fig. 2,077.

Digitized by Google



PLAN



ELEVATION

FIGS. 2,080 and 2,081.—Two views of Nodon valve. This is an electrolytic rectifier in which the cathode is a rod of aluminum alloy held centrally in a leaden vessel which forms the anode and contains the electrolyte, a concentrated solution of ammonium phosphate. Only a short portion at the lower end of the cathode is utilized, the rest, which is rather smaller in diameter, being protected from action by an enclosing glass sleeve. The current density at the cathode ranges from 5 to 10 amp. per sq. dm. In the larger sizes, the cells are made double, and a current of air is kept circulating between the walls by means of a motor driven fan. In order to utilize both halves of the supply wave, the Gratz method of connection is adopted. The maximum efficiency is obtained at about 140 volts, and the efficiency lies between 65 and 75 per cent., and is practically independent of the frequency between the limits of 25 ~ and 200 ~. Above a pressure of 140 volts, the efficiency falls off very rapidly, owing to breakdown of the film. The pressure difference is high, being over 90 per cent. at full load. Temperature largely influences the action of the valve, and should never exceed 122° Fahr.

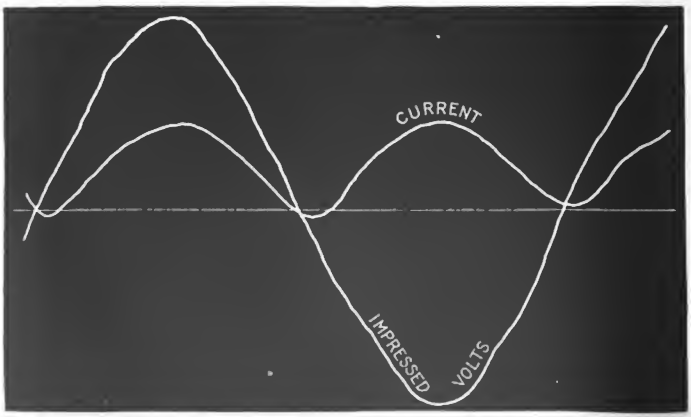


FIG. 2,082.—Oscillograph record from Nodon valve showing original supply voltage and the corresponding pulsating current at the terminals of such a valve.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How may both halves of the alternating waves be utilized?

Ans. By coupling a series of cells in opposed pairs as in fig. 2,080.

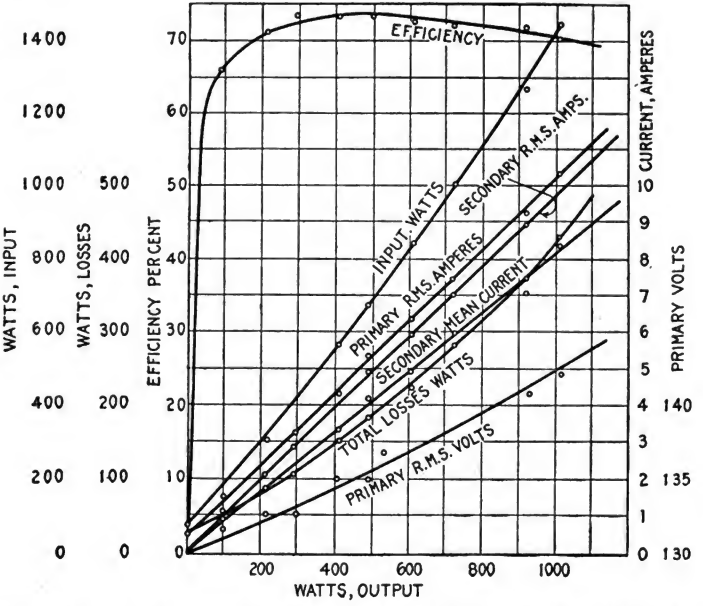


FIG. 2,083.—Performance curves of five ampere Nodan valve. Constant secondary voltage test. Loaded on non-inductive resistances. Frequency 50. Maximum power factor on valve .7.

Ques. Upon what does the efficiency of the film depend?

Ans. Upon the temperature.

It should not for maximum efficiency exceed 86 degrees Fahr. There is also a certain critical voltage above which the film breaks down locally, giving rise to a luminous and somewhat disruptive discharge accompanied by a rapid rise of temperature and fall in efficiency.

Digitized by Google

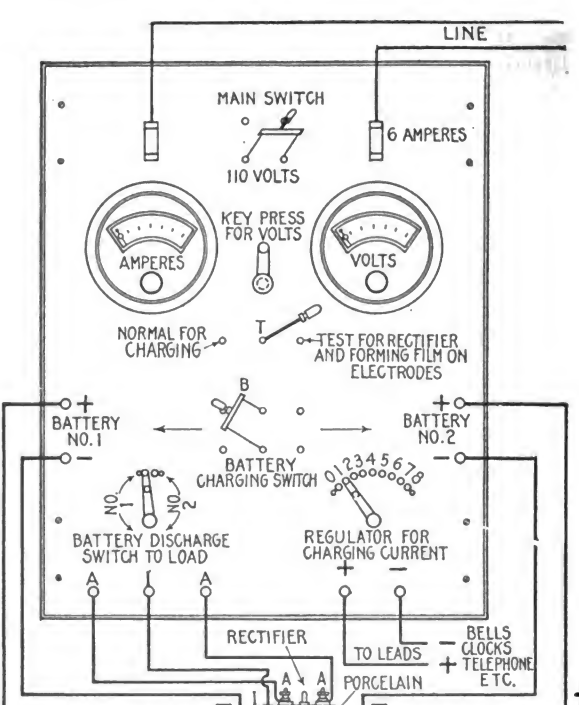
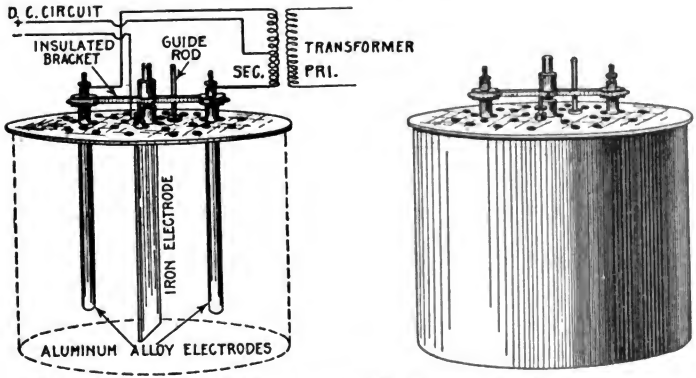


FIG. 2,084.—Mohawk electrolytic rectifier and switchboard; diagram showing connections for charging storage battery. **Operating instructions:** After assembling battery as in fig. 2,085, the **film** must be formed on the aluminum alloy electrodes so that the rectifier will pass current only in the right direction. Open switch B, close switch T to the **right**; discharge lever can be in any position; charging regulator lever must be to the extreme left, the zero position; now close main switch M. Moving regulator lever R from the **zero** position to the first button or contact, let it remain there for a time, **not less than five min**.

Digitized by Google

Ques. When an electrolytic rectifier is not in use for some time what happens?

Ans. The electrodes will loose the film.



FIGS. 2,085 and 2,086.—Mohawk electrolytic rectifier. To put in commission, clean out the jar. Fill with distilled or rain water. Add six pounds of electro salts, stir and after all salts are dissolved place the cover in position. The specific gravity of the solution should be 1.125. The middle iron electrode must hang straight down in the solution and not touch either of the other aluminum alloy electrodes. The aluminum alloy electrodes are mounted on an insulated bracket that slides up and down on a ¼" rod. This rod screws in the hole taped in the middle of the cover. The electrodes give the best results only when perfectly smooth, Should they get rough, covered with a deposit or a white coating remove from the solution, and clean with fine sand paper. Finish with fine sand paper. Form the film again and the electrodes will be as good as new. Clean iron electrode occasionally.

---

utes; *this is important,* as the proper rectification of the current depends on the film formed on the aluminum rods. The ammeter after the first rush of current may not show any current as passing, or it may show a reverse current. In the latter case, leave the contact finger on the first button until the needle comes back to zero. This may take some time, but the needle will eventually come back; it also indicates that the film is properly formed when the needle returns to zero. Move regulator R to the extreme right step by step and note that the ammeter continues to return to zero, which indicates that the film on rectifier electrodes is formed properly. Move regulator R to zero, close switch T to the left in normal charging position. Close charging switch B. To regulate the flow of current through the battery move charging lever R to the right slowly until ammeter indicates the correct charging current. After the batteries are charged and ready for use, discharge lever can be moved to connect either set of storage batteries to the load terminal. The voltage of the batteries can be read at any time, by pressing the strap key. The discharge lever connects the batteries to the volt meter and it is possible by moving it to measure the voltage of either set of battery, charging or discharging. Trouble in the rectifier demonstrates itself by the solution becoming heated. The condition of the rectifier can be tested any time in a few seconds by opening switch B and closing switch T to the right. If the rectifier be in proper condition the ammeter will read zero. And if it be not rectifying and permitting A.C. current to flow through the rectifier, the ammeter will read negative or to the left of the zero. An old solution that is heating and not rectifying properly will turn a reddish brown color.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What must be done in such case?

Ans. The electrodes must be reformed.

Ques. How is the loss of film prevented?

Ans. By removing the electrodes from the electrolyte and drying them.

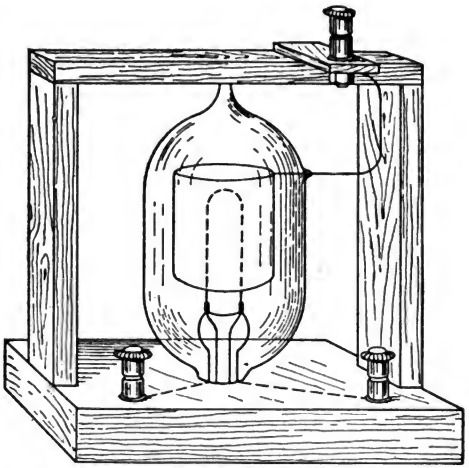


FIG. 2,087.—The Fleming oscillation valve. It depends for its action on the well-known Edison effect in glow lamps. The valve consists of a carbon filament glow lamp with a simple central horseshoe filament. Around this filament inside the exhausted bulb is fixed a small cylinder of nickel, which is connected by means of a platinum wire sealed through the bulb to a third terminal. **The valve is used as follows:** *The carbon loop is made incandescent by a suitable battery. The circuits in which the oscillations are to be detected is joined in series with a sensitive mirror galvanometer, the nickel cylinder terminal and the negative terminal of the filament of the valve being used.* The galvanometer will then be traversed by a series of rapid discharges all in the same direction, those in the opposite direction being entirely suppressed.

Ques. What attention must be given to the electrolyte?

Ans. Water must be added from time to time to make up for evaporation.

This is necessary to keep the solution at the proper density.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is the indication that the rectifier needs recharging?

Ans. Excessive heating of the solution with normal load.

Ques. What is the indication that a rectifier is passing alternating current?

Ans. It will heat, and if the solution be very weak, it will cause a buzzing sound.

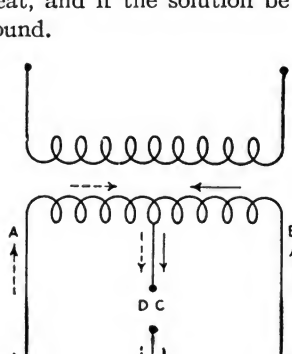


FIG. 2,088.—The Churcher valve. This is of the modified Nodon type. It differs from the latter in that it has two cathodes of aluminum and an anode of lead or platinum, suspended in the one cell. This permits the complete utilization of both halves of the supply wave with one cell instead of the four required in the Gratz method. The connections of such a cell are shown in the figure. The secondary of the transformer carries a central tapping, and is connected through the direct current load to the central anode, while each of the cathodes is connected to the ordinary terminals of the transformer itself. The practical limits of the cell are 50 volts direct current, or 130 volts at the transformer terminals AB. F, is the anode; C, cathode I; D, cathode II.

Ques. What harm is caused by operating a rectifier with a weak electrolyte?

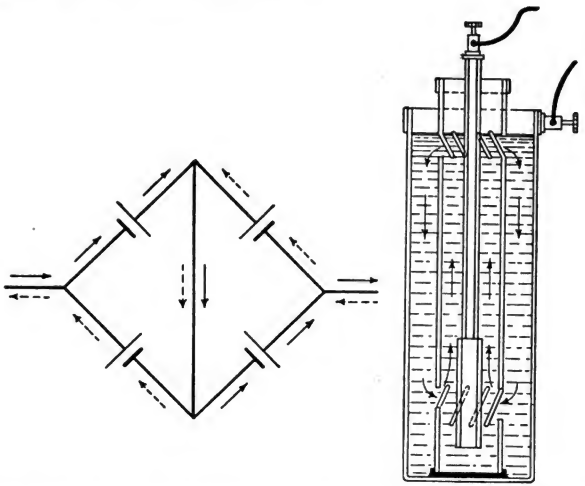
Ans. The electrodes will eat away.

A few of the so called electrolytic valves are here briefly described:

Digitized by Google

The Audion Valve.—This valve was invented by De Forest in 1900 and is practically identical with the Fleming oscillation valve, the latter being illustrated in fig. 2,087.

Grisson Valve.—In this valve the cathode is a sheet of aluminum, and the anode, a sheet of lead, supported, in the original form, horizontally in a vessel containing the electrolyte, consisting of a solution of sodium carbonate. Cooling is effected by circulating water through metal tubes in the electrolyte itself.



FIGS. 2,089 and 2,090.—The De Faria valve. This is an aluminum lead rectifier. The cathode is a hollow cylinder of aluminum placed concentrically in a larger cylinder of lead, and the whole immersed in electrolyte of sodium phosphate in an ebonite containing vessel. Cooling is effected by promoting automatic circulation of the electrolyte by providing the lead cylinder with holes near its extremities; the heated electrolyte then rises in the lead cylinder, passes out at the upper holes, is cooled by contact with the walls of the containing vessel, and descends outside the lead cylinder. It is claimed that this cooling action is sufficient to allow of a current density of 8 amp. per sq. dm. of aluminum.

Pawlowski Valve.—This is an electrolytic valve employing a solid electrolyte. It consists of a copper plate which has been coated with a crystalline layer of carefully prepared copper hemisulphide, prepared by melting sulphur and copper together out of contact with air. The prepared plate is placed in contact with an aluminum sheet and the combination is then *formed* by submitting it to an alternating pressure until sparking, which at first occurs, ceases.

Digitized by Google

Giles Electric Valve.—This consists of a combination of spark gaps and capacity used to protect electrical apparatus against damage due to atmospheric discharges and resonance surges. The spark gaps are formed between the edges of sharp rimmed discs of non-arcing metal. These discs are insulated from each other, and from the central tube, which provides a support for the apparatus and also an earth. The condenser effect is obtained by means of the annular discs and the tube; an adjustable spark gap, a high resistance, and a fuse all connected in series, complete the valve.



FIG. 2,091.—75 light Westinghouse-Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier constant current regulating transformer. View showing assembly in case.

Buttner Valve.—It is of the Nodon type employing a cathode of magnesium-aluminum alloy, and probably iron or lead as anode, with an electrolyte of ammonium borate. Buttner claims that the borate is superior to the phosphate in that it does not attack iron, and will keep in good working condition for longer periods.

Digitized by Google

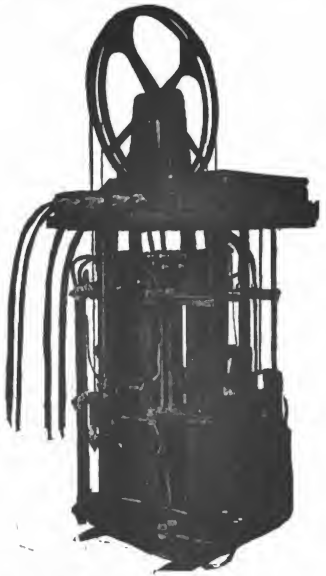


FIG. 2,092.—75 light Westinghouse-Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier constant current regulating transformer with case removed. The transformer is of the repulsion coil type, oil cooled and oil insulated. It is so arranged as to give a constant secondary current and to insulate the arc lines from the primary circuit. The regulating transformer contains two stationary secondary coils and two moving primary coils balanced against each other. Each secondary coil of the 75 light regulator is wound in two parts, owing to the use of two rectifier bulbs in series in outfits of this capacity. The repulsion between the primary and secondary coils changes the distance between them according to the variation of load, and the induced current in the secondary is thus kept constant. An increase in current causes the primary and secondary coils to separate, and a decrease in current permits them to approach each other, until the normal balance is restored. The moving coils are hung from sheave wheels having roller bearings and are balanced so that they are sensitive to the slightest impulse tending to separate them or draw them closer together. (See figs. 1,981-2, and 2,111.) The windings are insulated for a voltage considerably in excess of that existing in normal service. Several taps are provided to take care of different voltages and wave forms. A combination of taps will be found which will be suitable for any wave form coming within the American Institute of Electrical Engineer's limits for a sine wave. The secondary coils are also provided with taps for 85 per cent. of normal load, so that less than normal load can be taken care of at a good power factor. Any part of the full load can be carried temporarily with the full load connections of the transformer, but at permanent light loads the power factor and efficiency will be improved by using the 85 per cent. connections. Standard regulating transformers are wound for 6.6 and 4 amperes, and for primary circuits of 220, 440, 1,100 2,200, 6,600 and 13,200 volts. Regulators can be specially wound for 5.5 amperes. For three phase circuits three regulators can be used, one on each phase, or they can be furnished in pairs with an auxiliary auto-transformer to give a balanced load. The regulators can be connected, in cases where the unbalancing is not objectionable, to separate phases.

Digitized by Google

Mercury Vapor Rectifiers.—The Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier, as shown in fig. 2,093 consists essentially of a *hermetically sealed glass bulb filled with mercury vapor and provided with four electrodes.* The two upper electrodes are of solid material and the two lower of mercury.

The solid electrodes are the positive electrodes; the mercury electrodes are the negative electrodes.

The mercury pools of the two lower electrodes are not in contact when the bulb is vertical, but the bulb is so mounted

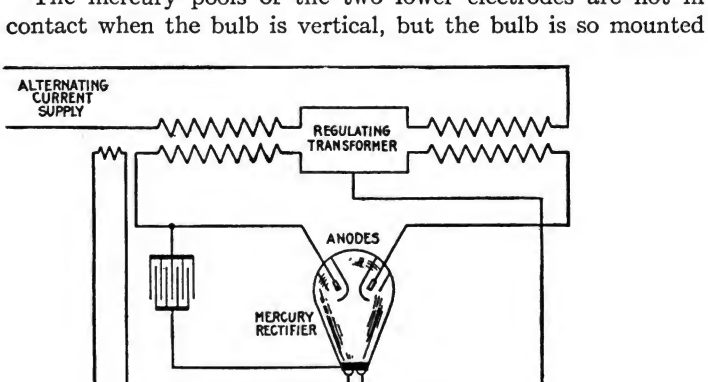


FIG. 2,093.—Diagram of connections of Westinghouse-Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier arc light circuit.

that it can be tilted to bring these two pools temporarily in contact for starting.

The bulb contains highly attenuated vapor of mercury, which, like other metal vapors, is an electrical conductor under some conditions. The positve electrodes are surrounded by this

Digitized by Google

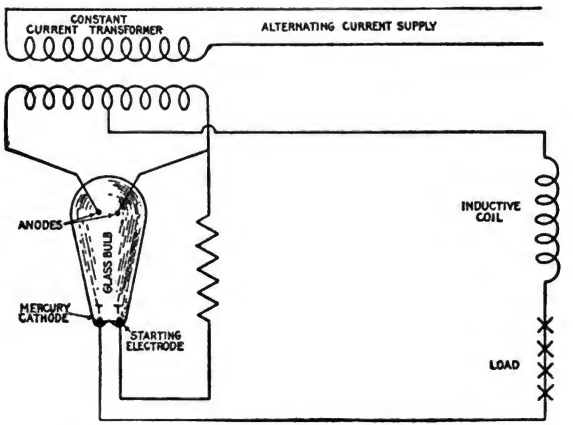


FIG. 2,094.—Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier. The mercury vapor rectifier as developed by Peter Cooper Hewitt for changing alternating current into direct current is the result of a series of careful experiments and investigations of the action going on in his mercury vapor lamp for electric lighting used on direct current circuits only. While many attempts have been made to produce an alternating current lamp, up to the present time, they have been unsuccessful. The difficulty of operating a lamp on the alternating current circuit lies in the fact that while a current will flow freely through it in one direction, when the current reverses the negative electrode or cathode acts as an electric valve and stops the current, thus breaking the circuit and putting out the light. By following up this new electrical action, Hewitt applied the principle in the construction of a vacuum tube with suitable electrodes, and by using two electrodes of iron or graphite for the positive or incoming current and one of mercury for the negative or where the current leaves the tube, the circuits could be arranged so that a direct current would flow from the mercury electrode and be used for charging storage batteries, electro-chemical work or operating direct current flame arc lamps. As shown in the figure, **the rectifier consists essentially** *of a glass bulb into which are sealed two iron or graphite anodes and one mercury cathode, and a small starting electrode.* The bulb is filled with mercury vapor under low pressure. The action of this device depends on *the property of ionized mercury vapor of conducting electricity in one direction only.* **In operation** no current will flow until the starting or negative electrode resistance has been overcome by the ionization of the vapor in its neighborhood. To accomplish this, the voltage is raised sufficiently to cause the current to jump the gap between the mercury cathode and the starting cathode, or by bringing the cathode and starting electrode together in the vapor by tilting and then separating them, thus drawing out the arc. When this has been done, current will only flow from the anode to the mercury cathode, and not in the reverse direction. In order to maintain the action, a lag is produced in each half wave by the use of a reactive or sustaining coil; hence the current never reaches its zero value, otherwise the arc would have to be restarted. **There are two kinds of losses in the tube:** 1, *arcing, or leakage from one anode to the other,* and 2, *the mercury arc voltage drop.* This drop does not depend on the load, the energy represented by the drop being converted into heat, which is dissipated at the surface of the containing vessel. According to Steinmetz, the limit of voltage must be very high, as 36,000 volts has been rectified. The current output is limited principally by the leading-in wires to the electrodes, it being a difficult problem to seal into the glass container the large masses of metal required for the conduction of large currents. Frequency has but little influence. The direct current voltage ranges from 20 to 50 per cent. that of the arc supply. The life of the valve depends somewhat upon its size, being longer in the small sizes and never, with fair usage, less than 1,000 hours.

Digitized by Google

vapor. Current can readily pass from either of the solid electrodes to the mercury vapor and from it to the mercury electrode, but when the direction of flow tends to reverse, so that current would pass from the vapor to the solid electrode, there is a resistance at the surface of the electrode, which entirely prevents the flow of current.

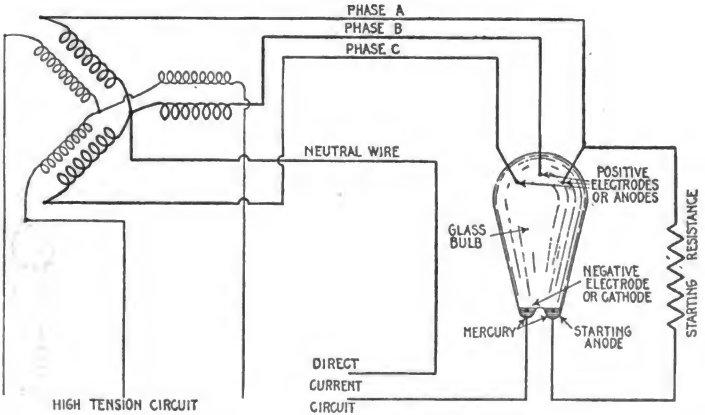
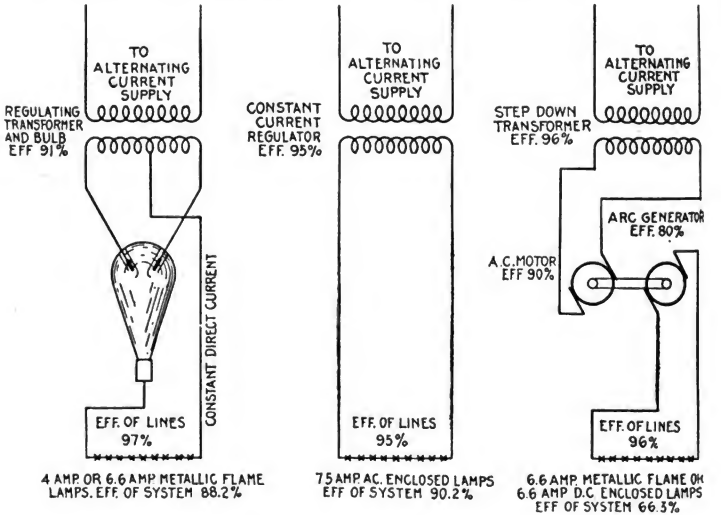


FIG. 2,095.—Three phase mercury arc rectifier. The rectifier bulb is provided with three positive electrodes or anodes, a negative electrode or cathode, and a starting anode, as shown. The three phase leads are connected to the anodes at the top of the bulb, a branch from one phase being brought down to the starting anode, a resistance being placed in the circuit to prevent excessive current on account of the proximity of the two lower electrodes. Since there is always a pressure on one of the three anodes in the right direction, a reactance coil is not necessary. The apparatus is started in the usual way by tilting.

The alternating current supply circuit is connected to the two positive electrodes as shown in the diagram, and as the electrodes will allow current to flow in only one direction and oppose any current flow in the opposite direction, the pulsations of the current pass alternately from one or the other of the positive electrodes into the mercury.

Digitized by Google

As these currents cannot pass from the vapor into either positive electrode, they are constrained to pass out all in one direction through the mercury electrode, from which they emerge as a uni-directional current. The positive electrodes of the rectifier thus act as check valves, permitting current to



FIGS. 2,096 to 2,098.—Westinghouse diagrams showing comparative efficiencies of different systems of series arc lighting.

pass into the mercury vapor but not allowing it to pass from the vapor to the solid electrodes.

Ques. What condition prevails before the bulb starts to rectify?

Ans. There appears to be a high resistance at the surface

Digitized by Google



FIG. 2,099. — Westinghouse Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier bulb. It consists essentially of a hermetically sealed glass bulb filled with highly attenuated vapor of mercury, and provided with electrodes. Its operation is fully explained in the accompanying text.



FIG. 2,100.—Westinghouse-Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier bulb and box. The life of the bulb is materially increased by operating it at certain temperatures and for this reason the bulbs in the arc light rectifier outfits are immersed in oil and mounted in the same tank with the regulating transformer. Two bulbs in series are used with the 75 light outfit. The bulb is mounted on tilting trunions in a box which can be lifted out through a door in the top of the tank without disconnecting any leads. The containing box has contacts on the bottom so arranged that when it is lowered into place, the bulb is automatically connected in circuit. To replace a defective bulb it is only necessary to lift out the containing box by its handle through the door in the top of the case and mount a new bulb in it, after which the box can be lowered into place. It is desirable to have at each installation, a spare bulb box in which a bulb can be kept, connected ready for use. If this be done, it is only necessary, in case of trouble with the bulb, to withdraw the old bulb and box and replace them with the spare set. This avoids having the lamps out of service.

Digitized by Google

of the mercury, which must be broken down so that the current can pass.

Ques. What is this apparent surface resistance called?

Ans. *The negative electrode resistance.*

Ques. What must be done before any current can pass?

Ans. The negative electrode resistance must be overcome.

When once started the current will continue to flow, meeting with practically no resistance as long as the current is uninterrupted.

Ques. What will happen if the current be interrupted even for the smallest instant of time?

Ans. The negative electrode resistance will re-establish itself, and stop the operation of the bulb.

Ques. How is the negative electrode resistance overcome?

Ans. The bulb is tilted or shaken so that the space between the mercury electrodes is bridged by the mercury.

Ques. What happens when the bulb is tilted?

Ans. Current then passes between the two mercury electrodes from the starting transformer and the little stream of mercury which bridges the space between the electrodes breaks with a spark as the bulb is returned to its vertical position.

Ques. What duty is performed by the spark?

Ans. It breaks down the negative electrode resistance.

Ques. What conditions are now necessary for continuous operation of the rectifier?

Ans. The rectifier will now operate indefinitely as long as the current supply is uninterrupted and the direct current load does not fall below the minimum required for the arc.

Digitized by Google



Ques. Is the rectifier self-starting?

Ans. After the bulb has been started a few times, as described above, it becomes self-starting, so that under all ordinary operating conditions it will commence to operate when the switches connecting it with the load and the alternating current supply are closed.

Ques. What provision is made in the Westinghouse - Cooper Hewitt rectifier to render it self-starting?

Ans. It is rendered self-starting by means of a condenser.

Ques. Describe the arrangement and operation of the condenser.

Ans. The condenser is connected between one of the positive electrodes and a coating of tinfoil outside

FIG. 2,101.—General Electric 50 light double tube combined unit series mercury arc rectifier outfit; front view. This unit consists of a constant current transformer, reactance, tube tank and exciting transformer mounted on a common base; also a static discharger and pilot lamp mounted on top of the transformer. This arrangement makes the rectifier outfit, with the exception of the switchboard panel, complete in itself.

Digitized by Google

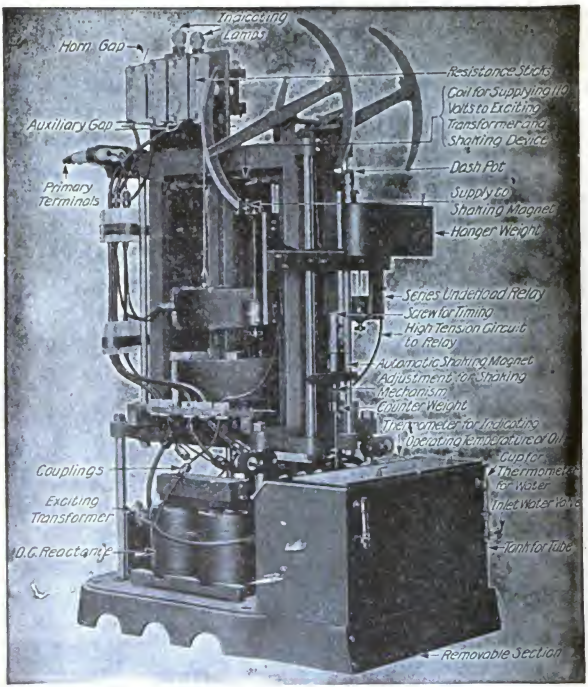
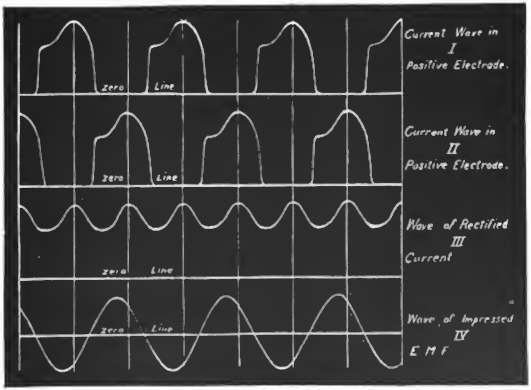


FIG. 2,102.—General Electric 2,200 volts, 60 cycle, primary, 6.6 ampere, secondary, 75 light, double tube mercury arc rectifier outfit with automatic shaking device, the case being removed to show parts. The constant current transformer is air cooled. The winding which supplies energy for the exciter transformer is located at the top of, and around the core of the constant current transformer. The exciting transformer is mounted on the base of the constant current transformer inside of the casing. It supplies low pressure currents to the starting anodes of the rectifier tube. This current establishes an auxiliary arc when the tube is shaken, which is necessary in order to start the rectifier. The exciting transformer is wound for 110 volts and it consumes about 200 volt-amperes. The direct current reactance is mounted on the base of the transformer and enclosed in the same casing. It is connected in series with the lamp load and its function is to reduce the pulsations of the circuit to a value most satisfactory for operation. The tube tank for holding the oil is mounted on the same base as the transformer. It is provided with a cooling coil; a tube carrier is provided for raising or lowering the tube in the tank. A thermometer is provided to gauge the temperature of the oil in the tank. The static dischargers consisting of horn gaps in series with resistance, are connected between the anodes and the cathode in order to protect the tubes and other apparatus from excessive electrical strains. The horn gaps open the circuit after discharge, and in case the resistance becomes damaged the discharge passes across the spark gap provided, thereby shunting the resistance.

Digitized by Google

the part of the bulb containing the mercury, and induces static sparks on the surface of the mercury which break down the negative electrode resistance.

The action of the rectifier will be better understood by reference to the diagram of current waves and impressed pressure as shown in figs. 2,103 to 2,106.



FIGS. 2,103 to 2,106.—Diagram of current waves and impressed pressure of Westinghouse-Cooper Hewitt mercury vapor rectifier. The whole of the alternating current wave on both sides of the zero line is used. The two upper curves in the diagram show the current waves in each of the two positive electrodes, and the resultant curve III represents the rectified current flowing from the negative electrode. Curve IV shows the impressed alternating current pressure. It is evident that if the part of the wave below the zero line were reversed, the resulting current would be a pulsating direct current with each pulsation varying from zero to a positive maximum. Such a current could not be maintained by the rectifier, because as soon as the zero value was reached the negative electrode resistance of the rectifier would be re-established and the circuit would be broken. To avoid this condition, reactance is introduced into the circuit, which causes an elongation of current waves so that they overlap before reaching the zero value. The overlapping of the rectifier current waves reduces the amplitude of the pulsations and produces a comparatively smooth direct current as shown in curve III. In this way the whole of the alternating current is transformed to direct current because each of the alternations in both directions is alternately rectified.

Ques. Describe a mercury vapor rectifier outfit for series arc lighting.

Ans. It consists of a constant current regulating transformer,

Digitized by Google

a rectifier bulb, and a control panel containing the necessary switches, meters, etc. The transformer and rectifier bulb are mounted in the same tank.

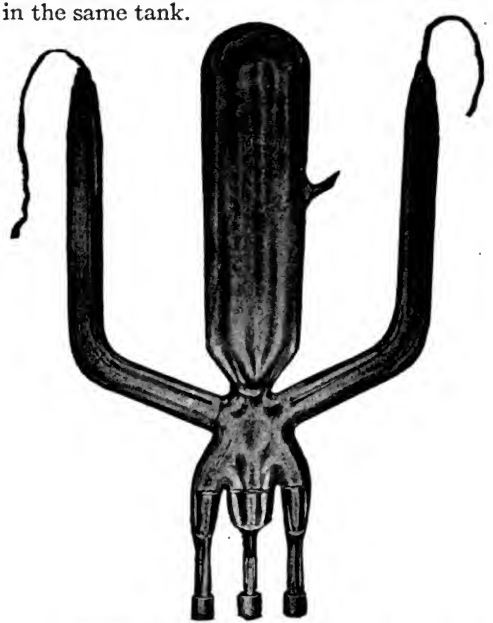


FIG. 2,107.—General Electrical rectifier tube as used on series mercury arc rectifier. The tube rectifies the alternating current into direct current. It consists of an exhausted glass vessel containing one anode or positive terminal in each of the two upper arms, two mercury starting anodes and a cathode or negative terminal of mercury at the bottom of the tube. It is submerged in oil and supported in a removable carrier. The tube is put into operation by slightly shaking it. In the combined unit set, this shaking is accomplished by an electromagnet mounted above the tube tank and operated from a pull button switch on the panel. An automatic shaker is sometimes installed which will automatically start the tube when the set is started, or if its operation should become interrupted while in service. The energy for the operation of this magnet (110 volts alternating current) is obtained from the small auxiliary winding on the main transformer which also supplies energy to the exciting transformer. The oil in which the tube is placed is cooled by a circulation of water through the cooling coils on the inside of the tube tank. The amount of water necessary for cooling the rectifier tubes varies according to local conditions, depending upon the temperature of the water and that of the air in the station but under the most favorable conditions no water is required. As rectifiers are commonly installed in steam driven stations, the drip from the tube tanks is usually piped to the boiler supply thereby eliminating any loss for cooling water.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Describe the construction and operation of the mercury arc* rectifier shown in fig. 2,108.

Ans. Fig. 2,108 is an elementary diagram of connections. The rectifier tube is an exhausted glass vessel in which are two graphite anodes A, A′, and one mercury cathode B. The small starting electrode C is connected to one side of the alternating

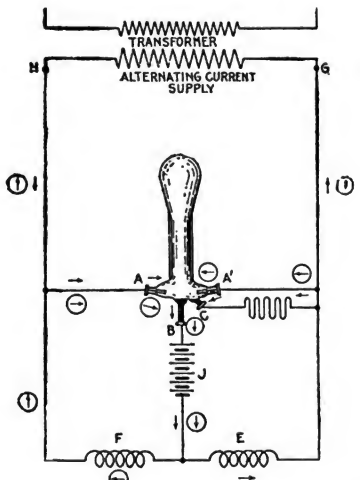


FIG. 2,108.—Elementary diagram of mercury arc rectifier connections. A.A., graphite anodes; B, mercury cathode; C, small starting electrode; D, battery connection; E and F, reactance coils, G and H, transformer terminals; J. battery.

circuit, through resistance; and by rocking the tube a slight arc is formed, which starts the operation of the rectifier tube. At the instant the terminal H of the supply transformer is positive, the anode A is then positive, and the arc is free to flow between A and B. Following the direction of the arrow still further, the

*NOTE.—The terms *vapor* and *arc* as applied to rectifiers, do not indicate a different principle; the Westinghouse Co. employ the former, and the General Electric Co., the latter.

Digitized by Google

FIG. 2,109.—Diagram showing connections of General Electric combined unit mercury arc **single tube** rectifier outfit with remote controlled non-automatic shaking device.

Digitized by Google

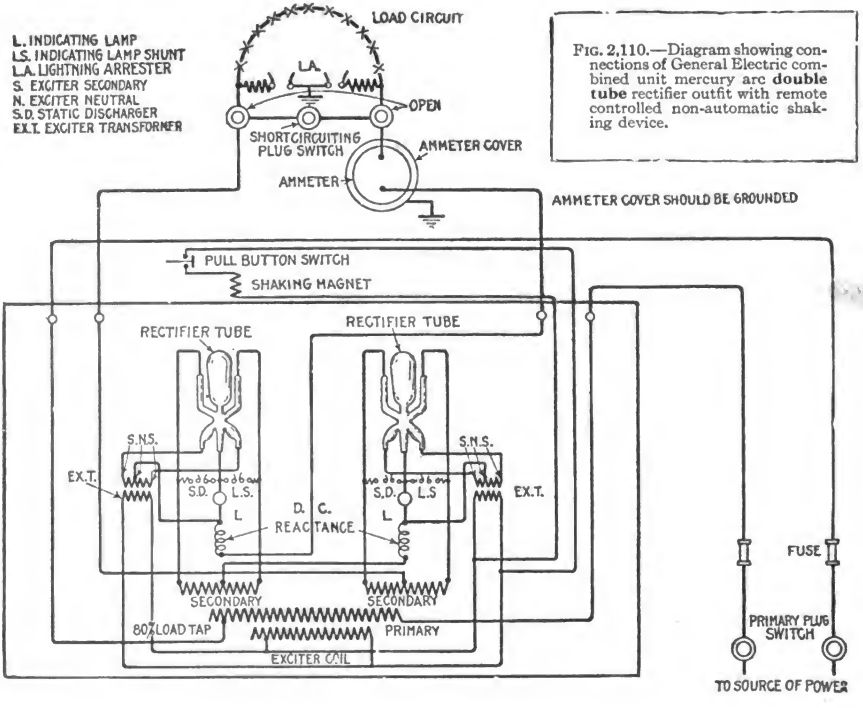


FIG. 2,110.—Diagram showing connections of General Electric combined unit mercury arc **double tube** rectifier outfit with remote controlled non-automatic shaking device.

current passes through the battery J, through one-half of the main reactance coil E, and back to the negative terminal G of the transformer. When the impressed voltage falls below a value sufficient to maintain the arc against the reverse pressure of the arc and load, the reactance E, which heretofore has been charging, now discharges, the discharge current being in the same

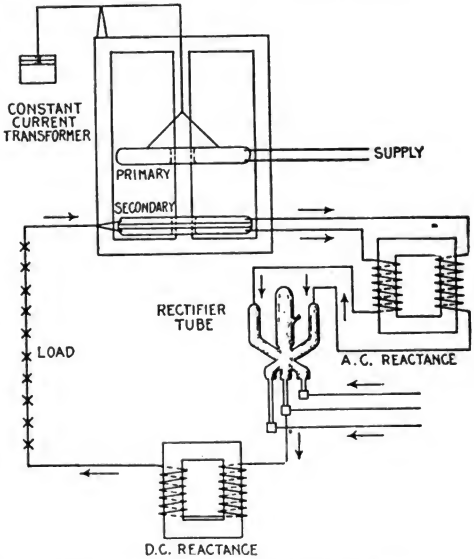


FIG. 2,111.—Diagram showing connections of General Electric series mercury arc rectifier.

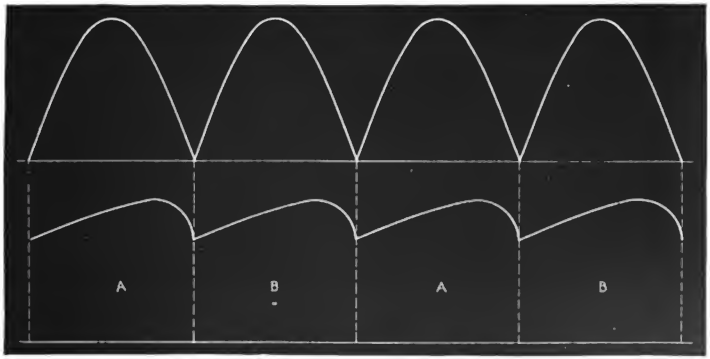
direction as formerly. This serves to maintain the arc in the rectifier tube until the pressure of the supply has passed through zero, reversed, and built up such a value as to cause the anode A to have a sufficiently positive value to start the arc between it and the cathode B. The discharge circuit of the reactance

Digitized by Google

coil E is now through the arc A′B instead of through its former circuit. Consequently the arc A′B is now supplied with current, partly from the transformer, and partly from the reactance coil E. The new circuit from the transformer is indicated by the arrows enclosed in circles.

Ques. How is a mercury arc rectifier started?

Ans. A rectifier outfit with its starting devices, etc., is shown in figs. 2,114 to 2,116. To start the rectifier, close in order named



FIGS. 2,112 and 2,113.—Diagram of current waves showing effect of reactance coil. If the alternating current wave could be rectified without the use of the reactance coil, the direct current produced would consist of a series of impulses which would rise and fall from the zero line as illustrated in fig. 2,112. The action of the reactance coil not only maintains the current through the tube while the supply current is passing through zero, but helps to smooth out the pulsations of the direct current which is passing out of the cathode terminal of the tube to the batteries, or other direct current apparatus put in its circuit. The smoothing out effect of the reactance is shown in fig. 2,113. It will be seen from the diagram that the current does not drop down to zero and the pulsations of the direct current are greatly reduced. The waves A, A, etc., are from the positive waves of the alternating current supply, while B, B, are from the negative waves, and together they form the rectified current, flowing in the same direction to the external direct current circuit shown at B in the diagram, fig. 2,108.

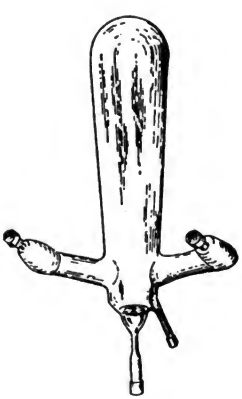
line switch and circuit breaker; hold the starting switch in opposite position from normal; rock the tube gently by rectifier shaker. When the tube starts, as shown by greenish blue light, release

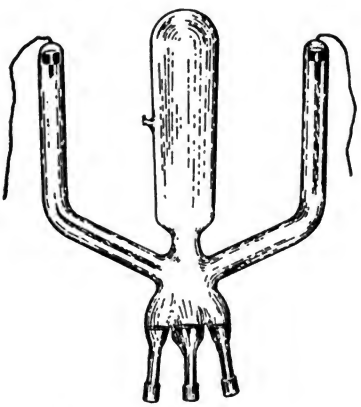
Digitized by Google

FIGS. 2,114 to 2,116.—General Electric mercury arc rectifier outfit, or charging set. The cut shows front, rear, and side views of the rectifier, illustrating the arrangement on a panel, of the rectifier tube with its connection and operating devices.

Digitized by Google

starting switch and see that it goes back to normal position. Adjust the charging current by means of fine regulation switch on the left; or, if not sufficient, by one button of coarse regulation switch on the right The regulating switch may have to be adjusted occasionally during charge, if it be desired to maintain charging amperes approximately constant.





FIGS. 2,117 and 2,118.—General Electric mercury arc bulbs or tubes for 200 and 10,000 volt circuits.

Ques. In the manufacture of rectifiers, could other metals be used for the cathode in place of mercury?

Ans. Yes.

Ques. Why are they not used?

Ans. Because, on account of the arc produced, they would gradually wear away and could not be replaced conveniently.

Digitized by Google

In the case of mercury, the excess vapor is condensed to liquid form in the large glass bulb or condensing chamber of the tube and gravitates back to the cathode, where it is used over and over again.

Ques. In the operation of rectifiers, how is the heat generated in the bulb dissipated?

Ans. In small rectifier sets the heat generated is dissipated



FIG. 2,119.—General Electric series mercury arc rectifier outfit; view showing method of replacing a tube. The illustration also shows tube carrier and drip tray.

through the tube to the air, and in large tubes such as used in supplying 40 to 60 kw. for constant current flaming arc lights operating at 4 or 6.6 amperes, the tubes are immersed in a

Digitized by Google

tank of oil, and cooled similar to the arrangement used for oil insulated water cooled transformers.

Ques. What results are obtained with oil cooled tubes?

Ans. In practice it is found that the life of oil cooled tubes is greatly increased and temperature changes do not affect the ability to start up as in the air cooled tubes.

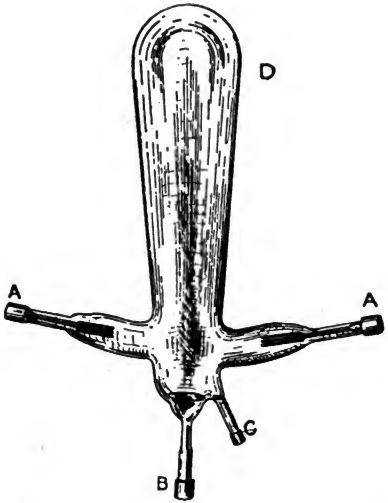


FIG. 2,120.—General Electric 100 volt mercury arc rectifier tube. A,A, anodes; B, cathode; C, starting anode; D, tube or bulb.

Ques. In the operation of a rectifier, name an inherent feature of the mercury arc.

Ans. A reverse pressure of approximately 14 volts is produced, which remains nearly constant through changes of load,

Digitized by Google

frequency, and voltage. Its effect is to decrease the commercial efficiency slightly on light loads.

Ques. What is the advantage of a rectifier set over a motor generator set?

Ans. Higher efficiency and lower first cost.

Ques. What is the capacity of a rectifier tube?

Ans. 40 to 50 amperes.

Ques. How is greater capacity obtained?

Ans. When a greater ampere capacity is required, two or more rectifier sets can be joined to one circuit.

The rectifier may be joined in series for producing an increased voltage or two tubes can be connected in series in a single set.

Ques. For what service is a rotary converter better adapted than a rectifier?

Ans. For power distribution and other cases where a great amount of alternating current is to be converted into direct current, the rotary converter or large motor generator sets are more practical.

Ques. For what service is a rectifier especially adapted?

Ans. It is very desirable for charging storage batteries for automobiles from the local alternating current lighting circuit.

When the consumer installs and operates the apparatus for his own use and wear, there is considerable saving over motor generator sets because a small one to two horse power motor generator outfit has an efficiency of only 40 to 50 per cent. while mercury vapor rectifiers will have from 75 to 80 per cent.

Ques. What precautions should be taken in installing a rectifier?

Ans. It should be installed in a dry place and care should be taken to avoid dangling wires near the tube to prevent

Digitized by Google

puncturing. If the apparatus be installed in a room of uniform moderate temperature very little trouble will be experienced in starting, while extreme cold will make starting more difficult.

***Electro-magnetic Rectifiers.**—Devices of this class consist essentially of a double contact rocker which rocks on pivot (midway between the contacts), in synchronism with the frequency of the alternating current, so changing the connections at the instants of reversals of the alternating current that a direct current is obtained.

Fig. 2,121 is a combined sketch and diagram of connections of a type of *electro-magnetic rectifier* that has been introduced for changing alternating into direct current. The actual apparatus consists of a box, with perforated metal sides, about ten inches square and six inches deep. This box contains the step down transformer P,S,S′, and the condensers K and K′, the magnets and contact making device about to be described being fixed on the polished slate top of the box, exactly as shown in the figure. The transformer primary winding P may be connected through a switch *s* with a pair of ways on the nearest distribution box, or to a plug connection or lamp-holder, and the apparatus will give a rectified current of 6 or 12 amperes at 20 volts, according to the size.

S and S′ is the secondary winding of the transformer, with a tapping *t* midway, joining it to a series circuit containing two alternating current electro-magnets E and E′, whose cores are connected by the long soft iron yoke Y. Pivoted at P′ is a steel bar SB, which is polarized by the two coils C and C′ the current being supplied by a cell A. Fixed

*NOTE.—The Edison electro-magnetic rectifier is described in detail in GUIDE No. 4, pages 942 to 945.

Digitized by Google

rigidly to SB, and moving with it, is a double contact piece CP with platinum contacts opposite similar ones on the fixed studs CS, CS′.

CP is flexibly connected through F to one of the direct current terminals T, to which also are joined up one coating of each condenser K and K′.

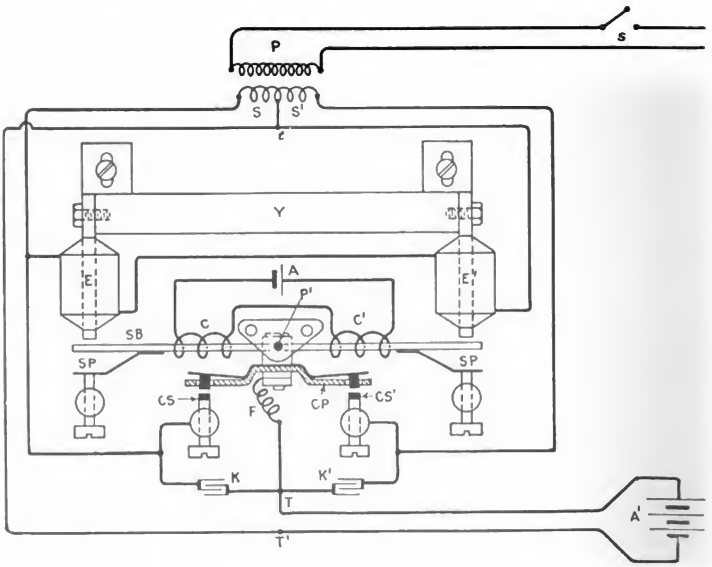


FIG. 2,121.—Diagram showing essential features of Premier Ampero electromagnetic rectifier. Details of construction and principles of operation are given in the accompanying text.

The other direct current terminal T′ is connected to the center of the transformer secondary at *t*; and CS and CS′ are respectively joined up to either end of the secondary winding and to the other coatings of the condensers.

Digitized by Google

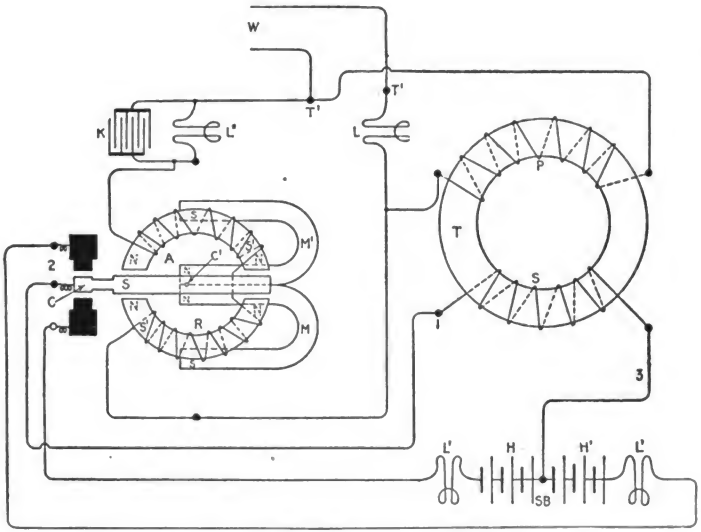


FIG. 2,122.—Diagram of General Electric (Batten) electro-magnetic rectifier. It is desirable for light and occasional service, where direct current is required but only an alternating supply is available, being used for charging storage batteries, exciting spark coils, performing electrolytic work, etc. The rectifier consists of a step down static transformer T, by means of which the circuit pressure is reduced to about 50 volts; also, a polarized relay R, the contact tongue C of which moves to one side or the other in sympathy with the alternations of the current in the primary winding P, the secondary current induced in the winding S being thereby rendered direct in the outer circuit. T', T' are the main terminals which are connected to the alternating current supply through the wires W. Lamps inserted at L are used as resistances in the primary circuit, the reduction of the voltage already alluded to being effected by this means. In charging storage batteries where a low pressure is required, a lamp (or lamps) should be connected in the secondary circuit as shown, S B being the storage battery, and L' L' the lamp resistances in series therewith, the battery has one end of the secondary S connected to its middle. Thus the alternating current leaving the transformer by the wire 1, passes by flexible connection 2, to the vibrating contact tongue C of the relay, the latter causing the currents in either direction to flow through the two halves H, H' of the battery, whence the current re-enters the secondary of the transformer by the wire 3. The soft iron core of the relay is in two halves S' S' and the armature A, carrying C, vibrates between their polar extremities. M, M' are two permanent magnets with their like poles together at the center C' where A is pivoted. Supposing these poles are north as indicated, the extremities of A will be south. The south ends of M, M being in juxtaposition with the centers of the soft iron cores S', S' will render their extremities facing the ends of A of north polarity. The windings on S', S' are connected in series with each other, and in shunt with P across the main terminals T', T'. Then because of the polarization of A and S', S', the former will vibrate rapidly in sympathy with the alternations of the current. K is a condenser shunted by a lamp resistance L'', this being found to improve the working of R.

Digitized by Google

When the alternating current circuit is broken, the springs SP, SP, carried by SB and bearing against the adjustable studs, keep SB, CS and CS′. The apparatus thus acts also as a *no voltage circuit breaker*, for should the supply fail, the storage battery A′ under charge will be left on open circuit.

The action of the device is briefly as follows:

Owing to the direct current in the magnetizing coils C and C′ one end of SB will be permanently of north and the other of south polarity; and since the polarities of the poles E and E′ will alternate with the alternations of the transformer secondary current, SB will rock rapidly on its pivot, and contact will be made by turns with CS and CS′.

The purpose of the condensers K and K′ is to reduce the sparking at these points. When contact is made at CS, the direct current terminals T and T′ are connected to the S half of the secondary winding; and when contact is made at CS′, they are connected to the S′ half. Thus a rectified unidirectional current will flow from T and T′, and it may be used to charge the battery A′, work a small motor or for various other purposes requiring direct current.

When the rectifier is used for charging storage batteries, the separate cell A may sometimes be dispensed with, the winding C,C′ being connected to one of the cells under charge.

The rectifier is adjusted to suit the frequency of the supply circuit by altering the distance of the poles of E and E′ from the ends of the polarized armature SB; and also by changing the tension of SP, SP by means of the screw studs against which they bear.

Digitized by Google

CHAPTER LV

ALTERNATING CURRENT SYSTEMS

The facility with which alternating current can be transformed from one voltage to another, thus permitting high pressure transmission of electric energy to long distances through small wires, and low pressure distribution for the operation of lighting systems and motors, gives a far greater variety of systems of transmission and distribution than is possible with direct current.

Furthermore, when the fact that two phase current can be readily transformed into three phase current, and these converted into direct current, and vice versa, by means of rotary converters and rectifiers, is added to the advantages derived by the use of high tension systems, it is apparent that the opportunity for elaboration becomes almost unlimited. These conditions have naturally tended toward the development of a great variety of systems, employing more or less complicated circuits and apparatus, and although alternating current practice is still much less definite than direct current work, certain polyphase systems are now being generally accepted as representing the highest standards of power generation, transmission and distribution.

A classification of the various alternating current systems, to be comprehensive, should be made according to several points of view, as follows:

Digitized by Google

1. With respect to the arrangement of the circuit, as

   a. Series;
   b. Parallel;
   c. Series parallel;
   d. Parallel series.

2. With respect to transformation, as

   Transformer;

3. With respect to the mode of transmitting the energy, as

   a. Constant pressure;
   b. Constant current.

4. With respect to the kind of current, as

   a. Single phase { two wire; three wire;
   b. Monocyclic
   c. Two phase { four wire; three wire; five wire;
   d. Three phase { six wire; three wire; four wire; star connection; delta connection; star delta connection; delta star connection;
   e. Multi-phase { of more than three phases;

5. With respect to transmission and distribution, as

   a. Frequency changing;
   b. Phase changing;
   c. Converter;
   d. Rectifier.

In order to comprehend the relative advantages of the various alternating current systems, it is first necessary to understand the principle of ***vector summation.***

Digitized by Google

Vector Summation.—This is a simple geometrical process for ascertaining the pressure at the free terminals of alternating current circuits. The following laws should be carefully noted:

1. *If two alternating pressures which agree in phase are connected together in series, the voltage at the free terminals of the circuit will be equal to their arithmetical sum, as in the case of direct currents.*

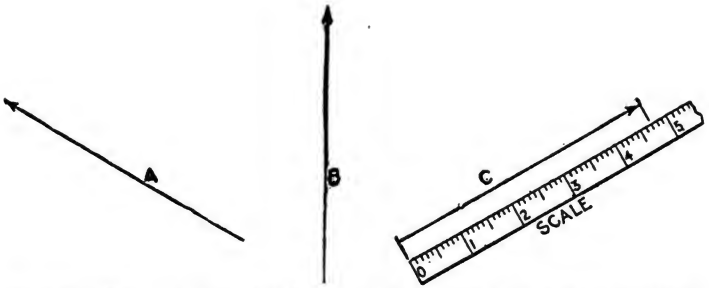


FIG. 2,123.—*Vectors.* **A vector is defined as:** *a line, conceived to have both a fixed length and a fixed direction in space, but no fixed position.* Thus A and B are lines, each having a fixed length, but no fixed direction. **By adding an arrow head** the direction is fixed and the line becomes a vector, as for example vector C. The fixed length is usually taken to represent a definite force, thus the fixed length of vector C is 4.7 which may be used to represent 4.7 lbs., 4.7 tons, etc., as may be arbitrarily assumed.

When there is phase difference between the two alternating pressures, connected in series, the following relation holds:

2. *The value of the terminal voltage will differ from their arithmetical sum, depending on the amount of their phase difference.*

When there is phase difference, the value of the resultant is conveniently obtained as explained below.

Ques. How are vector diagrams constructed for obtaining resultant electric pressure?

Ans. On the principle of the *parallelogram of forces.*

Digitized by Google

Ques. What is understood by the parallelogram of forces?

Ans. It is a graphical method of finding the resultant of two forces, according to the following law: *If two forces acting on a point be represented in direction and intensity by adjacent sides of a parallelogram, their resultant will be represented by the diagonal of the parallelogram which passes through the point.*

Thus in fig. 2,124, let OA and OB represent the intensity and direction of two forces acting at the point O. Draw AC and BC, respectively parallel to OB and OA, completing the parallelogram, then will OC,

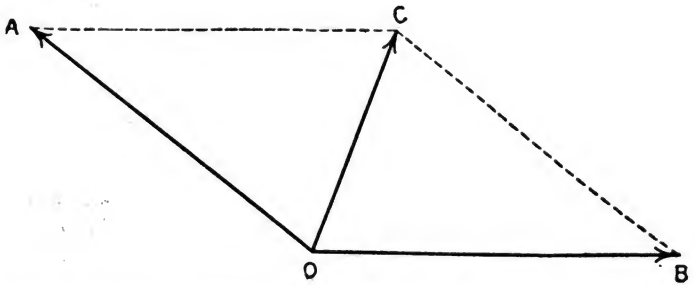


FIG. 2,124.—Parallelogram of forces. OC is the resultant of the two forces OA and OB. The length and direction of the lines represent the intensity and direction of the respective forces, the construction being explained in the accompanying text.

the diagonal from the point at which the forces act, represent the intensity and direction of the resultant, that is, of a force equivalent to the combined action of the forces OA and OB, these forces being called the *components* of the force OC.

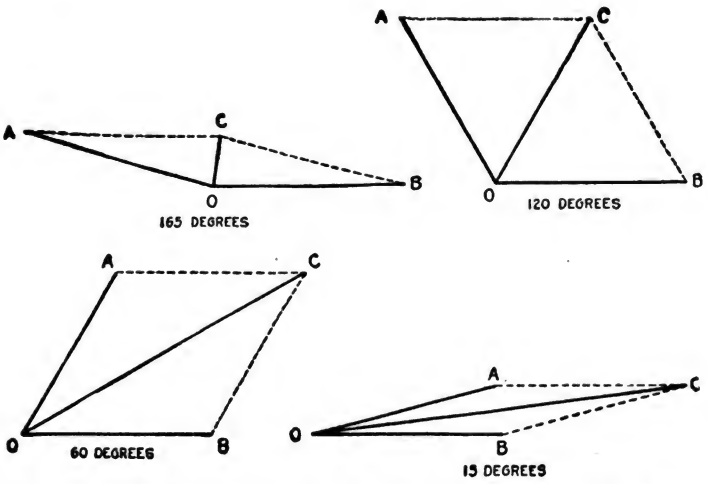
Ques. Upon what does the magnitude of the resultant of two forces depend?

Ans. Upon the difference in directions in which they act, as shown in figs 2,125 to 2,128.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Is the parallelogram of forces applied when the difference in direction or "phase difference" of two forces is 90 degrees?

Ans. It is sometimes more conveniently done by calculation according to the law of the right angle triangle.



FIGS. 2,125 to 2,128.—Parallelograms of forces showing increase in magnitude of the resultant of two forces, as their difference of direction, or electrically speaking, their *phase difference* is diminished. The diagrams show the growth of the resultant of the two equal forces OA and OB as the phase difference is reduced from 165° successively to 120, 60, and 15 degrees.

According to this principle, if two alternating pressures have a phase difference of 90 degrees they may be represented in magnitude and direction by the two sides of a right angle triangle as OA and OB in fig. 2,129; then will the hypotenuse AB represent the magnitude and direction of the resultant pressure. That is to say, the resultant pressure

$$AB = \sqrt{OA^2 + OB^2} \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad (1)$$

Digitized by Google

EXAMPLE.—A two phase alternator is wound for 300 volts on one phase and 200 volts on the other phase, the phase difference being 90°. If one end of each winding were joined so as to form a single winding around the armature, what would be the resultant pressure?

By calculation, substituting the given values in equation (1),

$$\text{Resultant pressure} = \sqrt{300^2+200^2} = \sqrt{130{,}000} = 360.6 \text{ volts.}$$

This is easily done graphically as in fig. 2,129 by taking a scale, say, 1″=100 volts and laying off OA=3″=300 volts, and at right angles OB=2″=200 volts, then by measurement AB=3.606″=360.6 volts.

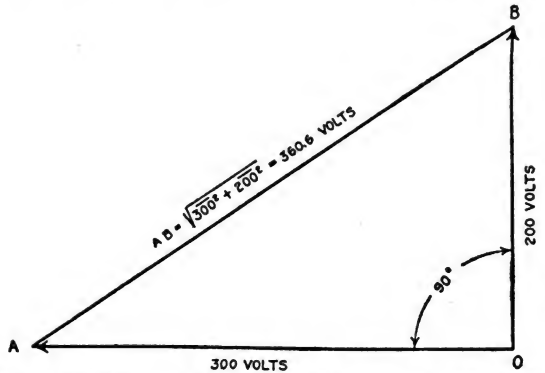


FIG. 2,129.—Method of obtaining the resultant of two component pressures acting at right angles by solution of right angle triangle. The equation of the right angle triangle is explained at length in Guide No. 5, page 1,070.

Ques. When the two pressures are equal and the phase difference is 90°, is it necessary to use equation (1) to obtain the resultant?

Ans. No. The resultant is obtained by simply multiplying one of the pressures by 1.41.

This is evident from fig. 2,130. Here the two pressures OA and OB are equal as indicated by the dotted arc. Since they act at right angles, OB is drawn at 90° to OA. According to the equation of the right angle triangle, the resultant $AB = \sqrt{1^2+1^2} = \sqrt{2} = 1.4142$ which ordinarily is taken as 1.41.

Digitized by Google

This value will always represent the ratio between the magnitude of the resultant and the two component forces, when the latter are equal, and have a phase difference of 90 degrees.

Forms of Circuit.—Alternating current systems of distribution may be classed, with respect to the kind of circuit used, in a manner similar to direct current systems, that is, they

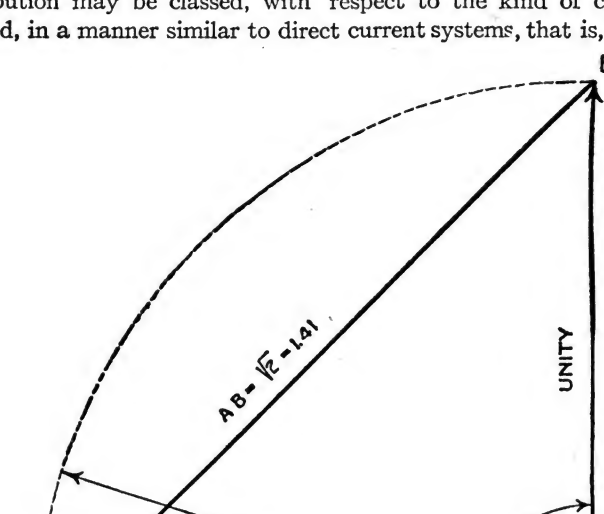


FIG. 2,130.—Diagram for obtaining the resultant of two equal component pressures acting at right angles.

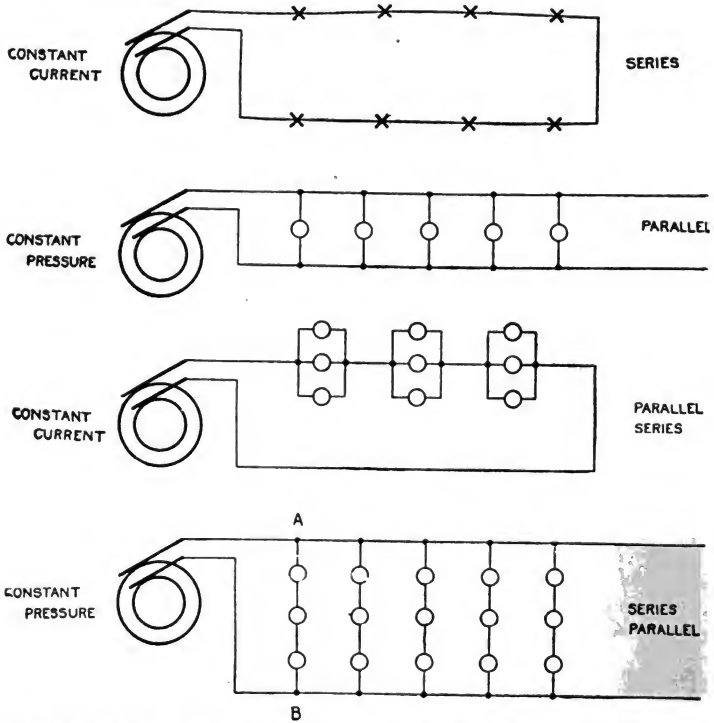
may be called series, parallel, series parallel, or parallel series systems, as shown in figs. 2,131 to 2,134.

Series Circuits.— These are used in arc lighting, and series incandescent lighting, a constant current being maintained; also for

Digitized by Google

constant current motors and generators supplying secondary circuits.

Several forms of constant current alternator, analogous to the Thompson-Houston and Brush series arc dynamos, have



FIGS. 2,131 to 2,134.—Various forms of circuit. These well known forms of circuit are used in both alternating and direct current systems. The simple series circuit, fig. 2,131, is suitable for constant current arc lighting. Fig. 2,132, shows the parallel constant pressure circuit; this form of circuit is largely used but is seldom connected direct to the alternator terminals, but to a step down transformer, on account of the low pressure generally required. Fig. 2,133 illustrates a parallel series circuit, and 2,134, a series parallel circuit.

Digitized by Google

been introduced. In the design of such alternators self-induction and armature reaction are purposely exaggerated; so that the current does not increase very much, even when the machine is short circuited. With this provision, no regulating device is required.



FIG. 2.135.—Typical American overhead 6,600 volt single phase interurban trolley line, Baltimore and Annapolis short line, Annapolis, Md.

An objectionable feature is that the voltage of a constant current alternator will rise very high if the circuit be opened, because it is then relieved of inductance drop and armature reaction.

To guard against a dangerous rise of voltage, a film cut out or equivalent device is connected to the terminal of each machine so that it will short circuit the latter if the voltage rise too high.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What advantage have constant current alternators over constant current dynamos?

Ans. The high pressure current is delivered to the external circuit without a commutator, hence there is no sparking difficulty.

The above relates to the revolving field type of alternator. There are, however, alternators in which the armature revolves, the current being delivered to the external circuit through collector rings and brushes. This type of alternator, it should be noted, is for moderate pressures, and moreover there is no interruption to the flow of the current such as would be occasioned by a tangential brush on a dynamo in passing from one commutator segment to the next.

In the revolving field machine, though the armature current be of very high pressure, the field current which passes through the brushes and slip rings is of low pressure and accordingly presents no transmission difficulties.

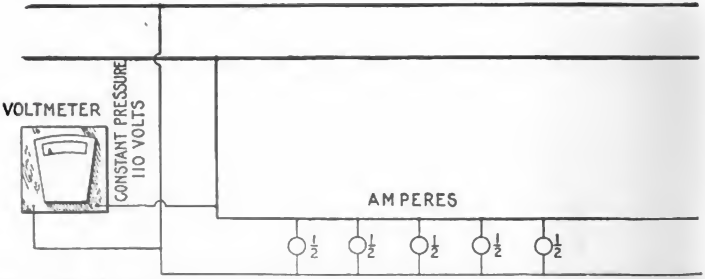


FIG. 2,136.—Diagram of parallel circuit. *It is a constant pressure circuit* and is very widely used for lighting and power. If each lamp take say ½ ampere, the current flowing in the circuit will vary with the number of lamp in operation; in the above circuit with all lamps on, the current is ½ × 5 = 2½ amperes.

Ques. State a disadvantage.

Ans. Some source of direct current for field excitation is required.

Ques. In a constant current series system, upon what does the voltage at the alternator depend?

Ans. The number of devices connected in the circuit, the volts required for each, and the line drop.

Digitized by Google

Parallel Circuits.—These are used for constant pressure operation. Such arrangement provides a separate circuit for each unit making them independent so that they may vary in size and each one can be started or stopped without interfering with the others. Parallel circuits are largely used for incandescent lighting, and since low pressure current is commonly used on such circuits they are usually connected to step down transformers, instead of direct to the alternators.

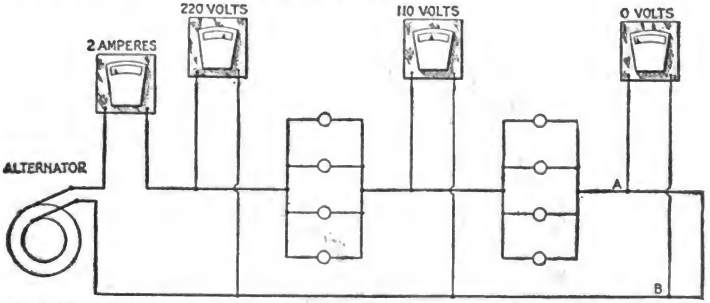


FIG. 2,137.—Diagram of **parallel series circuit,** *showing fall of pressure between units.* **This system** *is very rarely used;* it has the disadvantage that if a lamp filament break, the resistance of the circuit is altered and the strength of the current changed. The voltmeter shows the fall of pressure along the line. **It should be noted** that, although the meter across AB is shown as registering zero pressure, there is, strictly speaking, a slight pressure across AB, in amount, being that required to overcome the resistance of the conductor between A and B.

Parallel Series Circuits.—Fig. 2,137 shows the arrangement of a parallel series circuit and the pressure conditions in same. Such a circuit consists of groups of two or more lamps or other devices connected in parallel and these groups connected in series.

Such a circuit, when used for lighting, obviously has the disadvantage that if a lamp filament break, the resistance of the group is increased, thus reducing the current and decreasing the brilliancy of the lamps. This arrangement accordingly does not admit of turning off any of the lights.

Digitized by Google

Series Parallel Circuits.—The arrangement of circuits of this kind is shown in fig. 2,134; they are used to economize in copper since by joining groups of low pressure lamps in series they may be supplied by current at correspondingly higher pressure.

Thus, if in fig. 2,134, 110 volt, ½ ampere lamps be used, the pressure on the mains, that is, between any two points as A and B would be $110 \times 3 = 330$ volts. Each group would require ½ ampere and the five groups $\frac{1}{2} \times 5 = 2\frac{1}{2}$ amperes.



FIG. 2,138.—44,000 volt lines entering the Gastonia sub-station of the Southern Power Co The poles used are of the twin circuit two arm type, built of structural steel, their height varying from 45 to 80 feet, the latter weighing 9,000 pounds each. These poles have their bases weighted with concrete.

Transformer Systems.—Nearly all alternating current systems are transformer systems, since the chief feature of alternating current is the ease with which it may be transformed from one pressure to another. Accordingly, considerable economy in copper may be effected by transmitting the current at high pressure, especially if the distance be great, and, by means of step down transformers; reducing the voltage at points where the current is used or distributed.

Digitized by Google

Ordinarily and for lines of moderate length, current is sent out direct from the alternator to the line and transformed by step down transformers at the points of application.

With respect to the step down transformers, there are two arrangements:

1. Individual transformers;
2. One transformer for several customers.

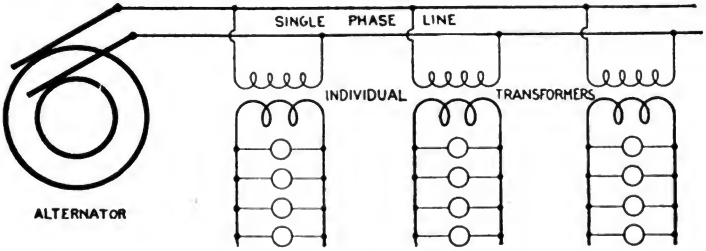


FIG. 2,139.—Diagram of transformer system with individual transformers. The efficiency is low, but such method of distribution is necessary in sparsely settled or rural districts.

Individual transformers, that is, a separate transformer for each customer is necessary in rural districts where the intervening distances are great as shown in fig. 2,139.

Ques. What are the objections to this method of distribution?

Ans. It requires the use of small transformers which are necessarily less efficient and more expensive per kilowatt than large transformers. The transformer must be built to carry, within its overload capacity, all the lamps installed by the customer, since all may be used occasionally.

Digitized by Google

Usually, however, only a small part of the lamps are in use, and those only for a small part of the day, so that the average load on the transformer is a very small part of its capacity. Since the core loss continues whether the transformer be loaded or not, but is not paid for by the customer, the economy of the arrangement is very low.

In the second case, where one large transformer may be placed at a distribution center, to supply several customers, as in fig. 2,140, the efficiency of the system is improved.

Ques. Why is this arrangement more efficient than when individual transformers are used?

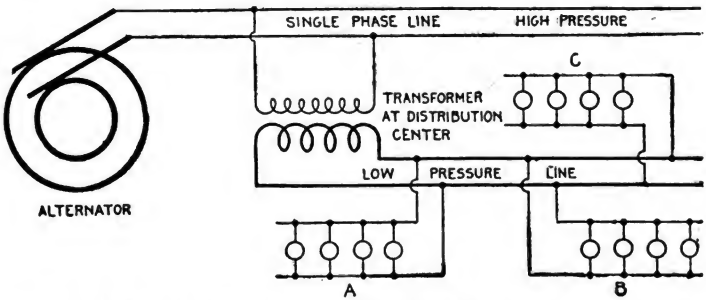


FIG. 2,140.—Diagram of transformer system with one transformer located at a distribution center and supplying several customers as A, B, and C. Such arrangement is considerably more efficient than that shown in fig. 2,139, as explained in the accompanying text.

Ans. Less transformer capacity is required than with individual transformers.

Ques. Why is this?

Ans. With several customers supplied from one transformer it is extremely improbable that all the customers will burn all their lamps at the same time. It is therefore unnecessary to install a transformer capable of operating the full load, as is necessary with individual transformers.

Ques. Does the difference in transformer capacity represent all the saving?

Digitized by Google

Ans. No; one large transformer is more efficient than a number of small transformers.

Ques. Why?

Ans. The core loss is less.

For instance, if four customers having 20 lamps each were supplied from a single transformer, the average load would be about 8 lamps, and at most not over 10 or 15 lamps, and a transformer carrying 30 to 35 lamps at over load would probably be sufficient. A 1,500 watt transformer would therefore be larger than necessary. At 3 per cent.

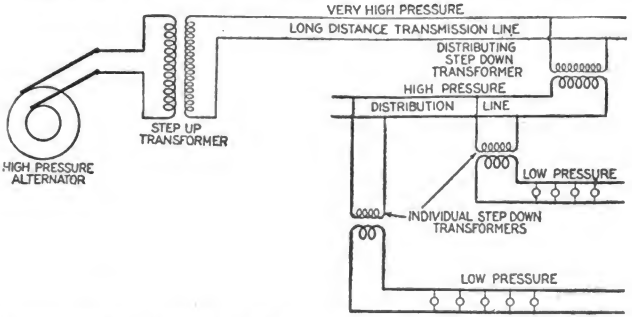


FIG. 2,141.—Diagram illustrating the use of *step up* and *step down* transformers on long distance transmission lines. The saving in copper is considerable by employing extra high voltages on lines of moderate or great length as indicated by the relative sizes of wire.

core loss, this gives a constant loss of 45 watts, while the average load of 8 lamps for 3 hours per day gives a useful output of 60 watts, or an all year efficiency of nearly 60 per cent., while a 1,000 watt transformer would give an all year efficiency of 67 per cent.

For long distance transmission lines, the voltage at the alternator is increased by passing the current through a *step up* transformer, thus transmitting it at very high pressure, and reducing the voltage at the points of distribution by step down transformers as in fig. 2,141.

Ques. In practice, would such a system as shown in fig. 2,141 be used?

Ans. If the greatest economy in copper were aimed at, a three phase system would be used.

Digitized by Google

The purpose of fig. 2,141 is to show the importance of the transformer in giving a flexibility of voltage, by which the cost of the line is reduced to a minimum.

Ques. Does the saving indicated in fig. 2,141 represent a net gain?

Ans. No. The reduction in cost of the transmission is partly offset by the cost of the transformers as well as by transformer losses and the higher insulation requirements.



FIG. 2,142.—Single and twin circuit poles (Southern Power Co.). The twin circuit pole at the right is used for 11,000 volt circuits, while the single circuit poles at the left carry 44,000 volt conductors, being used on another division for 100,000 volt line.

Every case of electric transmission presents its own problem, and needs thorough engineering study to intelligently choose the system best adapted for the particular case.

Single Phase Systems.—There are various arrangements for transmission and distribution classed as single phase systems. Thus, single phase current may be conveyed to the various

Digitized by Google

receiving units by the well known circuit arrangements known as series, parallel, series parallel, parallel series, connections previously described and illustrated in figs. 2,131 to 2,134.

Again single phase current may be transmitted by two wires and distributed by three wires. This is done in several ways, the simplest being shown in fig. 2,143.

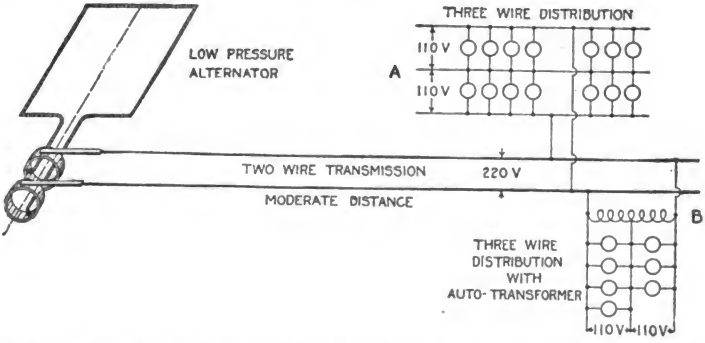


FIG. 2,143.—Diagram illustrating single phase two wire transmission and three wire distribution. The simplified three wire arrangement at A, is not permissible except in cases of very little *unbalancing*. Where the difference between loads on each side of the neutral may be great some form of balancing as an auto-transformer or equivalent should be used, as at B.

Ques. Under what conditions is the arrangement shown in fig. 2,143 desirable?

Ans. This method of treating the neutral wire is only permissible where there is very little unbalancing, that is, where the load is kept practically the same on both sides of the neutral.

Ques. What advantage is obtained by three wire distribution?

Ans. The pressure at the alternator can be doubled, which means, for a given number of lamps, that the current is reduced

Digitized by Google

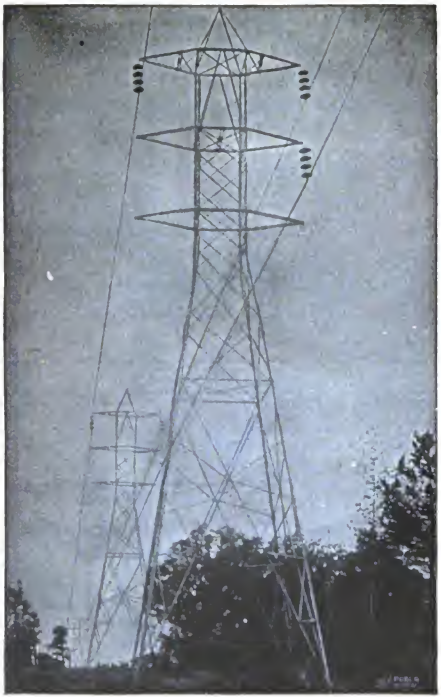


FIG. 2,144.—100,000 volt "Milliken" towers with one circuit strung (Southern Power Co.). These towers are mounted on metal stubs sunk 6 feet in the ground. Where the angle of the line is over 15 degrees, however, these stubs are weighted with rock and concrete, and where an angle of over 30 degrees occurs, two and sometimes three towers are used for making the turn. The weight of the standard "Milliken" tower is 3,080 lbs., and its height from the ground to peak is 51 feet. The towers are spaced to average eight to a mile and a strain tower weighing 4,250 lbs. is used every mile. For particularly long spans a special heavy tower weighing 6,900 lbs. is used. The circuits are transposed every 30 miles. Multiple disc insulators are used, four discs being used to suspend each conductor from standard towers and ten discs to each conductor on strain towers. The standard span is 600 feet, sag 11 ft. at 50° Fahr.

to half, the permissible drop may be doubled, the resistance of the wires quadrupled, and their cost reduced nearly 75 per cent.

Ques. What modification of circuit A (fig. 2,143), should be made to allow for unbalancing in the three wire circuit?

Ans. An autotransformer or "balance coil" as it is sometimes called should be used as at B.

This is a very desirable method of balancing when the ratio of transformation is not too large.

Ques. For what service would the system shown in fig. 2,143 be suitable?

Ans. For short distance transmission, as for instance, in

Digitized by Google

the case of an isolated plant because of the low pressure at which the current is generated.

The standard voltages of low pressure alternators are 400, 480, and 600 volts.

Ques. In practice are single phase alternators used as indicated in fig. 2,143?

Ans. Alternators are wound for one, two or three phases. Three phase machines are more commonly supplied and in



FIG. 2,145.—View of a typical isolated plant. The illustration represents an electric lighting plant on a farm showing the lighting of the dwelling, barn, tool house and pump house. The installation consists of a low voltage dynamo with gas engine drive and storage battery together with the necessary auxiliary apparatus.

many cases it will pay to install them in preference to single phase, even if they be operated single phase temporarily.

For a given output, three phase machines are smaller than single phase and the single phase load can usually be approximately balanced between the three phases. Moreover, if a three phase machine be installed, polyphase current will be available in case it may be necessary to operate polyphase motors at some future time.

Standard three phase alternators will carry about 70 per cent. of their rated kilowatt output when operated single phase, with the same temperature rise.

Digitized by Google

Ques. How are three phase alternators used for single phase circuits?

Ans. The single phase circuit is connected to any two of the three phase terminal leads.

Ques. What form of single phase system should be used where the transmission distance is considerable?

Ans. The current should be transmitted at high pressure, a step down transformer being placed at each distribution

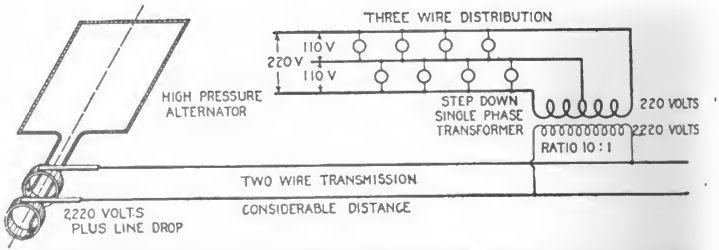


FIG. 2,146.—Diagram showing **arrangement of single phase system** for two wire transmission and three wire distribution, *where the transmission distance* **is considerable.** In order **to reduce the cost** of the transmission line, *the current must be transmitted at high pressure;* this necessitates the use of a step down transformer at the distributing center as shown in the illustration.

center to reduce the pressure to the proper voltage to suit the service requirements as shown in fig. 2,146.

Thus, if 110 volt lamps be used on the three wire circuit, the pressure between the two outer wires would be 220 volts. A transformation ratio of say 10:1 would give 2,220 volts for the primary circuit. The current required for the primary with this ratio being only .1 that used in the secondary, a considerable saving is effected in the cost of the transmission line as must be evident.

With the high pressure alternator only one transformation of the current is needed, as shown at the distribution end.

In place of the high pressure alternator, a low pressure alternator could be used in connection with a step up transformer as shown in fig. 2,147, but there would be an extra loss due to the additional transformer, rendering the system less efficient than the one shown in fig. 2,146. Such an arrangement as shown in the fig. 2,147 might be justified

Digitized by Google

in the case of a station having a low pressure alternator already in use and it should be desired to transmit a portion of the energy a considerable distance.

Ques. How could the system shown in fig. 2,147 be made more efficient than that of fig. 2,146.

Ans. By using a high pressure alternator in order to considerably increase the transmission voltage.

Thus, a 2,200 volt alternator and 1:10 step up transformer would give a line pressure of 22,000 volts, which at the distribution end could be reduced, to 220 volts for the three wire circuit, using a 100:1 step down transformation.

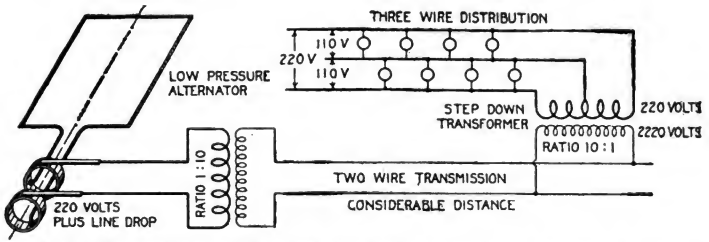


FIG. 2,147.—Diagram illustrating how electricity can be economically transmitted a considerable distance with low pressure alternator already in use.

Ques. Would this be the best arrangement?

Ans. No.

Ques. What system would be used in practice for maximum economy?

Ans. Three phase four wire.

Ques. What are the objections to single phase generation and transmission?

Ans. It does not permit of the use of synchronous converters, self-starting synchronous motors, or induction motor starting under load. It is poorly adapted to general power

Digitized by Google

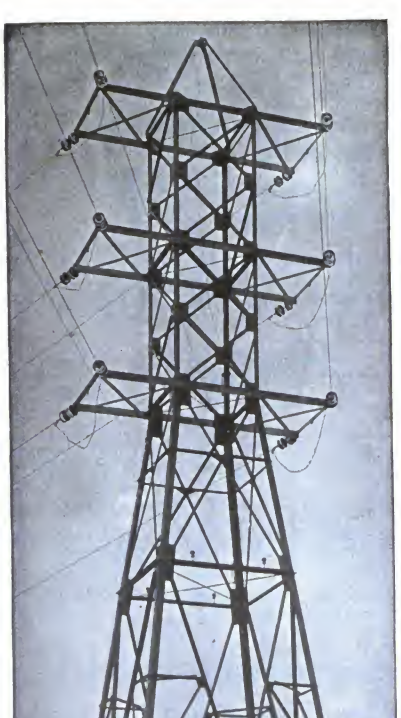


FIG. 2,148.—Angle tower showing General Electric strain insulators. The tower being subject to great tortional strains is erected on a massive concrete foundation. The construction is similar to the standard tower but of heavier material, and having the same vertical dimensions but with bases 20 ft. square.

distribution, hence it is open to grave objections of a commercial nature where there exists any possibility of selling power or in any way utilizing it for general converter and motor work.

Ques. For what service is it desirable?

Ans. For alternating current railway operation.

There are advantages of simplicity in the entire generating, primary, and secondary distribution systems for single phase roads. These advantages are so great that they justify considerable expense, looked at from the railway point of view only, the single phase system throughout may be considered as offering the most advantage.

Ques. What are the objectionable features of single phase alternators?

Ans. This type of alternator has an unbalanced armature reaction which is the cause of considerable flux variation in the

Digitized by Google

field pole tips and in fact throughout the field structure.

In order to minimize eddy currents, such alternators must accordingly be built with thinner laminations and frequently poorer mechanical construction, resulting in increased cost of the machine. The large armature reaction results in a much poorer regulation than that obtained with three phase alternators, and an increased amount of field copper is required, also larger exciting units. These items augment the cost so that

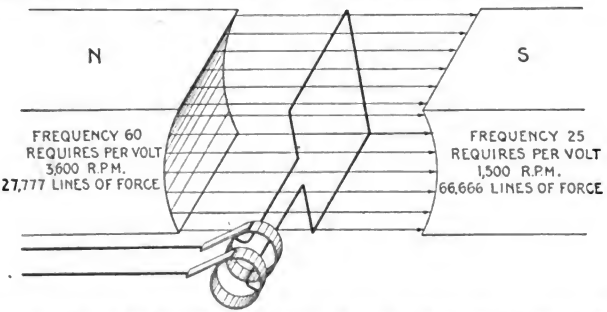


FIG. 2,149.—Elementary alternator developing one volt at frequencies of 60 and 25, **showing the effect of reducing the frequency.** Since for the same number of pole, the R.P.M. have to be decreased to decrease the frequency, increased flux is required to develop the same voltage. **Hence in construction,** low frequency machines require *larger magnets, increased number of turns in series on the armature coils, larger exciting units* as compared with machines built for higher frequency.

the single phase machine is considerably more expensive than the three phase, of the same output and heating.

Ques. What factor increases the difficulties of single phase alternator construction?

Ans. The difficulties appear to increase with a *decrease* in frequency.

The adoption of any lower frequency than 25 cycles may result in serious difficulties in construction for a complete line of machine, especially those of the two or four pole turbine driven type where the field flux is very large per pole,

Digitized by Google

Monocyclic System.—In this system, which is due to Steinmetz, the alternator is of a special type. In construction, there is a **main** single phase winding an auxiliary or **teaser** winding connected to the central point of the main winding in quadrature therewith.

The teaser coil generates a voltage equal to about 25 per cent. of that of the main coil so that the pressure between the terminals of the main coil and the free end of the teaser is the resultant of the pressure of the two coils.

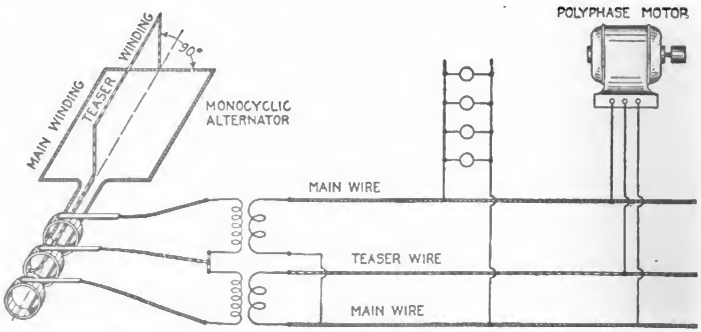


FIG. 2,150.—Diagram of monocyclic system, showing lighting and power circuits.

By various transformer connections it is possible to obtain a practically correct three phase relationship so that polyphase motors may be employed.

In this system, two wires leading from the ends of the single phase winding in the alternator supply single phase current to the lighting load, a third wire connected to the end of the teaser being run to points where the polyphase motors are installed as shown in fig. 2,150.

The monocyclic system is described at length in the chapter on alternators, Guide No. 5, pages, 1,156 to 1,159.

Digitized by Google

Two Phase Systems.—A two phase circuit is equivalent to two single phase circuits. Either four or three wire may be employed in transmitting two phase current, and even in the latter instance the conditions are practically the same as for single phase transmission, excepting the unequal current distribution in the three wires. Fig. 2,151 shows a two phase four wire system.

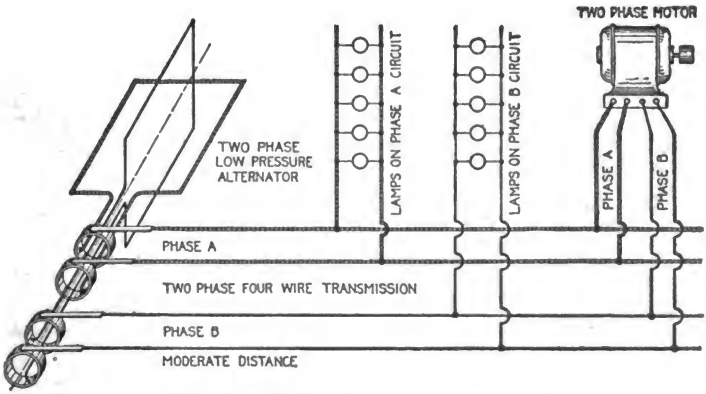


FIG. 2,151.—Diagram of two phase four wire system. It is desirable for supplying current for lighting and power. The arrangement here shown should be used only for lines of short or moderate length, because of the low voltage. Motors should be connected to a circuit separate from the lighting circuit to avoid drop on the latter while starting a motor.

Ques. For what service is the system shown in fig. 2,151 desirable?

Ans. It is adapted to supplying current for lighting and power at moderate or short distances.

Either 110 or 220 volts are ordinarily used which is suitable for incandescent lighting and for constant pressure arc lamps, the lamps being connected singly or two in pairs.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Where current for both power and light are obtained from the same source how should the circuits be arranged?

Ans. A separate circuit should be employed for each, in order to avoid the objectionable drop and consequent dimming of the lights due to the sudden rush of current during the starting of a motor.

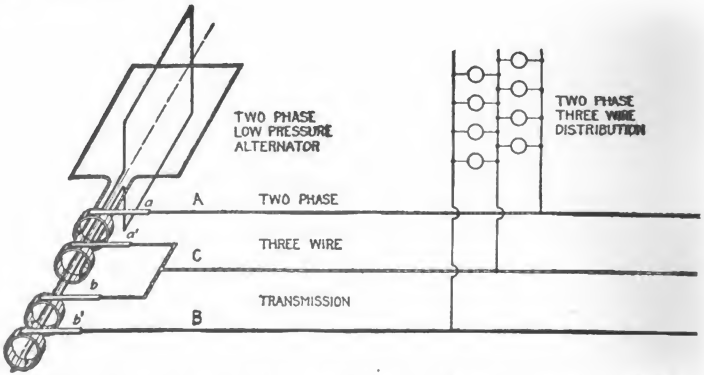


FIG. 2,152.—Diagram of two phase three wire system. A wire is connected to one end of each phase winding as at A and B, and a third wire C, to the other end of both phases as shown.

Disagreeable fluctuation of the lights are always met with when motors are connected to a lighting circuit and the effect is more marked with alternating current than with direct current, because most types of alternating current motor require a heavy current usually lagging considerably when starting. This not only causes a large drop on the line, but also reacts injuriously upon the regulation of transformers and alternators, their voltage falling much more than with an equal non-inductive load.

Ques. What voltages are ordinarily used on two phase lines of more than moderate length?

Ans. For transmission distances of more than two or three

Digitized by Google

miles, pressures of from 1,000 to 2,000 volts or more are employed to economize in copper. For long distance transmission of over fifty miles, from 30,000 to 100,000 volts and over are used.

Ques. For long distance transmission at 30,000 to 40,000 volts, what additional apparatus is necessary?

Ans. Step up and step down transformers.

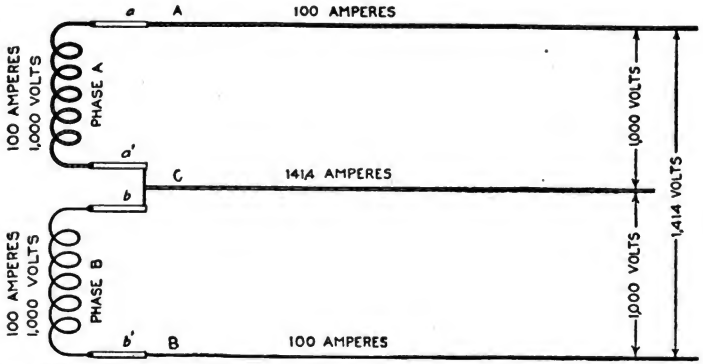


FIG. 2,153.—Diagram illustrating two phase three wire transmission. The third wire C is attached to the connector between one end of phase A, and phase B windings.

Ques. Explain the method of transmitting two phase current with three wires.

Ans. The connections at the alternator are very simple as shown in fig. 2,152. One end of each phase winding is connected by the brushes a and b', to one of the circuit wires, that is to A and B respectively. The other end of each phase winding is connected by a lead across brushes a' and b, to which the third wire C is joined.

The current and pressure conditions of this system are represented diagramatically in fig. 2,153. The letters correspond to those in fig. 2,152, with which it should be compared.

Digitized by Google

As shown in the figure each coil is carrying 100 amperes at 1,000 volts pressure. Since the phase difference between the two coils is 90°, the voltage between A and B is $\sqrt{2}=1.414$ times that between either A or B and the common return wire C.

The current in C is $\sqrt{2}=1.414$ times that in either outside wire A or B, as indicated.

Ques. How should the load on the two phase three wire system be distributed?

Ans. The load on the two phases must be carefully balanced.

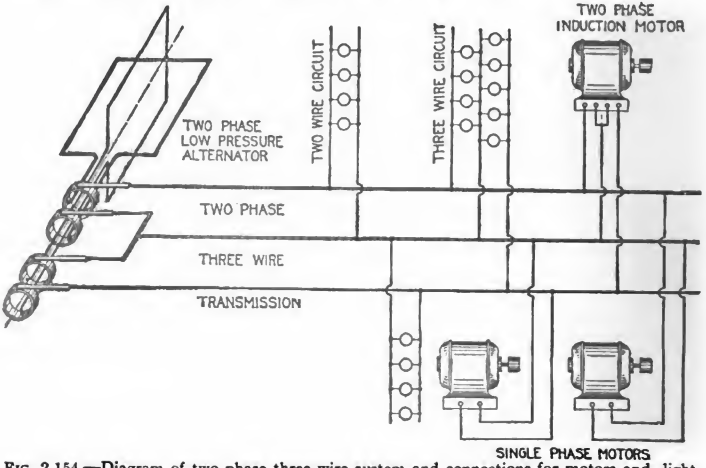


FIG. 2,154.—Diagram of two phase three wire system and connections for motors and lighting circuits.

Ques. Why should the power factor be kept high?

Ans. A high power factor should be maintained in order to keep the voltage on the phases nearly the same at the receiving ends.

Ques. How should single phase motors be connected and what precaution should be taken?

Ans. Single phase motors may be connected to either or

Digitized by Google

both phases, but in such cases, no load should be connected between the outer wires otherwise the voltages on the different phases will be badly unbalanced.

Fig. 2,154 shows a two phase three wire system, with two wire and three wire distribution circuits, illustrating the connection for lighting and for one and two phase motors.

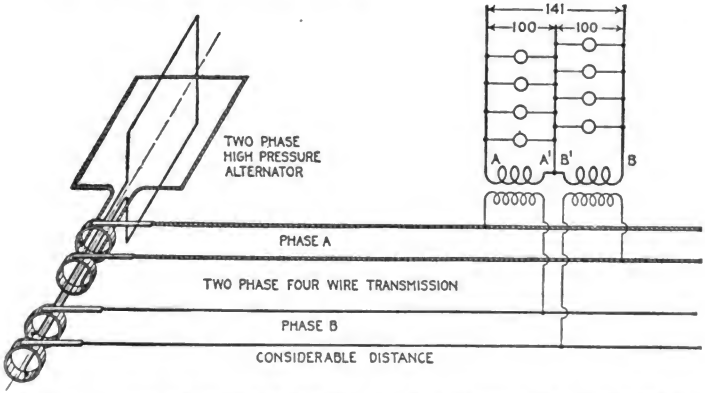


FIG. 2,155.—Diagram of two phase system with four wire transmission and three wire distribution. In the three wire circuits the relative pressures between conductors are as indicated; that is, the pressure between the two outer wires A and B is 141 volts, when the pressure between each cuter wire and the central is 100 volts.

Ques. Describe another method of transmission and distribution with two phase current.

Ans. The current may be transmitted on a four wire circuit and distributed on three wire circuit as in fig. 2,155.

The four wire transmission circuit is evidently equivalent to two independent single phase circuits.

In changing from four to three wires, it is just as well to connect the two outside wires A and B together (fig. 2,152), as it is to connect *a'* and *b*. It makes no difference which two secondary wires are joined together, so long as the other wires of each transformer are connected to the outside wires of the secondary system.

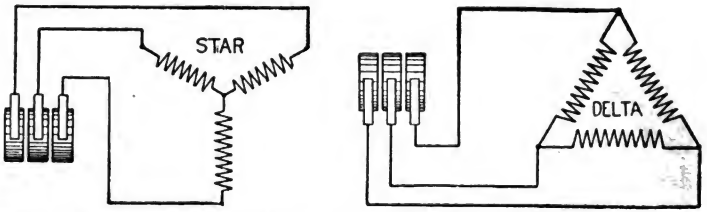
Digitized by Google

Ques. For what service is the two phase three wire system adapted?

Ans. It is desirable for supplying current of minimum pressure to apparatus in the vicinity of transformers. It is more frequently used in connection with motors operating from the secondaries of the transformers.

Ques. How should the third or common return wire be proportioned?

Ans. Since the current in the common return wire is 41.4 per cent. higher than that in either of the other wires it must be of correspondingly larger cross section, to keep the loss equal.



FIGS. 2,156 and 2,157.—Conventional diagrams illustrating **star** and **delta** connected three phase alternator armatures.

Ques. What is the effect of an inductive load on the two phase three wire system and why?

Ans. It causes an unbalancing of both sides of the system even though the energy load be equally divided. The self-induction pressure in one side of the system is in phase with the virtual pressure in the other side, thus distorting the current distribution in both circuits.

Ques. Describe the two phase five wire system.

Ans. A two phase circuit may be changed from four to five wires by arranging the transformer connections as in fig. 2,158.

Digitized by Google

As shown, the secondaries of the transformers are joined in series and leads brought out from the middle point of each secondary winding and at the connection of the two windings, giving five wires.

With 1,000 volts in the primary windings and a step down ratio of 10 : 1, the pressure between A and C and C and E will be 100 volts and between the points and the connections B or D at the middle of the secondary coils, 50 volts.

The pressure across the two outer wires A and E is, as in the three wire system, $\sqrt{2}$ or 1.41 times that from either outer wire to the middle wire C, that is 141 volts.

The pressure across the two wires connected to the middle of the coils, that is, across B and D, is $50 \times \sqrt{2} = 70.5$ volts.

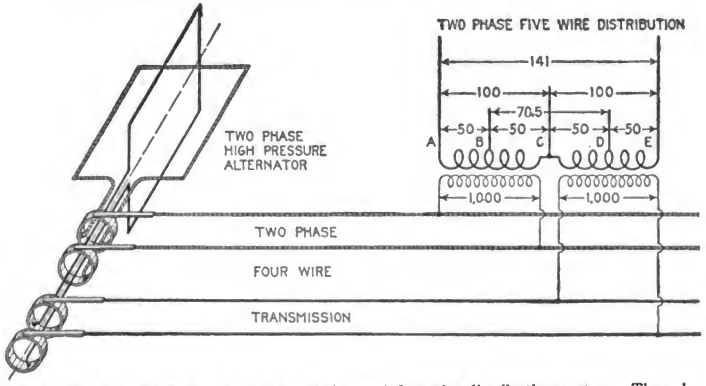


FIG. 2,158.—Two phase four wire transmission and five wire distribution system. The relative pressures between the various conductors are indicated in the diagram.

Three Phase Systems.—There are various ways of arranging the circuit for three phase current giving numerous three phase systems.

1. With respect to the number of wires used they may be classified as

a. Six wire;
b. Four wire;
c. Three wire.

Digitized by Google

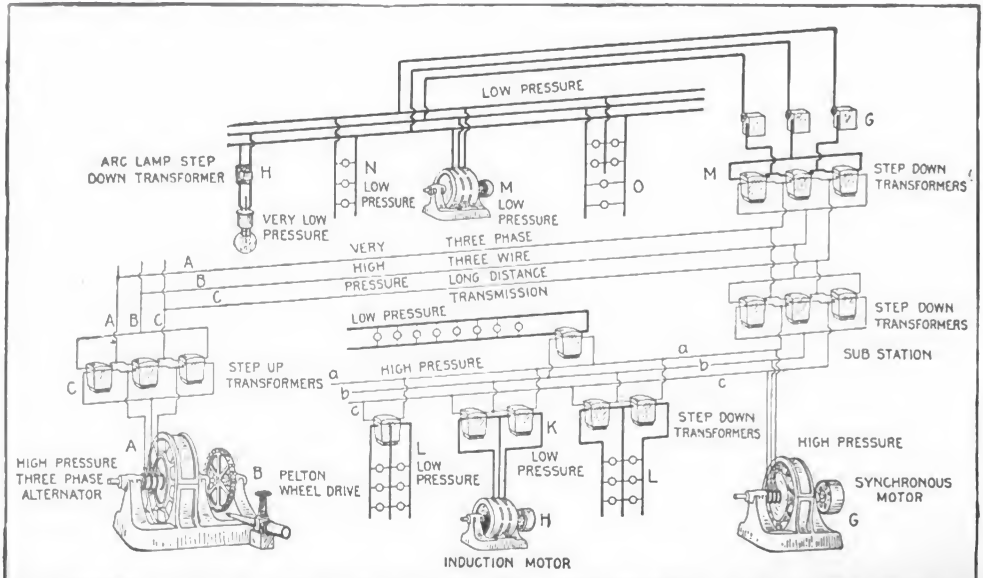


FIG. 2,159.—Line connections of three phase three wire long distance transmission, and distribution system. The three phase alternator A, is driven by the water wheel B, and furnishes current at say 2,200 volts plus sufficient pressure to compensate for line drop. With 1: 10 step up transformers C, this would give a transmission pressure of 22,000 volts plus line drop. ***It is* this transformation *that secures the* copper economy *of the system.*** At the distribution end are the step down transformers; one set reducing the voltage down to 2,200 volts, and supplying current direct to the synchronous motor, and through another set of other step down transformers, as L and K, to lighting and power circuits at 220 volts. Another set of step down transformers M reduce the pressure directly to 120 volts for power and lighting, the pressure being regulated by the regulators G. Arc lamps with individual transformers further reducing the pressure to 50 volts are connected to this circuit as shown.

2. With respect to the connections, as

a. Star;
b. Delta;
c. Star delta;
d. Delta star.

The six wire system is shown in fig. 2,160. It is equivalent to three independent single phase circuits. Such arrangement would only be used in very rare instances.

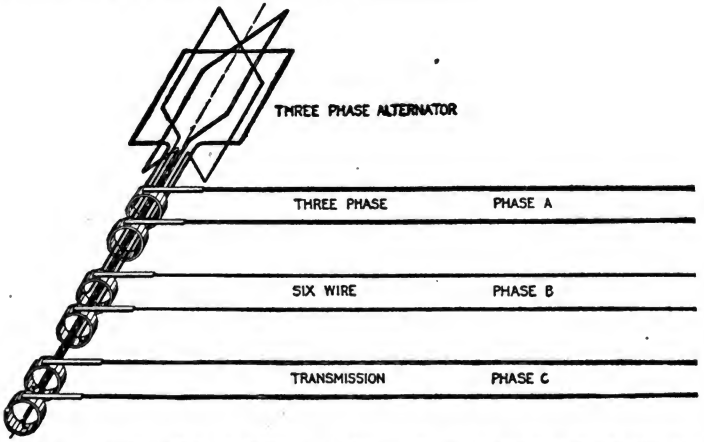


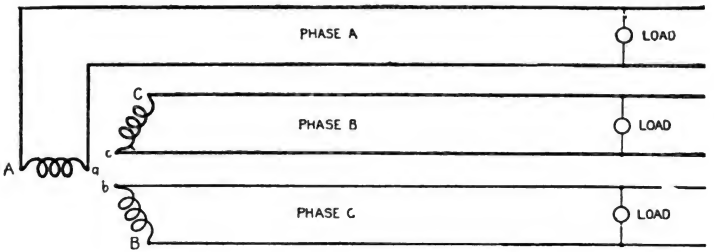
FIG. 2,160.—Three phase six wire system. It is equivalent to three independent single phase circuits and would be used only in very rare cases.

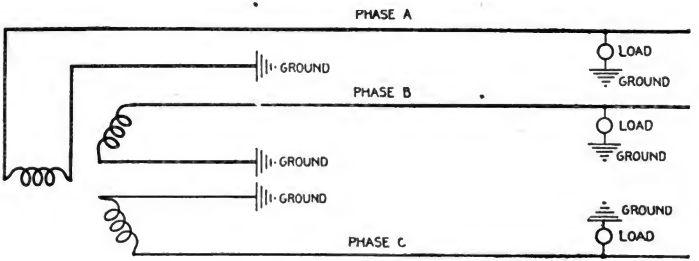
Ques. How can three phase current be transmitted by three conductors?

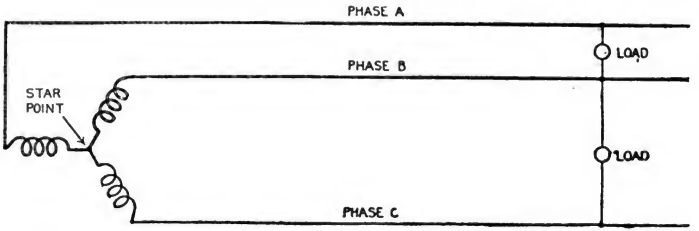
Ans. The arrangement shown in fig. 2,160 may be resolved into three single circuits with a common or grounded return.

When the circuits are balanced the sum of the current being zero no current will flow in the return conductor, and it may be dispensed with, thus giving the ordinary star or Y connected three wire circuit, as shown in fig. 2,163. The transformation from six to three wires being shown in figs. 2,161 to 2,163.

Digitized by Google







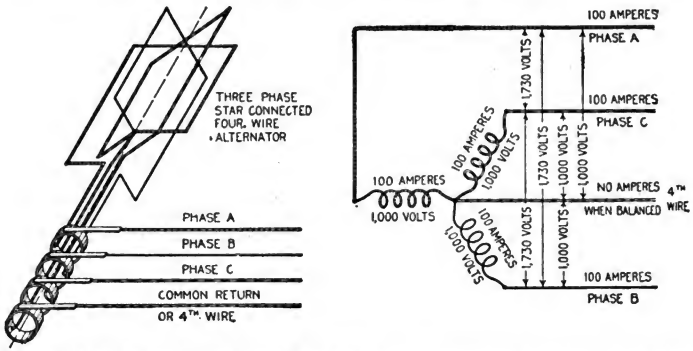
FIGS. 2,161 to 2,163.—Evolution of the three phase three wire system. Fig. 2,161 is a conventional diagram of the three phase six wire system shown in fig. 2,160. A wire is connected to both ends of each phase winding, giving six conductors, or three independent two wire circuits. In place of the wires running from A, B, and C, they may be removed and each circuit provided with a *ground* return as shown in fig. 2,162. The sum of the three currents being zero, or nearly zero, according to the degree of unbalancing, the ground return may be eliminated and the ends A, B, and C of the three phase winding connected, as in fig. 2,163, giving the so called *star point*.

Digitized by Google

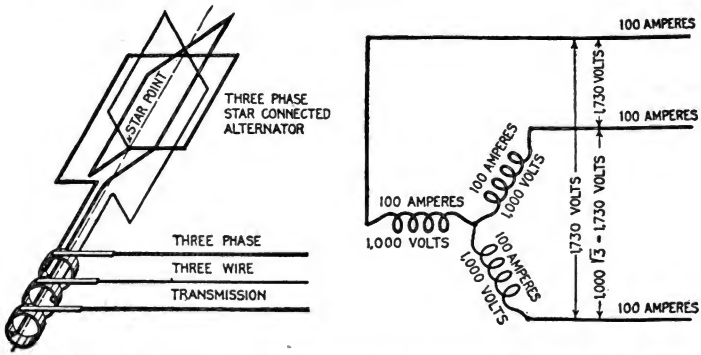
Fig. 2,166 is a view of an elementary three phase three wire star connected alternator.

Ques. What are the pressure and current relations of the star connected three wire system?

Ans. These are shown in the diagram, fig. 2,166 and 2,167



FIGS. 2,164 and 2,165.—Three phase **four wire** *star connected* alternator and conventional diagram showing pressure and current relations.



FIGS. 2,166 and 2,167.—Three phase **star connected** alternator, and conventional diagram showing pressure relations.

Digitized by Google

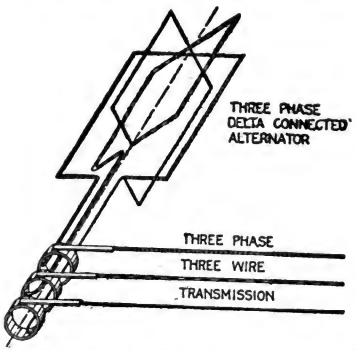
Assuming 100 amperes and 1,000 volts in each phase winding, the pressure between any two conductors is equal to the pressure in one winding multiplied by $\sqrt{3}$, that is $1,000 \times 1.732 = 1,732$ volts.

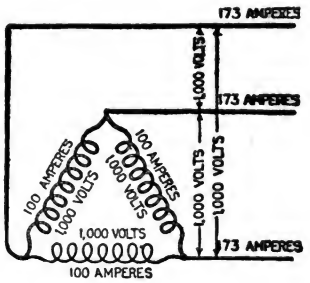
The current in each conductor is equal to the current in the winding, or 100 amperes.

Ques. Describe the delta connection.

Ans. In the delta connection, the three phase coils are connected together forming an endless winding, leads being brought out from these points.

Fig. 2,168 shows a delta connected three phase alternator, the pressure and current relation being given in fig. 2,169.





FIGS. 2,168 and 2,169.—Three phase **delta connected** alternator and conventional diagram showing pressure and current relations.

Ques. What are the pressure and current relations of the delta connected three wire system?

Ans. They are as shown in fig. 2,169.

Assuming 100 amperes and 1,000 volts in each phase winding, the pressure between any two conductors is the same as the pressure in the winding, and the current in any conductor is equal to the current in the winding multiplied by $\sqrt{3}$, that is $100 \times 1.732 = 173.2$ amperes, that is, disregarding the fraction, 173 amperes.

Digitized by Google

Ques. What are the relative merits of the star and delta connections?

Ans. The power output of each is the same, but the star connection gives a higher line voltage, hence smaller conductors may be used.

When it is remembered that the cost of copper conductors is inversely as the square of the voltage, the advantage of the Y connected system can be seen at once.

Assuming that three transformers are used for a three phase system

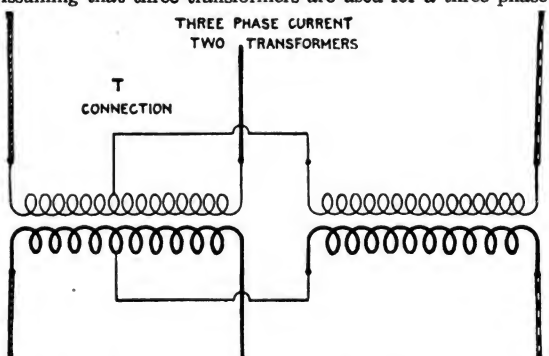


FIG. 2,170.—T connection of transformers in which three phase current is transformed with two transformers. The connections are clearly shown in the illustration. The voltage across one transformer is only 86.6% of that across the other, so that if each transformer be designed especially for its work one will have a rating of .866EI and the other EI. The combined rates will then be 1.866 as compared with 1.732 EI for three single phase transformers connected either star or delta.

of given voltage, each transformer, star connected, would be wound for $1 \div \sqrt{3} = 58\%$ of the given voltage, and for full current.

For delta connection, the winding of each transformer is for 58% of the current. Accordingly the turns required for star connection are only 58% of those required for delta connection.

Ques. What is the objection to the star connection for three phase work?

Ans. It requires the use of three transformers, and if anything happen to one, the entire set is disabled.

Digitized by Google

Ques. Does this defect exist with the delta connection?

Ans. No.

One transformer may be cut out and the other two operated at full capacity, that is at ⅔ the capacity of the three.

Ques. Describe the T connection.

Ans. In this method two transformers are used for transforming three phase current. It consists in connecting one end of both windings of one transformer to the middle point of like windings of the other transformer as in fig. 2,170.

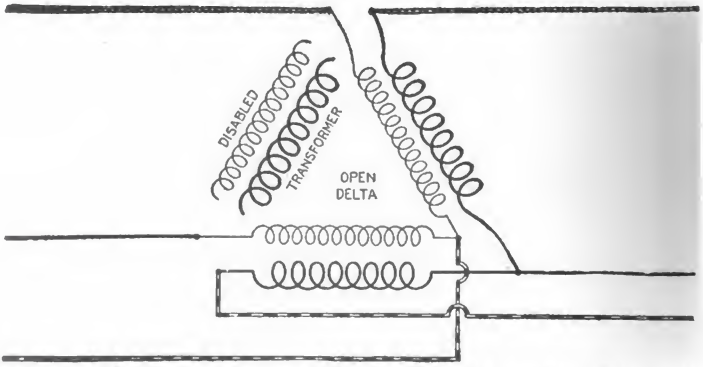


FIG. 2,171.—Open delta connection or method of connecting two transformers in delta for three phase transformation. It is used when one of the three single phase delta connected transformers becomes disabled.

Ques. What is the open delta connection?

Ans. It is a method of arranging the connections of a bank of three delta connected transformers when one becomes disabled as in fig. 2,171.

Change of Frequency.—There are numerous instances where it is desirable to change from one frequency to another, as for instance to join two systems of different frequency which

Digitized by Google

may supply the same or adjacent territory, or, in the case of a low frequency installation, in order to operate incandescent lights satisfactorily it would be desirable to increase the frequency for such circuits. This is done by motor generator sets, the motor taking its current from the low frequency circuit.

Synchronous motors are generally used for such service as the frequency is not disturbed by load changes; it also makes it

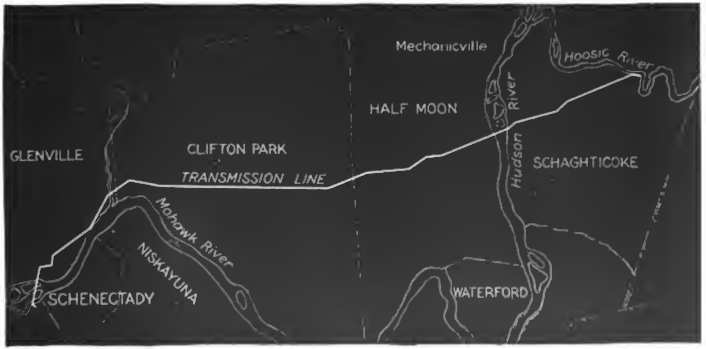


FIG. 2,172.—Course of the Schaghticoke-Schenectady transmission line of the Schenectady Power Co. This transmission line carries practically the entire output of the Schaghticoke power house to Schenectady, N. Y., a distance of approximately 21 miles. The line consists of two separate three phase, 40 cycle, 32,000 volt circuits, each of 6,000 kw. normal capacity. These circuits start from opposite ends of the power house, and, after crossing the Hoosic River, are transferred by means of two terminal towers, fig. 2,173, to a single line of transmission towers. The two circuits are carried on these on opposite ends of the cross arms, the three phases being superimposed. The power house ends of the line are held by six short quadrangular steel lattice work anchor poles with their bases firmly embedded in concrete, the cables being dead ended by General Electric disc strain insulators. This equipment, together with the lightning arrester horn gaps and the heavy line outlet insulators mounted on the roof of the power house, is shown in fig. 2,174. While each circuit carries only 6,000 kw. under normal conditions, either is capable of carrying the entire output of the station; in this case, however, the line losses are necessarily augmented. This feature prevents any interruption of the service from the failure of one of the circuits. There are altogether 197 transmission towers, comprising several distinct types.

possible to use the set in the reverse order, that is, taking power from the high frequency mains and delivering energy at low frequency.

Digitized by Google

Ques. In the parallel operations of frequency changing sets what is necessary to secure equal division of the load?

Ans. The relative angular position of the rotating elements of motor and generator must be the same respectively in each set.

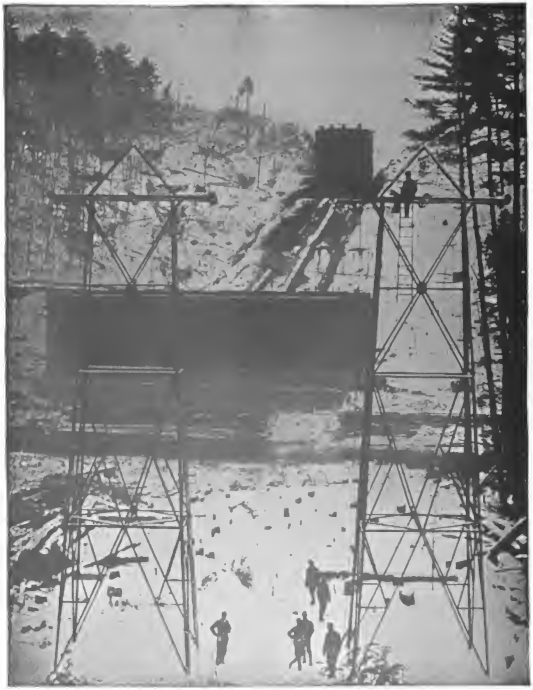


FIG. 2,173.—Beginning of Schaghticoke-Schenectady transmission line; view showing transfer towers with power house in background.

Ques. How is this obtained?

Ans. Because of the mechanical difficulty of accurately

Digitized by Google



FIG. 2,174.—View from roof of power house of the Schaghticoke-Schenectady transmission line, showing anchor poles, strain insulators, lightning arrester horn gap and line entrance bushings.

locating the parts, the equivalent result is secured by arranging the stationary element in one of the two machines so that it can be given a small angular shift.

Transformation of Phases. — In alternating current circuits it is frequently desirable to change from one number of phases to another. For instance, in the case of a converter, it is less expensive and more efficient to use one built for six phases than for either two or three phases.

The numerous conditions met with necessitate various phase transformations, as

1. Three phase to one phase;

2. Three phase to two phase;

Digitized by Google

3. Two phase to six phase;
4. Three phase to six phase.

These transformations are accomplished by the numerous arrangements and combinations of the transformers.

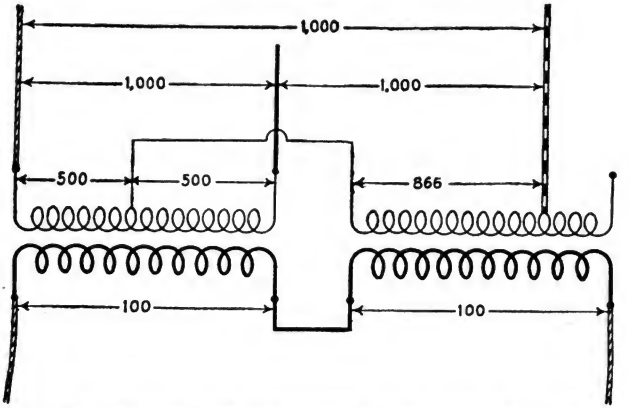


FIG. 2,175.—Three phase to one phase transformation with two transformers. The diagram shows the necessary connections and the relative pressures obtained,

Three Phase to One Phase.—This transformation may be accomplished by the use of two transformers connected as in fig. 2,175 in which one end of one primary winding is connected to the middle of the other primary winding and the second end of the first primary winding at a point giving 86.6 per cent. of that winding as shown. The two secondary windings are joined in series.

Three Phase to Two Phase.—The three phase system is universally used for long distance transmission, because it requires less copper than either the single or two phase systems.

Digitized by Google

For distribution, however, the two phase system presents certain advantages, thus, it becomes desirable at the distribution centers to change from three phase to two phase. This may be done in several ways.

Ques. Describe the Scott connection.

Ans. Two transformers are used, one having a 10:1 ratio,

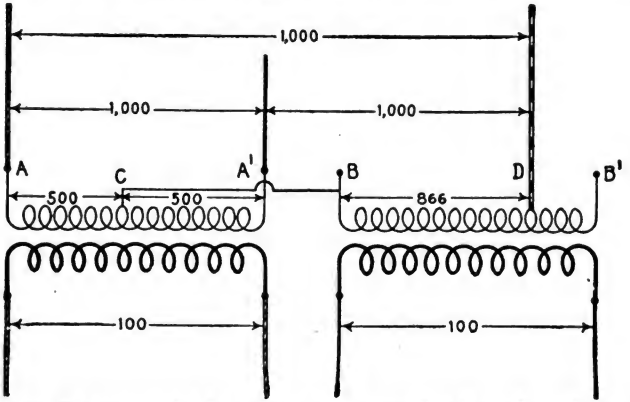


FIG. 2,176.—The Scott connection for transforming from three phase to two phase. In this method one of the primary wires B of the .866 ratio transformer is connected to the middle of the other primary as at C, the ends of which are connected to two of the three phase wires. The other phase wire is connected at D, the point giving the .866 ratio. The secondary wires are connected as shown.

and the other, a $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$: 1, that is, an 8.66 : 1 ratio. The connections are arranged as in fig. 2,176.

It is customary to employ standard transformers having the ratios 10 : 1, and 9 : 1.

Ques. What names are given to the two transformers?

Ans. The one having the 10 : 1 ratio is called the **main** transformer, and the other with the 8.66 : 1 ratio, the **teaser transformer.**

Digitized by Google

In construction, the transformers may be made exactly alike so that either may be used as main or teaser.

In order that the connections may be properly and conveniently made, the primary windings should be provided with 50% and 86.6% taps.

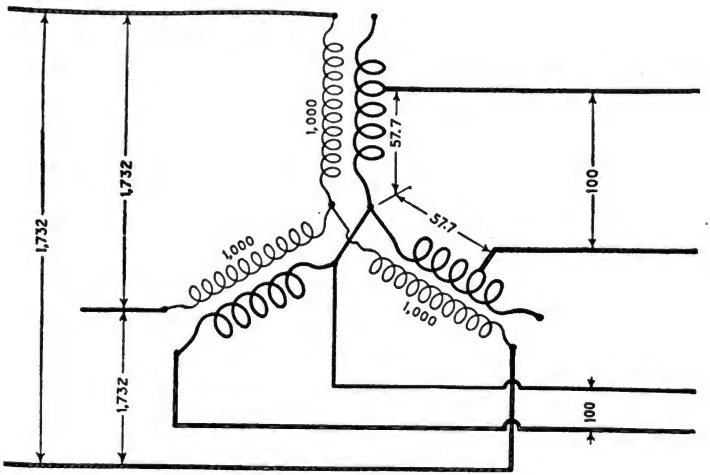


FIG. 2,177.—Three phase to two phase transformation with three star connected transformers. Two of the secondary windings are tapped at points corresponding to 57.7% of full voltage; these two windings are connected in series to form one secondary phase of voltage equal to that obtained by the other full secondary winding.

Ques. Describe another way of transforming from three to two phases.

Ans. The transformation may be made by three star connected transformers, proportioning the windings as in fig. 2,177, from which it will be seen that two of the secondary windings are tapped at points corresponding to 57.7 per cent. of full voltage.

Digitized by Google

Three Phase to Six Phase.—This transformation is usually made for use with rotary converters and may be accomplished in several ways. As these methods have been illustrated in the chapter on Converters (page 1,462), it is unnecessary to again discuss them here. Fig. 2,178, below shows the *diametrical* connection for transforming three phase to six phase.

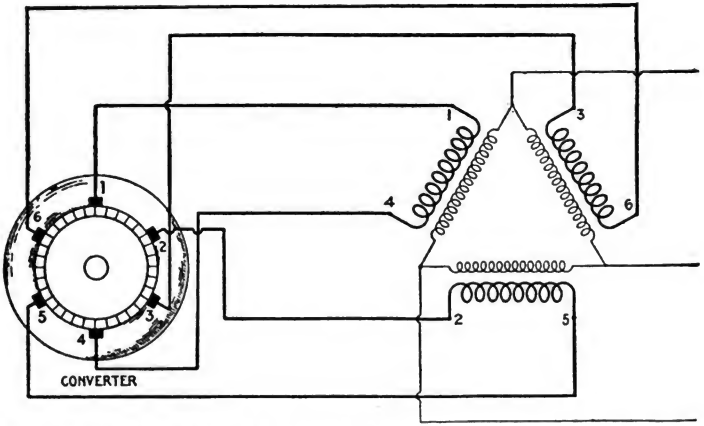


FIG. 2,178.—Diagram of **diametrical connection,** *three phase to six phase.* **It is obtained** *by bringing both ends of each secondary winding to opposite points on the rotary converter winding,* utilizing the converter winding to give the six phases. This transformation of phases may also be obtained with transformers having two secondary windings.

Alternating Current Systems.—The saving in the cost of transmission obtained by using alternating instead of direct current is not due to any difference in the characteristics of the currents themselves, but to the fact that in the case of alternating current very high pressures may be employed, thus permitting a given amount of energy to be transmitted with a relatively small current.

Digitized by Google

In the case of direct current systems, commutator troubles limit the transmission pressure to about 1,000 volts, whereas with alternating current it may be commercially generated at pressures up to about 13,000 and by means of step up transformers, transmitted at 110,000 volts or more.



FIG. 2,179.—End of Schaghticoke-Schenectady transmission line at Schenectady; view showing entrance bushings and lightning arrester horn gaps.

Relative Weights of Copper Required by Polyphase Systems.—A comparison between the weights of copper required by the different alternating current systems is rendered quite difficult by the fact that the voltage ordinarily measured is not the maximum voltage, and as the insulation has to withstand the strain of the maximum voltage, the relative value of copper obtained by calculation depends upon the basis of comparison adopted.

Digitized by Google

As a general rule, the highest voltage practicable is used for long distance transmission, and a lower voltage for local distribution. Furthermore, some polyphase systems give a multiplicity of voltages, and the question arises as to which of these voltages shall be considered the transmission voltage.

If the transmission voltage be taken to represent that of the distribution circuit, and the polyphase system has as many independent circuits as there are phases, the system would represent a group of several single phase systems, and there

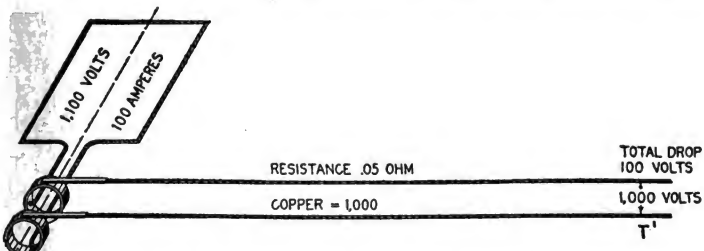
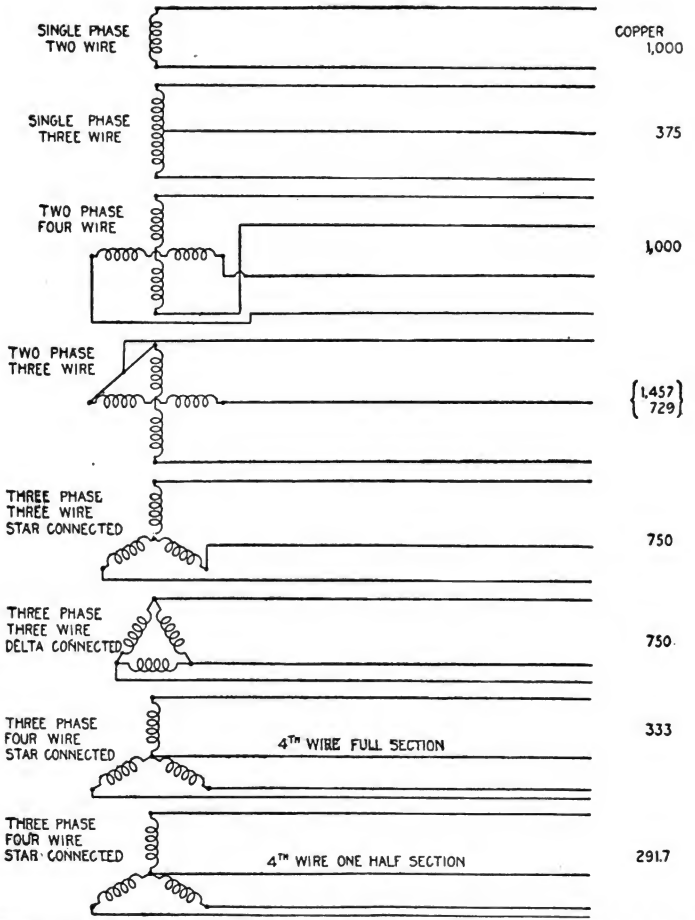


FIG. 2,180.—Single phase line, used as basis of comparison in obtaining the relative weights of copper required by polyphase systems, as indicated in figs. 2,181 to 2,188.

would be no saving of copper. Under these conditions, if the voltage at the distant end be taken as the transmission voltage, and the copper required by a single phase two wire system as shown in fig. 2,180, be taken as the basis of comparison, the relative weights of copper required by the various polyphase systems is given in figs. 2,181 to 2,188.

In the case represented in fig. 2,180, if the total drop on the line be 100 volts, the generated voltage must be 1,100 volts, and the resistance of each line must be $50 \div 1{,}000 = .05$ ohms. Calculated on this basis, a two phase four wire system is equivalent to two single phase systems and gives no economy of copper in power transmission over the ordinary single phase two wire

Digitized by Google



FIGS. 2,181 to 2,188.—Circuit diagrams showing relative copper economy of various alternating current systems.

Digitized by Google

system. This is the case also with any of the other two phase systems, except the two phase three wire system.

In this system two of the four wires of the four wire two phase system are replaced by one of full cross section.

The amount of copper required, when compared with the single phase system, will differ considerably according as the comparison is based on the highest voltage permissible for any given distribution, or on the minimum voltage for low pressure service.



FIG. 2,189.—Twin circuit "aermotor" towers carrying 44,000 volt conductors (Southern Power Co.). These towers vary in height from 35 to 50 feet, and the circuits are transposed every 10 miles. The towers are assembled on the ground and erected by means of gin poles. They are normally spaced 500 feet apart with a sag of 5 feet 8 inches. The minimum distance between towers is 300 feet and the maximum 700 feet.

If E be the greatest voltage that can be used on account of the insulation strain, or for any other reason, the pressure between the other conductors of the two phase three wire system must be reduced to $E \div \sqrt{2}$.

The weight of copper required under this condition is 145.7% that of the single phase copper.

On the basis of minimum voltage, the relative amount of copper required is 72.9% that of the single phase system.

Digitized by Google

Figs. 2,187 and 2,188 are two examples of three phase four wire systems. The relative amount of copper required as compared with the single phase system depends on the cross section of the fourth wire. The arrangement shown in fig. 2,188, where the fourth wire is only half size, is used only for secondary distribution systems.

Choice of Voltage.—In order to properly determine the voltage for a transmission system there are a number of



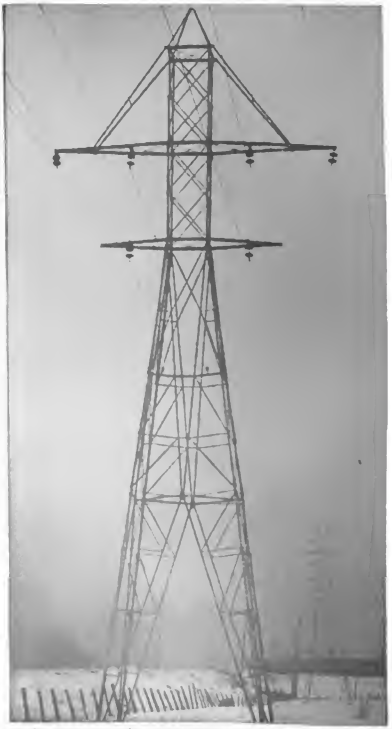


FIG. 2,190.—General Electric standard tower for high tension three phase transmission line.
FIG. 2,191.—General Electric transposition tower for high tension three phase transmission line.

Digitized by Google

conditions which must be considered in order that the economy of the entire installation shall be a maximum.

The nature of the diversely various factors which affect the problem makes a mathematical expression difficult and unsatisfactory.

Ques. What is the relation between the cross sectional area of the conductors and the voltage?

Ans. For a given circuit, the cross sectional area of the conductors, or weight varies inversely as the voltage.



FIG. 2,192.—General Electric standard tower under construction.

Ques. Would the highest possible voltage then be used for a transmission line?

Ans. The most economical voltage depends on the length of the line and the cost of apparatus.

For instance, alternators, transformers, insulation and circuit control and lightning protection devices become expensive when manufactured for very high pressures. Hence if a very high pressure were used, it would involve that the transmission distance be great enough so that the extra cost of the high pressure apparatus would be offset by the saving in copper effected by using the high pressure.

Digitized by Google

In the case of the longest lines, from about 100 miles up, the saving in copper with the highest practicable voltage is so great that the increase in other expenses is rendered comparatively small.

In the shorter lines as those ranging in length from about one mile to 50 or 75 miles, the most suitable voltage must be determined in each individual case by a careful consideration of all the conditions involved. No fixed rule can be established for proper voltage based on the length, but the following table will serve as a guide:

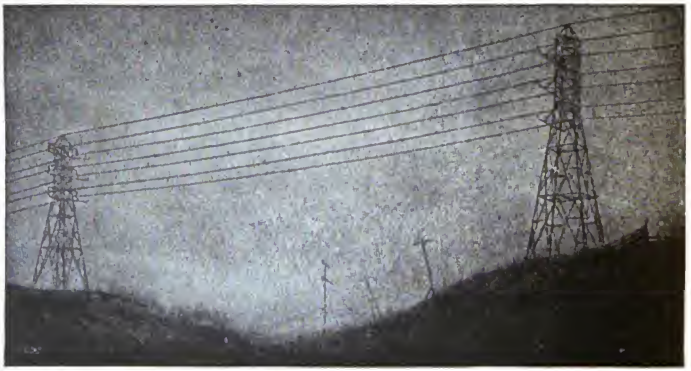


FIG. 2,193.—Line of the Schenectady Power Company crossing the tracks of the Boston and Maine Railroad near Schaghticoke.

Usual Transmission Voltages

Length of line in miles	Voltage
1	500 to 1,000
1 to 2	1,000 to 2,300
2 to 3	2,300 to. 6,600
3 to 10	6,600 to 13,200
10 to 15	13,200 to 22,000
15 to 20	22,000 to 44,000
20 to 40	44,000 to 66,000
40 o 60	66,000 to 88,000
60 to 100	88,000 to 110,000

Digitized by Google

Ques. What are the standard voltages for alternating current transmission circuits?

Ans. 6,600, 11,000, 22,000, 33,000, 44,000, 66,000, 88,000.

The amount of power to be transmitted determines, in a measure, the limit of line voltage. If the most economical voltage considered from the point of view of the line alone, be somewhere in excess of 13,200, step up transformers must be employed, since the highest voltage for

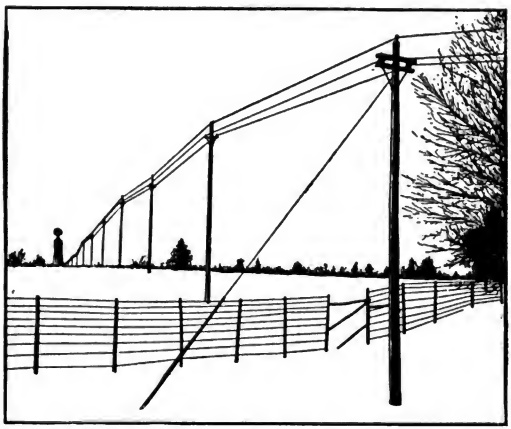


FIG. 2,194.—View of a three phase, 2,300 volt, 60 cycle line at Chazy, N. Y. The current is transmitted at the alternator voltage 2¾ miles over the single circuit pole line. The poles are of cedar with fir cross arms, and are fitted with pin insulators. They are from 35 to 40 feet high and are spaced at an average of about 120 feet. The conductors are bare copper wire No. 00 B. & S. The alternators consist of one 50 kw., and one 100 kw. General Electric machines.

which standard alternators are manufactured is 13,200. In a given case, the saving in conductor by using the higher voltage may be more than offset by the increased cost of transformers, and the question must be determined for each case.

Ques. What are the standard transformer ratios?

Ans. Multiples of 5 or 10.

Digitized by Google

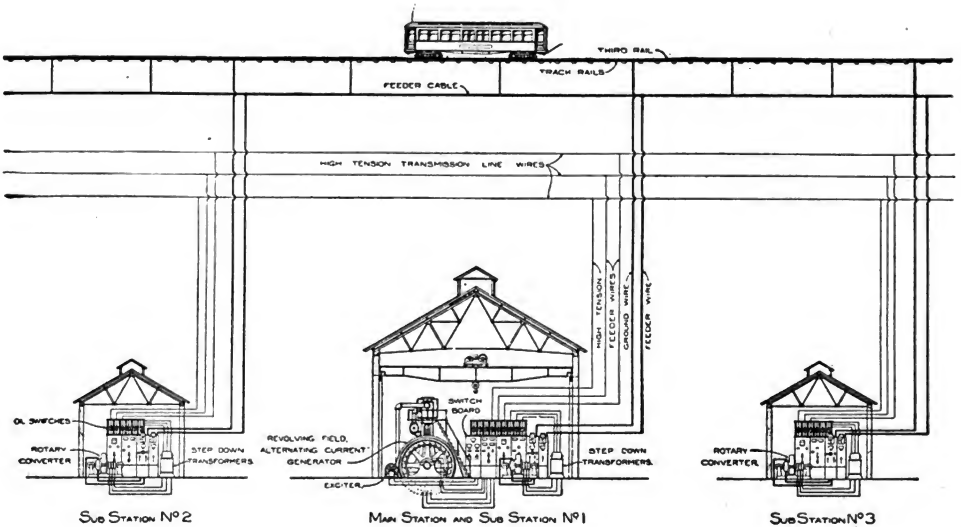


DIAGRAM
OF
THREE PHASE DISTRIBUTION

FIGS. 2,195 to 2,197.—Diagram showing electric railway system. Three phase current is generated at the main station where it passes to **step up** transformers to increase the pressure a suitable amount for economical transmission. At various points along the railway line are *sub-stations*, where the three phase current is reduced in pressure to 500 or 600 volts by **step down** transformers, and converted into direct current by rotary converters. The relatively low pressure direct current is then conveyed by "feeders" to the rails, this resulting in a considerable saving in copper.

Digitized by Google

Mixed Current Systems.—It is often desirable to transmit electrical energy in the form of alternating current, and distribute it as direct current or vice versa.

Such systems may be classed as mixed current systems. The usual conversion is from alternating current to direct current because of the saving in copper secured by the use of alternating current in transmission, especially in the case of long



FIG. 2,198.—Example of converter sub-station, showing the Brooklyn Edison Co. Madison sub-station. The transformers are seen on the left, the converter shown at the right is a Westinghouse synchronous booster rotary converter, consisting of a standard rotary converter in combination with a revolving armature alternator mounted on the same shaft with the converter and having the same number of pole. *The function of the machine is to* **convert** and **regulate** *the pressure.* By varying the field excitation of the alternator, the A.C. voltage impressed on the rotary converter proper can be increased or decreased as desired. Thus, the D.C. voltage delivered by the converter is varied accordingly. This type of converter is well adapted for any application for which a relatively wide variation, either automatic or non-automatic, in direct current voltage is necessary. Also especially for serving incandescent lighting systems where considerable voltage variation is required for the compensation of drop in long feeders, for operation in parallel with storage batteries and for electrolytic work where extreme variations in voltage are required by changes in the resistance of the electrolytic cells.

distance lines. Such conversion involves the use of a rotary converter, motor generator set, or rectifier, according to the conditions of service.

Digitized by Google

The suburban trolley forms a good example of a mixed system in which alternating current is generated at the *central station* and transmitted to *sub-stations*, where it is transformed to low pressure, and converted into direct current for use on the line. Fig. 2,195 shows the interior of a sub-station of this kind.

Ques. What direct current pressure is usually employed on traction lines?

Ans. 500 volts.

Ques. Mention another important service performed by a mixed system.

Ans. If the generator furnish alternating current it must be converted into direct current in order to charge storage batteries.

Digitized by Google

HAWKINS PRACTICAL LIBRARY OF

ELECTRICITY

IN HANDY POCKET FORM PRICE, $1 EACH

They are not only the best, but the cheapest work published on Electricity. Each number being complete in itself. Separate numbers sent postpaid to any address on receipt of price. Catalog of series will be mailed free.

GUIDE No. 1 Treating on electrical signs and symbols—static and current electricity—primary cells—conductors and insulators—resistance and conductivity—effects of the current—magnetism—electro-magnetic induction—induction coils—dynamo principles—classes of dynamo—field magnets—Armatures—armature windings—armature theory—commutation and the commutator—brushes and the brush gear—armature construction.

GUIDE No. 2 Motor principles—armature reaction in motors—starting a motor—motor calculations—brake horse power—selection and installation of dynamos and motors—performance curves—location—foundation—belts—auxiliary machines—Galvanometer—standard cells—current measurement—resistance measurement—Christie bridge—testing sets—loop tests—potentiometer—armature voltmeter and wattmeter—multipliers—electro-dynamometers—demand indicators—watt hour meters—operation of dynamos—lubrication—troubles—coupling of dynamos—armature troubles—care of commutator and brushes—heating—operating of motors—starters—speed regulators.

GUIDE No. 3 Distribution systems—boosters—wires and wire calculations—inside, outside, and underground wiring—wiring of buildings—sign flashers—lightning protection—storage battery—rectifiers—storage battery systems.

GUIDE No. 4 Alternating current principles—alternating current diagrams—the power factor—alternator principles—alternator construction—alternator windings.

GUIDE No. 5 Alternating current motors—synchronous and induction motor principles—construction of alternating current motors—A. C. commutator motors—power factor of induction motors—transformers—transformer losses—transformer construction—transformer connections—transformer tests—converters—rectifiers—alternating current systems.

GUIDE No. 6 Transformation of phases—switching devices—circuit breakers—relays—lightning projector apparatus—regulating devices—synchronous condensers—indicating devices—meters—power factor indicators—Wave form measurement—switchboards.

GUIDE No. 7 Alternating current wiring—properties of copper wire power stations—power station calculations—turbine practice—management—embracing: selection, location, erection, testing, running, care and repair—telephones.

GUIDE No. 8 Telegraph—simultaneous telegraphy and telephony—wireless—electric bells—electric lighting—photometry.

GUIDE No. 9 Electric railways—electric locomotives—car lighting—trolley car operation—miscellaneous applications—motion pictures—gas engine ignition—automobile self-starters—and lighting systems—electric vehicles.

GUIDE No. 10 Elevators—cranes—pumps—air compressors—electric heating—electric welding—soldering and brazing—industrial electrolysis—electro-plating—electro-therapeutics, X-rays, etc. This number contains a complete ready reference index of the complete library.

Theo. Audel & Co., Publishers. 72 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK

Digitized by Google

89093169464

B89093169464A

Digitized by Google

K.F. WEN[illegible] LIBRARY
U'W [illegible] ENGR.
215[illegible] AVENUE
MADISON, WI 53706

DEMCO

b89093169464a

Digitized by Google